Conversational Italian for Travelers

Kathryn Occhipinti

Stella Lucente

Conversational Italian for Travelers
Copyright © June 2012, by Kathryn Occhipinti

International Standard Book Number: 978-0-9903834-5-1

Publisher: Stella Lucente, LLC
Author: Kathryn Occhipinti
Italian Editor: Simona Giuggioli
Graphics and Page Layout: Cyndi Clark
Cover Photograph: Entrance to Piazza San Marco, Venice
Kathryn Occhipinti
Map of Italian Cities: www.maps-of-europe.net
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

Order at:
Internet: www.StellaLucente.com or www.learntravelitalian.com
Stella Lucente, LLC
P.O. Box 9640
Peoria, IL 61612

Dedication: To my parents, who made it possible for me to dream of big things and far away places.

How to Use This Book

This book, *Conversational Italian for Travelers,* is unique in that it functions both to teach the Italian language in a gradual, understandable way, and also to serve as a reference book for important travel phrases, basic and intermediate grammar, verb conjugations, numbers, and the idiomatic expressions spoken by real Italians today.

The idea is that the adult who is interested in learning a second language has specific needs to communicate with other adults and the world around him, and that these needs should be stressed. In fact, most adults try to learn a new language fairly quickly before they must visit, relocate, or do business in another country. This book is designed to focus on the vocabulary and grammar adults will most often encounter, while at the same time teaching the formal rules of the language. It is an instructional book that can be kept for later reference as well.

The material covered is from beginning to intermediate levels, and contains three units. The units describe the information covered: "Transportation,""City Life," and "Hotels and Restaurants" – with three full chapters on how to read those Italian menus!

Each unit is divided into six chapters, and each chapter contains the following sections: "Dialogue," "Vocabulary," "Important Phrases," "Cultural Note," "Grammar," "Verbs," "Idiomatic Expressions," and "Numbers." The Italian words are color-coded and specifically organized to make visual learning easy. The book assumes some knowledge of English grammar and will be easiest to use by those who have already attempted to learn a second language at school, but was developed to be useful to adults of any education level or experience. The "Getting Started" section at the very beginning of the text introduces the Italian alphabet and idea of gender agreement for those who are entirely new to the romance languages.

There is an emphasis on using technology to one's best advantage in the world today, with links to informational internet sites and tips on how to communicate internationally. The information is presented in an interesting way, as we follow our main character, Caterina, through her travels in Italy, with cultural notes about important places and events that she encounters during her trip. The culture of Italy is presented throughout the book, with helpful tips on how to handle encounters on the transportation system in Italy, as well as at Italian hotels and restaurants.

Here is a summary of what can be learned from each unit from this book:

Unit 1 – "Transportation"

The unit entitled, "Transportation," covers the Italian vocabulary/grammar/verbs needed to use the various modes of transportation in Italy to get from one place to the other – airplane, taxi, train, and car travel are undertaken by Caterina, the main character, for the example phrases in our dialogues . Important "Meeting and Greeting" phrases are covered. The simple present tense, with most pronunciation and spelling exceptions, is gradually introduced throughout the unit. The final chapter also includes the present progressive tense.

Unit 2 – "City Life"

The unit entitled, "City Life," covers the Italian vocabulary/grammar/verbs needed to communicate with people the visitor may already know, such as relatives, or will get to know or meet while traveling in Italy. Reflexive verbs and object pronouns are covered in detail, as these are the verbs of relationships, along with the familiar command form. The present perfect past tense form is are also covered. Vocabulary and expressions needed for shopping are discussed in detail.

Unit 3 – "At the Hotel"

The unit entitled, "At the Hotel," covers the Italian vocabulary/grammar/verbs needed to communicate with people while staying at a hotel, as well as how make reservations and order at a restaurant. The first three chapters are devoted to Caterina's "trip within her trip" with her Italian family to the lakeside town of Stresa, and the last three to a celebratory meal they have at a restaurant in Stresa at the conclusion of their vacation. The imperfect past tense is introduced, with emphasis on when to use the imperfect past tense and when to use the present perfect (past) tense. The future and conditional tenses are also covered in detail.

Here is a summary of the sections found in each individual chapter:

1. "Dialogue" – The dialogues create a running story from one chapter to the next. We follow the main character Caterina as she journeys to Italy, meets her relatives and their friends, and spends some vacation time at the beach. There are dialogues which focus on taking public transportation, as well as going to a party, meeting that special someone, making reservations, and eating out in a restaurant.

2. "Vocabulary" – This section expands on the dialogue section before it; important vocabulary words from the dialogue are included, with additional words that can be used in a similar situation.

3. "Important Phrases" – The phrases covered in this section are important for travelers and can be used to create a "travel phrase book." The phrases included often have more complex verb use or sentence structure than are covered in the same or preceding chapters, but are short enough (and important enough) to be committed to memory without the background knowledge. This section will generally have some relation to the subject matter of each chapter.

4. "Cultural Note" – Additional vocabulary and/or information is given in this section that relates to the chapter topic. For instance, for the chapter "Taking the Train," the cultural note gives a description about how to use the railway system in Italy to get from the major Italian airports to one's destination. Excerpts from the cultural notes in the book can be found on www.learntravelitalian.com and www.StellaLucente.com.

5. "Grammar Note" – Grammar rules for beginning to intermediate sentence structure are given, with emphasis on gender and number agreement; definite articles and their nouns, pronouns, indefinite articles, adjectives, adverbs, and cognates are discussed.

6. "Verbs" – Basic verb conjugation and rules for the present tense in Units 1 and 2, including a short section on the familiar command forms and extensive discussion of reflexive verbs and use of direct and indirect object pronouns. The last section of Unit 2 and the first section of Unit 3 cover the present perfect (past) tense, past participles, and the imperfect past tense. The remainder of Unit 3 covers future and conditional tenses.

7. "Grammar Point" – Addresses additional grammar information related to verbs

8. "Idiomatic Expressions" – More important phrases that are necessary to understand the way Italians speak today, which may not follow the specific rules of grammar previously outlined.

9. "Numbers" – Counting from zero to 100 in the first unit, and use of these numbers to tell time. Counting from one hundred to one billion in the second and third units, and use of these numbers to give the date, pay for purchases, etc. A short discussion of European currency is also included.

The Unique Pagination System

Conversational Italian for Travelers can be purchased as a C.D. and then printed out if desired, and arranged in a typical 3 hole spiral loose leaf binder. Purchase the right to download the entire book in PDF format into your electronic devices as well, from the websites www.learntravelitalian.com or www.StellaLucente.com.

Both the above formats allow the textbook to be printed out and reorganized to create individualized reference books. For instance, the "Important Phrases" section of each chapter has been specifically organized so that these pages can be removed and refiled together to create a book of travel phrases! Use the second set of numbers on the bottom of the page, which end in "IP" to keep the correct order, from 1(IP) in the first chapter to 18(IP) in the last. And, of course, to keep those important travel tips near-by, all of the "Cultural Note" sections, which directly follow the "Important Phrases" section and are included with the IP numbers.

Need to have vocabulary, grammar, numbers, or idiomatic expressions close by? Re-organize those pages as needed with the (Vo), (G), (N) and (IE) pages. The dialogues are included with the vocabulary section. Having trouble remembering all those verb conjugations and rules? Make your own verb reference book for easy accessibility with the (V) numbers! The Italian words in each section are color-coded as well, to help with creating these individual reference books.

The individual sections from this textbook can also be purchased in the form of compact, bound reference books or downloaded in PDF format, with the titles, *Just the Grammar, Just the Verbs,* and *Just the Important Phrases.*

The Audio Dialogue Practice Books

The *Conversational Italian for Travelers Audio Dialogue Practice Books, Volumes I and II* (for beginner and intermediate levels) are separate textbooks with audio files that can be downloaded in MP3 format from the websites www.learntravelitalian.com and www.StellaLucente.com. The material in these books corresponds to and expands each chapter in the *Conversational Italian for Travelers* textbook. Use in a classroom or for individual practice. Listen as native speakers say simple and then ever more complex sentences, using the grammar and vocabulary appropriate for each section. This is an especially useful aid for the study of verb conjugations, which is the main focus of the practice books. The unique way each group of sentences builds upon the ones before in each section will allow for practice, practice, practice, conjugating those verbs, without the boredom that can otherwise come with the usual rote memorization.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Getting Started xiv

The Italian Alphabet ..... *xv*

The Italian Sound Combinations ..... *xvi*

General Pronunciation and Stress for Italian Words ..... *xix*

Masculine and Feminine Nouns and Definite Articles ..... *xx*

*Masculine and Feminine Nouns and Definite Articles – Examples for Nouns that End in the Letter **E*** ..... *xxii*

Unit 1 – Transportation 3

Chapter 1 – At the Airport 3

Dialogue 3
Vocabulary – At the Airport 5
Important Phrases – Meeting and Greeting: Polite Expressions of Agreement 7
Important Phrases – How to Be Polite in Italian: **Piacere, Pregare, Scusarsi** and **Dispiacere** 8
Cultural Note – The World in Italian 10
Grammar Note – **Buono** and **Bello** 11
Grammar Note – **Buona** and **Bella** 12
Grammar Note – **Buono/Buona** and **Bello/Bella** Summary 12
Grammar Point – Studying Italian Verbs and Italian Subject Pronouns 13
Present Tense – First Conjugation Regular **–are** Verbs 14
Present Tense – Direct Reflexive Verbs and Their Pronouns 15
Grammar Point – The Many Forms of "You" in Italian – Singular Forms 16
Grammar Point – The Many Forms of "You" in Italian – Plural Forms 17
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 1 18
Idiomatic Expressions – **Dove** and **Ecco** 19
Numbers – Counting 0 - 10 21

Chapter 2 – At Customs in Italy *23*

Dialogue 23
Vocabulary – Customs in Italy 25
Vocabulary – The Calendar in Italian: Days of the Week 26
Vocabulary – Months of the Year 26
Vocabulary – The Seasons 26
Important Phrases – Basic Communication 27
Cultural Note – Describing Nationality 28
Grammar Note – Describing Where You Are From 29
Grammar Note – Italian Street Addresses 30
Grammar Note – Saying the Date in Italian 30
Grammar Note – Singular and Plural Nouns and Adjectives 31
Grammar Note – Singular and Plural Adjectives **Buono** 32
Grammar Note – Singular and Plural Adjectives **Bello** 33
Present Tense – First Conjugation: More Regular **–are** Verbs 35
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Irregular **–are** Verb **Andare** 36
Grammar Point – Writing "I" and "Is" in Italian: Italian Accents 37
Present Tense – Auxiliary Verb **Essere** 38
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 2 39
Idiomatic Expressions – "**Come va?**" 41
Numbers – Counting 20 - 99 43

Chapter 3 – Taking a Taxi ... *45*
Dialogue ... 45
Vocabulary – Trains and Automobiles ... 47
Vocabulary – Money ... 48
Important Phrases – Money ... 49
Cultural Note – Regions and Major Cities of Italy ... 51
Cultural Note – Discovering Italy ... 52
Grammar Note – How to Say "Yes" and "No:" The Uses of **Si, No, Non** and **Mai** ... 53
Grammar Note – **Quanto** - Asking How Much/How Many ... 53
Present Tense – Auxiliary Verb **Avere** ... 55
Expressions that Use **Avere** ... 55
Grammar Point – Choosing **Essere** or **Avere** ... 56
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 3 ... 57
Idiomatic Expressions – **"Quanti anni hai?"** ... 59
Numbers – Counting 11 - 19 ... 61

Chapter 4 – At the Train Station ... *63*
Dialogue ... 63
Vocabulary – At the Train Station ... 66
Vocabulary – Colors ... 67
Vocabulary – Ordinal Numbers ... 67
Important Phrases – Buying a Ticket and Taking the Train ... 69
Cultural Note – Taking the Train in Italy ... 70
Grammar Note – The Indefinite Article ... 73
Grammar Note – Irregular Plural Nouns and Adjectives: The **-co** and **-ca** Endings ... 74
Grammar Note – Irregular Plural Nouns and Adjectives: The **-go, -ologo,** and **-ga** Endings ... 75
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Regular Verbs that End in **-care/-gare** ... 77
Present Tense – Second Conjugation: Irregular Verb **Volere** ... 78
Grammar Point – Expressing a Need with **Volere** and **Desiderare** ... 79
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 4 ... 80
Idiomatic Expressions – **"Che cosa?"** ... 81
Numbers – Telling Time ... 83

Chapter 5 – On the Train to Milan ... *85*
Dialogue ... 85
Vocabulary – In the Country ... 88
Important Phrases – Asking for Assistance ... 89
Cultural Note – **Trenitalia** and Online Ticketing ... 90
Grammar Note – Possessive Adjectives for Family (Singular) ... 93
Grammar Note – Possessive **di** vs. Possessive Suffix ... 94
Grammar Note – More Uses for **di** ... 94
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Regular Verbs that End in **-ciare/-giare** ... 95
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Regular Verbs that End in **-iare** ... 96
Present Tense – Second Conjugation: Regular **–ere** Verbs ... 97
Present Tense – Second Conjugation: More Regular **–ere** Verbs ... 98
Present Tense – Second Conjugation: Irregular **–ere** Verbs **Sapere** and **Conoscere** ... 99
Grammar Point – When to Use **Sapere** vs. **Conoscere** ... 100
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 5 ... 102
Idiomatic Expressions – **Sapere** and **Conoscere** ... 103
Numbers – More Telling Time ... 105

Chapter 6 – Driving with Pietro ... *107*
Dialogue ... 107
Vocabulary – Driving in the City and on the Highway ... 109
Vocabulary – Parking, Rental Car and General Car Terms ... 110

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases – Renting a Car/Take me?/Get in! ... 111
Cultural Note – Renting a Car and Driving in Italy ... 112
Grammar Note – Possessive Adjectives: Things and Plural Forms for Family ... 115
Grammar Note – Adjectives that Precede Nouns ... 117
Grammar Note – Forming Sentences with **Essere** and the Adjective **Bravo** ... 119
Grammar Note – Adverbs and Adjectives Expressing Quantity ... 120
Present Tense – Second Conjugation: Regular Verbs that End in **-cere/-gere** ... 121
Present Tense – Second Conjugation: Irregular Verbs **Bere, Scegliere, Spegnere, Tenere** and **Togliere** ... 122
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Irregular Verb **Stare** ... 123
Present Tense – Present Progressive Tense ... 124
Grammar Point – To Be / To Live Revisited: **Essere** and **Stare**; **Abitare** and **Vivere** ... 126
Grammar Point – **C'è** and **Ci sono** vs. **Ecco** ... 126
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 6 ... 127
Idiomatic Expressions – **Bene** ... 129
Numbers – Expressions for Telling Time ... 131

Unit 2 – City Life ... 135

Chapter 7 – A Family Reunion ... 135
Dialogue ... 135
Vocabulary – At Home ... 137
Important Phrases – Coming and Going ... 139
Cultural Note – Italian Relatives ... 140
Grammar Note – More Adverbs of Quantity ... 141
Grammar Note – Asking Questions in Italian ... 142
Grammar Note – Interrogative Expression List ... 142
Grammar Note – Cognates: Nouns Ending in **-tà,** and some **-ire** Verbs ... 143
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Regular **-ire** Verbs ... 145
Present Tense – First Conjugation: Regular **-ire** Verbs with the **-isco** Ending ... 146
Present Tense – Third Conjugation: More Regular**-ire** Verbs ... 147
Present Tense – Third Conjugation: More Regular **-ire -isco** Verbs ... 147
Present Tense – Third Conjugation: Important Regular **-ire -isco** Verbs ... 148
Present Tense – Third Conjugation: Irregular Verbs **Dire, Morire, Salire, Uscire, Venire** ... 148
Grammar Point – Verbs that Take **di** + Infinitive ... 149
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 7 ... 150
Idiomatic Expressions – **Avere** and **Essere** + **di** + Infinitive ... 151
Numbers – Counting 100-999 ... 153

Chapter 8 – Getting Ready ... 155
Dialogue ... 155
Vocabulary – Making Yourself Comfortable at Home ... 157
Important Phrases – Getting Ready ... 159
Cultural Note – Renting a Place in Italy ... 161
Grammar Note – Cognates Adjectives Ending in **-ale, -ico, -etto, -atto** ... 163
Grammar Note – Adverbs of Manner ... 164
Present Tense – Direct Reflexive Verbs ... 165
Present Tense – More Direct Reflexive Verbs ... 166
Present Tense – Direct Reflexive Verbs: Irregular Verb **Sedersi** ... 166
Present Tense – Direct Reflexive Verbs: Verbs that Have Both Reflexive and Non-Reflexive Forms ... 167
Present Tense – Reciprocal Reflexive Verbs ... 169
Grammar Point – Infinitive Reflexive Verbs and Reflexive Pronouns ... 170
Grammar Point – Using **Si** to Make Impersonal Statements ... 170
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 8 ... 171
Idiomatic Expressions – **Trovare** ... 173
Numbers – Counting 1,000-1,000,000,000 ... 175

Chapter 9 – It's a Party! *177*
Dialogue 177
Vocabulary – Hosts and their Guests 180
Important Phrases – Meeting and Greeting at a Gathering 181
Cultural Note – The Trades and Professions in Italian 182
Grammar Note – Cognates: Nouns Ending in **-ista, -ore, -ario** 187
Grammar Note – Indirect and Direct Object Pronouns 188
Grammar Note – Reflexive, Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns: Summary 189
Grammar Note – Reflexive, Indirect and Direct Object Pronouns with the Negative 190
Grammar Note – Titles and Proper Forms of Address 191
Grammar Note – **Che** and **Cui** 192
Present Tense – Familiar Imperative Verbs 193
Present Tense – Irregular Verb **Dare** 194
Present Tense – Irregular Familiar Imperative Verbs 195
Grammar Point – Negative Familiar Imperative Verbs 196
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 9 197
Idiomatic Expressions – **Dare del tu/Dare del Lei** 199
Numbers – The Date in Italian 201

Chapter 10 – Shopping in Milan *203*
Dialogue 203
Vocabulary – In the Piazza 208
Vocabulary – Shopping for Clothing and Jewelry 209
Important Phrases – Shopping 211
Cultural Note – Shopping for Clothing in Italy 212
Grammar Note – More Irregular Plural Nouns 215
Grammar Note – Adverbs of Frequency 216
Grammar Note – Introduction to the Demonstrative Adjectives **Questo** and **Quello** 217
Grammar Note – Feminine Demonstrative Adjectives **Questa** and **Quella** 217
Grammar Note – Masculine Demonstrative Adjective **Questo** 218
Grammar Note – Masculine Demonstrative Adjective **Quello** 218
Grammar Point – Verbs that Take **A** + Infinitive 219
Present Tense – First Conjugation Irregular Verb **Fare** 219
Present Tense – Reflexive and Indirect Object Pronouns for Reference to Clothing and the Body 220
Present Tense – Second Conjugation Irregular Verb **Piacere** 222
Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 10 223
Idiomatic Expressions – **Fare** 225
Numbers – **Fare** and Mathematics 229

Chapter 11 – At the Coffee Shop *231*
Dialogue 231
Vocabulary – Adjectives of Personality 235
Important Phrases – Making Friends 237
Cultural Note – Italian Coffees 240
Grammar Note – Common Suffixes of Nouns and Adjectives 241
Grammar Note – Cognates: Adjectives Ending in **-oso** 242
Grammar Note – Friendship and More 242
Grammar Note – Prepositions that Combine with the Definite Article 243
Grammar Note – Relative Superlatives 244
Grammar Note – Absolute Superlatives 244
Present Tense – Second Conjugation - Modal Verbs: **Dovere, Potere** and **Volere** 245
Grammar Point – How to Use Modal Verbs 246
Grammar Point – Modal Verbs with Reflexive Forms 246
Past Tense – **Passato Prossimo** with **Avere** 247
Past Tense – **Passato Prossimo** Irregular Past Participles 249

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense – **Passato Prossimo** Regular Past Participles with **Dovere, Potere** and **Volere** 250
Verb Tables for Chapter 11 251
Idiomatic Expressions – **Potere** 253
Numbers – The Euro - Bills 255

Chapter 12 – Phone Conversations *257*
Dialogue 257
Vocabulary – The Telephone 261
Important Phrases – Making a Telephone Call 263
Important Phrases – Leaving/Sending a Message 265
Important Phrases – Making/Checking/Changing a Reservation 266
Cultural Note – Telephone Calls To and Within Italy 267
Grammar Note – Making, Checking, and Changing a Reservation 269
Grammar Note – Cognates: Adjectives Ending in **-zione, -za, -izziare, -ia, -ica** 270
Grammar Note – Comparatives of Equality 271
Grammar Note – Comparatives of Superiority and Inferiority 272
Grammar Note – Adjectives with Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms 273
Grammar Note – Adverbs with Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms 274
Past Tense – **Passato Prossimo** with **Essere** 275
Past Tense – **Passato Prossimo:** Verbs that Take **Essere** 277
Grammar Point – Reflexive Verbs with the **Passato Prossimo** 278
Grammar Point – Modal Verbs with **Essere** and the **Passato Prossimo** 278
Past Tense – **Passato Prossimo: Avere** and **Essere** Past Participles 279
Grammar Point – Single Negative with the **Passato Prossimo** 279
Grammar Point – Double Negative with the **Passato Prossimo** 279
Verb Tables for Chapter 12 280
Idiomatic Expressions – **Dovere** and **Volere** 283
Idiomatic Expressions – Commands Using **Fare** 284
Numbers – The Euro - Coins 286

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant 289

Chapter 13 – Arriving at the Hotel *289*
Dialogue 289
Vocabulary – At the Hotel 293
Vocabulary – In the Hotel Room 294
Cultural Note – Italian Holidays 295
Grammar Note – **Tutto** and **Ogni** 299
Grammar Note – Indefinite Pronouns: **Tutto** and **Tutti**; **Entrambi** and **Entrambe** 299
Grammar Note – Expressions of Past Time 300
Past Tense – **Imperfetto** 301
Past Tense – **Imperfetto:** Irregular Verbs – **Bere, Dire, Fare** 303
Past Tense – **Imperfetto:** Auxiliary Verbs – **Avere** and **Essere** 304
Grammar Point – **Imperfetto** vs. **Passato Prossimo** 305
Verb Tables for Chapter 13 306
Idiomatic Expressions – **Fa** and Expressions of Past Time 307
Numbers – Telling Time with Reference to the Past 309

Chapter 14 – On the Beach at Last! *311*
Dialogue 311
Vocabulary – On the Beach 314
Vocabulary – The Weather 315
Cultural Note – **Ferragosto** 317
Grammar Note – **Nessuno** 319
Grammar Note – The Weather 320

Past Tense – **Imperfetto** with **Dovere, Potere, Volere** 321
Grammar Point – The Weather in Past Tense 322
Grammar Point – **Imperfetto** vs. **Passato Prossimo:** Final Summary 323
Verb Tables for Chapter 14 324
Idiomatic Expressions – **"Quanti anni aveva?"** 327
Numbers – **Da Quanto Tempo?/Da Quando?** 329

Chapter 15 – Sightseeing! *331*
Dialogue 331
Vocabulary – Sightseeing 334
Important Phrases – Finding One's Way/Directions 335
Cultural Note – Taking in Italian Culture and Shops 336
Grammar Note – **Niente** and **Nulla** 339
Grammar Note – Expressions of Future Time 340
Grammar Note – Adverbial Prepositions and Directions 341
Future Tense 343
Future Tense – Auxilliary Verbs - **Avere** and **Essere** 344
Future Tense – Verbs with Irregular Stems: Verbs that Drop the Stem Vowel 345
Future Tense – Verbs with Irregular Stems: Verbs that Do Not Change the Letter **A** in the Stem 345
Future Tense – More Verbs with Irregular Stems 346
Grammar Point – Use of Two Verbs in the Same Sentence with the Future Tense 346
Verb Tables for Chapter 15 347
Numbers – Talking About Events in Future and Past Tense 349

*Chapter 16 – Ordering at the Restaurant **Antipasto** and **Il Primo*** *351*
Dialogue 351
Vocabulary – Ordering at the Restaurant: Table Setting and Drinks 355
Vocabulary – Appetizers 356
Vocabulary – Soup, **Pasta** and **Gnocchi** 357
Vocabulary – Famous Italian **Pasta, Gnocchi** and Rice Dishes 358
Important Phrases – Speaking with the Waiter 359
Cultural Note – A Typical Italian Menu 360
Grammar Note – **Nè... Nè** and **Neanche:** Final Summary of Negative Expressions 363
Grammar Note – Disjunctive Pronouns 364
Grammar Note – Pronoun Summary - Reflexive, Direct, Indirect, and Disjunctive Pronouns 365
Grammar Note – Double Object Pronouns 366
Grammar Note – The Partitive – Some/Any/A Little Bit 367
Present Tense – **Piacere** and the Disjunctive Pronouns 369
Future Tense – Verbs with Endings of **-care, -gare** 371
Future Tense – Verbs with Endings of **-ciare, -giare** 372
Verb Tables for Chapter 16 373
Numbers – The Centuries 377

Chapter 17 – Dinner at the Restaurant *379*
Dialogue 379
Vocabulary – Cooking Methods, Meats and Fish/Shellfish 382
Vocabulary – Vegetables 383
Vocabulary – Italian Wines and After Dinner Drinks 384
Important Phrases – Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner 385
Cultural Note – Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner in Italy 386
Grammar Note – The Partitive - **Qualche** and **Alcune/Alcuni** 389
Grammar Note – The Partitive - Negative and Interrogative 390
Grammar Note – Using **Ne** in Place of the Partitive + Noun 390
Grammar Note – Direct Object Pronouns and the **Passato Prossimo** 391
Grammar Note – **Ne** and the **Passato Prossimo** 392

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Direct Object Pronouns with Reflexive Verbs 392
Grammar Note – Conditional Tense 393
Conditional Tense – Auxilliary Verbs **Avere** and **Essere** 394
Conditional Tense – Verbs with Irregular Stems: Verbs that Drop the Stem Vowel 395
Conditional Tense – Verbs with Irregular Stems: Verbs that Do Not Change the Lletter **A** in the Stem 395
Conditional Tense – More Verbs with Irregular Stems 396
Conditional Tense and Introduction to the Subjunctive Mood 396
Conditional Tense – Modal Verbs **Dovere, Potere** and **Volere** 397
Present Tense vs. Conditional Tense – The Meaning of **Dovere, Potere,** and **Volere** 398
Verb Tables for Chapter 17 399
Numbers – Roman Numerals 403

Chapter 18– A Happy Birthday Surprise *405*
Dialogue 405
Vocabulary – Desserts and Nuts 408
Vocabulary – Fruits 409
Vocabulary – Italian Cheeses **(I Formaggi)** 410
Important Phrases – Common Conditional Phrases 411
Cultural Note – Settling the Bill and Tipping 412
Grammar Note – More Uses for **Ne** 413
Grammar Note – Summary of the Adverb **Ci** 414
Grammar Note – Irregular Plurals - Parts of the Body 415
Grammar Note – Indefinite Adjectives 416
Conditional Tense – Verbs with Endings of **-care, -gare** 417
Conditional Tense – Verbs with Endings of **-ciare, -giare** 418
Conditional Past Tense – **Dovere, Potere,** and **Volere:** Should've, Could've, Would've 419
Present and Past Conditional Tense – **Piacere:** Would Like and Would Have Liked 420
Present Tense – **Dispiacere** 421
Present and Past Conditional Tenses – **Dispiacere:** Would Not Mind and Would Not Have Minded 422
Verb Tables for Chapter 18 423
Numbers – The Centuries in Roman Numerals 427

Appendix 1 ..... **429**

Exceptions to Masculine and Feminine Endings *429*

Appendix -2 ..... **435**

A Note About the Changing Italian Subject Pronouns *435*

The Different Forms of "They" in Italian *436*

Index **437**



Map of Italy
Italian Cities

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Getting Started
The Italian Alphabet

The Italian alphabet has only 21 letters, but there are names in Italian for all of the Latin letters, including those traditionally described as foreign to Italian. The letters which are foreign to Italian are listed in parenthesis and are included together with the Italian alphabet given below. The written form of each letter's name in Italian and the phonetic pronunciation are listed in separate columns.

Letter	Italian Name	Phonetic Pronunciation	Letter	Italian Name	Phonetic Pronunciation
a	a	ah	u	u	oo
b	bi	bee	v	vu/vi	voo/vee
c	ci	chee	(w)	doppia vu	doh-pee-ah voo
d	di	dee	(x)	ics	eeks
e	é	eh	(y)	ipsilon	eep-see-lohn
f	èffe	ehf-feh		i greca	ee greh-ka
g	gi	jee	z	zèta	zeh-tah
h	àcca	ah-kah			
i	i	ee			
(j)	i lunga	ee loon-gah			
(k)	càppa	kahp-pah			
l	èlle	ehl-leh			
m	èmme	ehm-meh			
n	ènne	ehn-neh			
o	ò	oh			
p	pi	pee			
q	cu	koo			
r	èrre	ehr-reh			
s	èsse	es-seh			
t	ti	tee			

Getting Started
The Italian Sound Combinations

Here is the Italian alphabet again, with an example word in Italian to represent how each written letter should sound, as well as an example of an English word that has an equivalent sound. If the sounds are identical in Italian and English, no explanation is given. Multiple examples will be given for a letter if the pronunciation can vary. Italian is one of the most phonetic (and beautiful) languages spoken, and a little time spent learning how to pronounce the letter combinations will make learning this language much easier!

Letters(s)	Italian Pronunciation	English Pronunciation Equivalent	
a	cane	father	(ah sound)
b	bene	bell	
ca/co/cu	casa	cat	(hard c sound)
ci	ciao	cheese	(soft ch with long ee sound)
ce	cena	cheddar	(soft ch with short e sound)
chi	chi	key	(hard c with long ee sound)
che	che	kennel	(hard c with sort e sound)
d	dado	dad	
e	era	bet	(eh sound)
e	vedi	bait	(ay sound)
f	farfalla	fan	
ga/go/gu	gusto	good	(hard g sound)
gi	giro	jeer	(soft j with long ee sound)
ge	gettare	jet	(soft j with short e sound)
gli	figlio	million	(gli is a unique Italian sound similar to the "lli" in million, pronounced like mil-lyee-on)*
gn	signora	onion	(sounds like the "ni" in onion)
h	--	--	(h is not pronounced in Italian)
i	vita	meet	(long ee sound)
l	luna	love	
m	mamma	mother	
n	non	no	
o	sole	soap	(oh sound)
o	modo	law	(aw sound)

*To form the sound that corresponds to the letter combination "gli" in Italian, place the tip of your tongue behind your upper teeth. Then, raise the back part of your tongue to the palate and roll your tongue forward to form the guttural "gl" sound that is a part of this combination. Finish with the "yee" sound. By listening, you will note the word **gli** **(the)** stresses the guttural sound, but when placed in the middle of the word, such as with **figlio** **(son)**, the "yee" part of the sound is stressed.

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

The Italian Sound Combinations (cont'd)

Letters(s)	Italian Pronunciation	English Pronunciation Equivalent	
p	pasta	pasta	
qu	quanto	quest	(qu together makes the kw sound)
r	Roma	---	(r is always trilled in Italian)
s	rossa	toss	(hard s)
s	rosa	nose	(soft s)
schi	schiavo	skeet	(s + chi makes hard skey sound)
sche	schema	skill	(s + che makes hard skeh sound)
sci	sciare	shield	(soft sh sound with long ee sound)
sce	scemo	shed	(soft sh sound with short e sound)
t	tu	to	
u	uva	boot	(oo sound)
v	vincere	vine	
z	zero	zero	(soft z)
z	pizza	pizza	(hard z, like tz sound)



Regions of Italy,
Cities and Important Sites

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Getting Started

General Pronunciation and Stress for Italian Words

The Italian language is a phonetic language, and so each letter in an Italian word needs to be pronounced to create the final sound. If two vowels are written next to each other, both are pronounced, but the sound is a combined sound (referred to as a diphthong). There are many pronunciation rules, which include rules for consonants, pure vowels and semivowels, but the easiest thing to remember is just to pronounce what you see! Here is where listening will also be invaluable. First read the Italian word and then try to say it out loud. Listen to the *Conversational Italian Audio Dialogue Book* chapter that corresponds to the chapter you are working on in this textbook, and see if your pronunciation is correct. Try to pronounce the word again, and then listen once more!

Most Italian words will be stressed on the second to last syllable, which is easy to remember if the word contains only three syllables – just stress the syllable in the middle of the word. In general, a syllable in Italian is usually made up of a vowel or consonant group with its vowel. So, for many Italian words, just look for the vowel in the middle of the word and stress the syllable it goes with by making your intonation a little higher and more forceful. The word **ragazzo,** for instance, which means **boy,** will place the stress on the **/ga/** sound.

ragazzo: ra/GAZ/zo

There are many exceptions to this rule, however, and the first syllable is stressed instead in many cases for words with three syllables, while the second syllable is often stressed in words with four syllables, as in **sabato (Saturday)** and **domenica (Sunday).**

sabato: SA/ba/to
domenica: do/ME/ni/ca

A vowel alone can also form a complete syllable. **Abito (I live),** is a verb with three syllables where the first syllable, which happens to be the vowel **/a/** is stressed.

abito: A/bi/to

In the few cases where the very last syllable is stressed, the vowel at the end of the word will be given a grave **(`)** accent, as in **città (city)** or **caffè (coffee).** Otherwise, accents are infrequently used in Italian, and pronunciation is learned by listening!

For words with double consonants, hold the original sound of the consonant a little longer. For similar words, this can change the meaning; **casa** (**house)** or **cassa** (**cash register)!**

Getting Started

Masculine and Feminine Nouns and Definite Articles

Italian, and all of the romance languages, have what are called masculine and feminine nouns. When referring to a person, the ending of the noun for that person's name must match that person's gender. As we all know, nouns refer not only to people, but also to places and things. In Italian, even references to a place or an object will be either masculine or feminine, as assigned by the rules of linguistics. In Italian, then, all nouns will be either masculine or feminine.

The definite article – the word "the" in English – will change in Italian to reflect the gender of the noun that is being modified. It is necessary to learn both the definite article and the noun together in order to speak fluently, so the definite article will always be included with the nouns given in the vocabulary lists. In some cases where the definite article is followed by an apostrophe, the combined sounds create one spoken "word" instead of two.

Here are some general rules:

For the most part, Italian nouns that end in **–a** will be designated as feminine, and take the definite article **la,** which means **the.**

For the most part, Italian nouns that end in **–o** will be masculine, and take the definite article **il,** which also means **the.**

There are also Italian nouns that end in **–e,** and these can be *in some cases masculine*, and *in other cases feminine,* as assigned by the rules of linguistics. Feminine nouns that end in **–e** will take **la** and masculine nouns that end in **–e** will take **il** as their definite article.

If the noun begins with a vowel, whether it is masculine or feminine, **l'** will be used as the definite article.

For Italian masculine nouns that begin with **s + consonant, z, ps, gn, pn,** or for foreign words incorporated into Italian that begin with the letters **x** or **y,** the definite article **lo** will be used.

For plural nouns, the definite articles will also change. Each noun, then, will have at least two forms, either singular or plural. For nouns that refer to people, this creates four different possibilities: masculine singular, masculine plural, feminine singular, and feminine plural!

Please see the table and examples that summarize these rules on the following page.

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Masculine and Feminine Nouns and Definite Articles (cont'd - 2)

*********Italian Definite Article – The*********

	Masculine Definite Article (singular/plural)		Feminine Definite Article (singular/plural)
Noun begins with consonant	il / i		la / le
Noun begins with s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn, x or y	lo / gli		
Noun begins with vowel	l' / gli		l' / le

	Masculine Definite Article (singular/plural)		Feminine Definite Article (singular/plural)
Noun begins with consonant	il ragazzo / i ragazzi the boy / the boys		la ragazza / le ragazze the girl / the girls
Noun begins with s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn, x or y	lo zio / gli zii the uncle the uncles		
Noun begins with vowel	l'amico / gli amici the (male) friend / the (male) friends		l'amica / le amiche* the (girl) friend / the (girl) friends = the girlfriends

*Notice the letter **h** has been inserted in this case before the letter **e**, but do not worry about this for now. Its function is just to maintain the correct sound.

Getting Started

Masculine and Feminine Nouns and Definite Articles – Examples for Nouns that End in the Letter **E**

Nouns that end in **–ore, -one, -ale,** and **–ile** are masculine, so the letter **–e** will change to an **–i** in the plural, and the definite articles **il, l'** and **i** will be used to correspond to the masculine origin of the noun. Below is a list of commonly used words we will encounter later in the text that have an **–e** ending and are masculine.

il dottore	**the doctor**	**i dottori**	**the doctors**
l'attore	**the actor**	**gli attori**	**the actors**
il direttore	**the manager**	**i direttori**	**the managers**
lo scrittore	**the writer**	**gli scrittori**	**the writers**
l'albergatore	**the hotel owner**	**gli albergatori**	**the hotel owners**
il viaggiatore	**the traveler**	**i viaggiatori**	**the travelers**
il giornale	**the newspaper**	**i giornali**	**the newspapers**
il badile	**the shovel**	**i badili**	**the shovels**
il pallone	**the soccer ball**	**i palloni**	**the soccer balls**

Nouns that end in **–ione** and **–ice** are feminine, and will take the feminine definite articles in the singular and plural: **la, l'** and **le.** However, the **–e** ending of the noun will change to an **–i.** In this case, the definite article in the plural is a reminder of the feminine origin of the noun. Below is a list of commonly used words we will encounter later in the text that have an **–e** ending and are feminine. Notice that for the professions, the **–ice** ending is the feminine counterpart to the masculine **–ore.**

l'attrice	**the actress**	**le attrici**	**the actresses**
la direttrice	**the manager**	**le direttrici**	**the directors**
la scrittrice	**the writer**	**le scrittrici**	**the writers**
l'albergatrice	**the hotel owner**	**le albergatrici**	**the hotel owners**
la viaggiatrice	**the travelor**	**le viaggiatrici**	**the travelors**
la stagione	**the season**	**le stagioni**	**the seasons**

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com





Unit 1

Transportation





 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 1 – At the Airport

Dialogue

For our first dialogue, we join **Kathy (Caterina)**, a girl from the United States of America who has just graduated college, as she takes a plane to Italy to visit her Italian relatives for the summer. As Caterina boards a flight from Chicago to Milan on an Italian airline, we listen in on the final boarding instructions in Italian and then to a simple dialogue. Caterina speaks with the friendly Italian **stewardess Mary (l'hostess Maria).** Caterina and Maria exchange polite greetings, which will get us started on our own exciting journey learning the Italian language!

For all of our dialogues, the Italian verbs will be highlighted in **green,** with the remainder of the Italian in **blue,** and important phrases will be underlined when first introduced. This is conversational Italian, so sometimes phrases, rather than full sentences, will be spoken in our dialogues. The English translation will be in black and will reflect the Italian word choices and order as closely as possible, sometimes with a literal translation for clarification, signified by the abbreviation (lit.). Although the English translation may not sound or be exactly grammatically correct, especially in the beginning chapters, not to worry; in order to speak Italian, we must first learn to think in Italian, and use the Italian approach to relaying thoughts and ideas as much as possible. So, fasten your seatbelts for a fun-filled and interesting flight, as we begin to experience the world of the Italian language!

Maria *(altoparlante)*: Attenzione, prego. Il volo dieci per Milano Malpensa imbarca al cancello due.

(loudspeaker): Attention, please. The flight ten for Milan Malpensa (is) board(ing) from gate two.

Tutti i passeggeri sono pregati di mettere il bagaglio a mano nel vano superiore, prendere posto e allacciare la cintura di sicurezza.

All passengers are please requested to put the carry-on luggage in the overhead compartment, take (their) seat, and fasten (their) seat belt.

1(Vo)1

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 1 – At the Airport

Dialogue (cont'd)

Maria *(a Caterina):* Buon giorno. La carta d'imbarco, per favore.
(*to Caterina):* Good morning. The boarding pass, please.

Caterina: Buon giorno. Eccola.
Good morning. Here it is.

Maria: Come si chiama?
What (is) your name? (lit. How (do) (you polite) call/name yourself?)

Caterina: Mi chiamo Caterina.
My name (is) Kathy. (lit. (I) call myself Kathy.)

Maria: Lei parla italiano molto bene. Dove abita?
You (polite) speak Italian very well. Where (do) (you polite) live?

Caterina: Abito in America.
(I) live in America.

Maria: Dove in America?
Where in America?

Caterina: A Chicago.
In* Chicago. (*See the Chapter 1 Cultural Note)

Maria: Che bella città!
What a beautiful city!

Caterina: Mi scusi, ma quanto dura il volo?
Excuse me (polite command), but how long (is) the flight?

Maria: Solamente dieci ore. Buon viaggio!
Only ten hours. (Have a) good trip!

Caterina: Grazie.
Thank you.

Maria: Prego.
You're welcome.

1(Vo)2

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary – At the Airport

Here is a list of vocabulary words the traveler may encounter or need to use to ask for information while at an Italian airport. The Italian definite article **(the) (il, lo, l', la, i, gli, le)** has been included with each noun for easy memorization. Remember from the "Getting Started" section that, as a general rule, Italian words that end in the letter **-o** are masculine, and those that end in the letter **-a** are feminine, while those that end in the letter **–e** may be either masculine or feminine. For nouns that can be both masculine and feminine, such as those that describe professions or specific jobs, both forms have been given. Useful verbs for this section are highlighted in green.

il viaggio	trip
l'aereo(plano)	airplane
l'aeroporto	airport
il terminal	terminal
la scala mobile	escalator
il marciapiede mobile*	moving walkway
il volo	flight
gli arrivi	arrivals
le partenze	departures
il cancello	gateway (to flight)
il/la pilota	pilot
l'hostess	stewardess
lo steward	steward
l'assistente di volo	flight attendant
il/la passegero(a)	passenger
il biglietto (d'aereo)	(airline) ticket
la carta d'imbarco	the boarding pass
la torre di controllo	control tower
la pista (d'atteraggio)	runway/landing strip
il decollo	take-off
l'atterraggio	landing
il posto	seat
la cintura di sicurezza	seat belt
il bagaglio a mano	carry on luggage
il vano	(luggage) compartment
il deposito bagagli	place for stored luggage
il nastro portabagagli	luggage conveyor belt

viaggiare	to travel
volare	to fly
decollare	to take off
atterrare	to land
allacciare	to fasten
prendere	to take
mettere	to put
depositare	to leave/check luggage
abitare	to live
chiamarsi	to call onself (a name)
parlare	to talk/to speak
scusarsi	to excuse oneself

*Although technically correct, many Italians also use the French phrase **tapis roulant** when referring to a **moving walkway**. 1(Vo)3



Tour Bus by La Scala Opera House, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases – Meeting and Greeting
Polite Expressions of Agreement

As in English, in Italian there are many ways to greet people, and different expressions will be used depending on the situation and how well the individuals know one another. Italian society has become overall less formal. Many easy-going, familiar, and slang expressions are now commonly used, not only between friends and family, but even between acquaintances, although polite forms of address are still important to know.

Listed below are some of the most common ways to say, "hello." **"Buon giorno,"** can be used to mean, **"Good morning,"** when greeting both family members at home and shop owners at the piazza; this phrase can also be used in more formal situations as its literal translation of, **"Good day."** It is a phrase used so often in fact, that one often hears the reply shortened to simply, **"Giorno."** There are at least as many ways to say "good bye" as there are to say "hello," as noted below. Notice that the word **ciao** is unique, since it can be used as both an informal **"hi"** as well as a quick way to say **"good bye."** ***Ciao*** is used frequently throughout Italy today with family and friends.

Buon giorno.*	Good morning. (lit. Good day.)	used all day into evening
Buona sera.*	Good evening	early night-time greeting
Buona notte.*	Good night	used when leaving/bedtime
Buona giornata.	(Have a) good day.	to wish someone a nice (entire) day
Salve.	Hello./Hi	informal greeting family/friends
Ciao.	Hi./Bye	informal greeting family/friends
Ci vediamo!	(Until) we see each other (again)!	for family or for a friend you hope to see again soon
Arrivederci.	Good-bye	familiar polite
Arriverla.	Good-bye	polite, with respect
ArrivederLa.	Good-bye	formal written form

Come va?	How (is it) go(ing)?	a slang greeting used often
Ciao bella!/Ciao bello!	Hey, beautiful girl!/Hey handsome!	for someone you know (well)
A dopo!	(See you) later!	good-bye between friends
A più tardi!	(See you) later!	good-bye between friends
A presto!	(See you) soon!	good-bye between friends

Use these phrases to agree with what someone is saying:

Si.	Yes.
Certo.	Of course.
D'accordo.	(I) agree.
Penso di si.	(I) think so.

***Can be written as one word, as in **buongiorno, buonasera,** or **buonanotte.** **1(IP)1**

Important Phrases – How to Be Polite in Italian
Piacere, Pregare, Scusarsi and **Dispiacere**

One of the most rewarding aspects of travel is becoming acquainted with the people in the region or country visited. Understanding the polite phrases of speech will take one a long way in this regard, as politeness and respect are usually rewarded with the same in return. There are several very important and helpful verbs of politeness in Italian. The most useful of these verbs is **piacere,** with the meaning of **to like/to be pleasing to,** from which one of the phrases for "please" is derived. We will study **piacere** in detail in Units 2 and 3 due to the somewhat unusual and complicated way that it is conjugated. The Italian word **favore** translates into the English as **favor**. The two different ways to say, **please** in Italian, **per piacere** and **per favore,** are interchangeable, and loosely translate into **"for a pleasantry/nicety"** or **"for a favor."** **Grazie** is a noun that means **thanks,** and used in the same way as the English **thank you**. If you are really pleased, say, **"Molte grazie!" "Tante grazie!"** or **"Mille grazie!"**

Per favore./Per piacere.	Please.
Grazie.	Thank you.
Molte grazie!	Thank you very much!
Tante grazie!	Thank you so much!
Mille grazie!	Thanks a lot! (lit. A thousand thanks!)

Prego is the direct response to **grazie,** and means, **You're welcome**. It is derived from another verb of politeness, **pregare,** which has several meanings. **Pregare** can be translated as **to pray,** which lends itself to the connotation of asking or requesting something. English, phrases like, "I pray of you," "I beg of you," or "Pray tell," carry the same idea, although these are no longer commonly used. In a similar way, a simple, **"Prego…"** can also be used with a gesture to address someone when on line in a crowded place, as in, **"Go ahead of me, I beg you, if you please..."** **"Sono pregati di,"** is a polite expression derived from **pregare** that may also be heard when someone in charge, such as a flight attendant or tour guide, is directing a group of people. Finally, if a waiter comes to the table with a wonderful dish for you to try, he may put this in front of you with a flourish and say, **"Prego!"** as in, **"There you go!"**

Prego.	You're welcome.	
Prego…	If (you) please	Prego can be used if you would like a stranger to go ahead of you in a line, usually with a gesture.
Sono pregati di…	Are requested/asked/begged to	polite, to a group
Di niente.	It was nothing./You're welcome.	1(IP)2

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases – How to Be Polite in Italian
Piacere, Pregare, Scusarsi and **Dispiacere** (cont'd)
Proper Forms of Address

Scusarsi means **to excuse oneself,** and is used frequently in crowded situations in its polite command form, **"Mi scusi." "Scusa"** is the form used between people who know one another. **Dispiacere** is a verb that is used to convey the ideas of **sadness, sorrow,** and **regret** and so, **"Mi dispiace,"** means, **"I'm sorry."**

Another expression that is useful when navigating an unfamiliar place, and especially when entering an unfamiliar building is, **"Permesso?"** This expression comes from the shortened form of the phrase, **"Permesso di entrata?"** The literal meaning is, **"Permission to enter?"** and might be thought of as useful in similar situations when in English we would ask, **"May I come in?"**

Here are some essential phrases to get through the throngs of tourists in Italy:

Mi scusi.	Excuse me. (polite command)
Scusa.	Excuse me. (familiar command)
Mi dispiace.	I'm sorry.
Permesso?	Permission to enter? May I come in?

Finally, the word **spiacente,** which is most often used in written Italian and is an adjective that means **sorry,** should also be mentioned. When combined with the verb **essere** (see Chapter 2), the phrase takes the meaning of **to regret,** as in the example below:

Io sono spiacente di informarvi che...	I regret to inform you all that...

When addressing someone formally, Italians use the following titles:

Signore	Mister/Sir
Signora	Misses/Madam/Ma'am
Signorina	Miss

1(IP)3

Cultural Note - The World in Italian

When Americans travel, we travel to a place – to Italy, to Rome, to the northeast. Italians travel directly ***in*** **(in)** a country, region, or large island, but ***to*** **(a)** a city, town, or small island. (In Italian, the word for **in** is the same as in English… **in!**) For instance, Caterina lives **in America,** but **a Chicago,** as we have seen in our first dialogue. Here is a list of the Italian words for the continents and a selection of the countries of **the world (il mondo),** along with some capital cities. Notice that by convention the definite article **(the) (il, la,** or **l')** is used to refer to countries, except when talking about traveling directly *into* them!

Europe	l'Europa	Africa	l' Africa
Austria	l'Austria	Asia	l'Asia
Belgium	il Belgio	Central America	l'America Centrale
Brussels	*Bruxelles*	Europe	l'Europa
Denmark	la Danimarca	Middle East	il Medio Oriente
England	l'Inghilterra	North America	l'America del nord
London	*Londra*	South America	l'America del sud
France	la Francia	Australia	l'Australia
Paris	*Parigi*		
Germany	la Germania	Argentina	l'Argentina
Berlin	*Berlino*	Brazil	il Brasile
Greece	la Grecia	Canada	il Canada
Athens	*Atene*	Chile	il Cile
Holland	l'Olanda	China	la Cina
Amsterdam	*Amsterdam*	Egypt	l'Egitto
Ireland	l'Irlanda	*Cairo*	*il Cairo**
Dublin	*Dublino*	India	l'India
Italy	l'Italia	Indonesia	l'Indonesia
Rome	*Roma*	Japan	il Giappone
Norway	la Norvegia	Korea	la Corea
Poland	la Polonia	Mexico	il Messico
Portugal	il Portogallo	Pakistan	il Pakistan
Lisbon	*Lisbona*	Russia	la Russia
Scandanavia	la Scandanavia	*Moscow*	*Mosca*
Spain	la Spagna	Turkey	la Turchia
Madrid	*Madrid*	United States	gli Stati Uniti
Sweden	la Svezia	Viet Nam	il Vietnam
Switzerland	la Svizzera		

***In this case, il Cairo** is the name of the city, rather than the word **Cairo** alone, by convention.

1(IP)4

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - **Buono** and **Bello**

Buono is a word you will hear quite often – so many things are **good** in Italy! But, the form of this adjective will change according to the masculine or feminine form of the noun (person, place or thing) it modifies, and also according to where it is placed in the sentence.

For masculine nouns, **buono** is placed either *directly after* the noun, or at the end of the sentence, after the verb **è** for **is** (from the verb **essere**, which we will encounter in the next chapter). In the second case, the adjective **buono** will be separated from the noun it modifies, but both the noun and adjective will agree in gender.

il giorno buono	the good day
Il giorno è buono.	The day is good.

But, when the adjective **buono** is placed *before* a masculine noun, the letter **-o** is dropped from **buono** to make **buon**, as in, **"Buon giorno!"** The only exception to this will be if the Italian masculine noun begins with the following letters: **s+consonant, z, ps, gn** or **pn**. The two most important masculine words to remember in this category are **studente (student)** and **zio (uncle)**. In this case, we are back to our original word, and use **buono!**

Buon giorno!	Good day!
il buono studente	the good student
il buono zio	the good uncle

And, of course, many things are **beautiful** in Italy… so **bello** is an adjective that will come up frequently! **Bello** is used often, not only to refer to things that are **beautiful**, but also with the meanings of **nice, fine, lovely,** or **handsome**. The rules are similar to those for **buono** – just drop the **-o** ending (and the extra **"l"** if writing) to make **bel** when it is placed before the noun, unless the noun happens to begin with **s+consonant, z, ps, gn** or **pn**.

il giorno bello	the beautiful day
Il giorno è bello.	The day is beautiful.

il bel giorno	the beautiful day
il bello studente	the fine student
il bello zio	the handsome uncle

1(G)1

Grammar Note – **Buona** and **Bella**

For a feminine noun (person, place or thing), the words **buona** and **bella** are used to describe something **good** or **beautiful**, **nice, fine, lovely,** or **pretty,** whether placed *before* or *after* the noun these adjectives modify.

Buona sera!	Good evening!
La città è buona.	The city is good.

la bella città	the beautiful city
La città è bella.	The city is beautiful.

There is only one exception to this rule: if **buona** or **bella** is placed *before* a feminine noun that begins with the letter **–a**, simply drop the last letter from **buona** or **bella** and add an apostrophe to make **buon'** or **bell'** for smoother conversation. Since our focus is on conversational Italian, just remember to bring the two words together when speaking, without repeating the **-a** ending, and don't worry for now about the spelling!

la buon'amica	the good friend
la bell'amica	the nice friend

Grammar Note – **Buono/Buona** and **Bello/Bella** Summary

Here is a summary of all the rules we've covered. Notice the similarities between **buono** and **bello,** and for now, *focus on the most commonly used forms, which are bold in English.* But most of all, try to remember the word combinations in our examples; say them out loud, and listen to how smoothly they flow together when the endings are changed to reflect the different forms of each noun and adjective!

Buono –good	Bello – beautiful, nice, fine, lovely, pretty, handsome
Masculine	Masculine
buono - **after the noun** before nouns that begin with: s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn	bello - **after the noun** before nouns that begin with: s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn
buon - **before the noun**	bel - **before the noun**
Feminine	Feminine
buona - **before** and **after the noun**	bella - **before** and **after the noun**
buon' - before nouns that begin with **–a**	bell' - before nouns that begin with **–a**

1(G)2

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - Studying Italian Verbs and Italian Subject Pronouns

The action words, or verbs, are the heart of every language. One who knows a wide variety of verbs and how to conjugate them quickly has a much easier time understanding others and also expressing their own point of view. We learn verb conjugation – how to change the form of the verb to reflect the speaker – from our native language, naturally and gradually, over many years as we are growing up, simply by listening to the people around us. By the time we are teenagers, we know how to express present, past, and future tenses to describe both action and time. As adults, often the way we use verbs can denote where we are from as much as our accent does. A verb incorrectly conjugated just sounds wrong to our ears in our native language, and this will soon be the case the more we practice our Italian verbs.

At first, learning how to conjugate Italian verbs may seem complicated to the English speaker, and for good reason. In English, we rely on the subject pronouns - I, you, he, she, etc., to signal who is doing the talking. In Italian, however, the speaker is signaled by the verb endings themselves . A different ending must be learned for *each speaker* for *each form of the verb!* Since the Italian verb endings are different for each speaker, the subject pronouns are only included for emphasis in Italian. More often than not, subject pronouns are left out of the sentence in conversational Italian. As an example, in cases where the word "it" is the subject, the third person singular verb form is used, but the subject pronoun "it" is always omitted. But, with a little practice (that is with "verb drills," which are available in the *Conversational Italian Audio Dialogue Practice Book*), this way of speaking will become more easily understood and the correct conjugation of the verb alone will be easy to remember and just "sound right."

The table below shows the order in which all subject pronouns will be listed when learning each verb form, with the technical names (first, second, third person) for each type of conjugation. At first, when learning to conjugate a verb, try to focus only on the **io, tu,** and **noi** forms, as these forms will be used the most in conversation; and luckily, the endings will be the same in the present tense for all three major Italian verb forms!

Subject Pronouns		
io	I	1st person singular
tu	you (familiar)	2nd person singular
Lei/lei/lui	you (polite)/she/he/(it)	3rd person singular
noi	we	1st person plural
voi	you all (familiar)	2nd person plural
Loro/loro	you all (polite)/they	3rd person plural

1(V)1

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Regular -are Verbs

Italian verbs are categorized into three main types that are called infinitive forms, and also referred to as conjugations. In English, verbs have just one infinitive form, the "to" form – for instance: **"to talk/to speak," "to sell,"** and **"to sleep**." In Italian, the infinitive verb is recognized by its ending: **-are** for the first conjugation, **-ere** for the second conjugation, and **-ire** for the third conjugation. For instance, we will soon learn the verbs that correspond to the above English translations: **abitare, vendere** and **dormire.**

To form the present tense of the first conjugation **-are** verbs, just drop the **-are** and add the appropriate ending to the stem that remains, as given in the table below. These endings alone will tell you who is doing the talking. In English, we need to use personal pronouns (I, you, he/she, etc.). But, in conversational Italian, personal pronouns can be, and usually are, omitted. You will notice that in our dialogue, the stewardess asks Caterina, simply, **"Dove abita?"** which translates into the polite sentence, **"Where (do) you live?"**

********* Abitare – to live *********

The table below shows the conjugation of **abitare,** a regular **-are** verb. First, drop the **-are** and you are left with the stem **abit.** Then, add the correct ending to reflect the speaker, and form the new word. The endings are as follows: **o, i, a, iamo, ate, ano.**

As a general guide to the pronunciation of verbs in Italian, remember that the stress will fall in the beginning of the word for the **io, tu,** and **lei/lui** forms. This is most often on the second syllable, but can also be on the first, as with our example verb, **abitare**. For the **noi** and **voi** forms, an additional syllable is created by combining the root with the first vowel of the new ending. The stress will change to the end of the word, and will be at the second to the last syllable. Finally, for **loro,** the stress reverts back to its original location at the beginning of the word! The stressed syllables will be underlined for our examples.

Abitare – to live			
io	abito	o	I live*
tu	abiti	i	you (familiar) live
Lei lei/lui	abita	a	you (polite) live she/he lives
noi	abitiamo	iamo	we live
voi	abitate	ate	you all live
loro	abitano	ano	they live

*Note this simple present tense in Italian can be translated four ways:
io abito is equivalent to the English **I live, I do live, I am living, I am going to live.** 1(V)2

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Direct Reflexive Verbs and Their Pronouns

Direct reflexive verbs are recognized by the additional ending of **–si** to the usual **–are, -ere,** and **–ire** endings of our infinitive verbs. We have already encountered the reflexive verb **chiamarsi** in our dialogue, as this is the infinitive verb from which **chiama** and **chiamo** originate. These are verbs that take the reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself, etc.), which refer back directly to the person who is doing the action.

The reflexive pronouns are:
mi –myself, ti –yourself (fam.), si –yourself (polite), herself, himself, itself
ci –ourselves, vi –yourselves (fam.), si –yourselves (polite), themselves

For now, the only reflexive verb we will learn is **chiamarsi,** since it is so commonly used in introductions. To conjugate all reflexive verbs, both the reflexive pronoun and the verb ending must be changed to agree with the subject pronoun.

********* Chiamarsi – to be called, as in a name*********

So, first let's conjugate **chiamarsi** the way we would any other **–are** verb: Drop the **–arsi** and add the endings you already know to the stem **chiam** to form the new words below. The stress will fall on the second syllable for our first three forms and the **loro** form.

io	chiamo	I call
tu	chiami	you (familiar) call
Lei lei/lui	chiama	you (polite) call she/he calls
noi	chiamiamo	we call
voi	chiamate	you all call
loro	chiamano	they call

To finish the conjugation, add the reflexive pronoun *before* the verb. Notice that in English the reflexive pronoun goes after the verb, so this may take a little getting used to.

Chiamarsi – to be called, as in a name/to name oneself			
io	mi	chiamo	I call myself
tu	ti	chiami	you (familiar) call yourself
Lei/lei/lui	si	chiama	you (polite)name/she/he calls yourself, herself, himself, itself
noi	ci	chiamiamo	we call ourselves
voi	vi	chiamate	you all call yourselves
loro	si	chiamano	they call themselves

Grammar Point - The Many Forms of "You" in Italian – Singular Forms

In Italian, when we address someone as "you," different subject pronouns and verb endings are used. As we've seen already from the examples in the prior verb sections from this chapter, there are four different subject pronouns and verb endings in Italian that all mean "you" – for each verb! How do we know which is the correct form to use in a given situation? Since this is the first time we are studying verbs, we will go through the situations when each form of "you" is used. Also, throughout the text from here on, references to the familiar (fam.) and polite (pol.) forms of the Italian verbs may appear for clarity after the English translation of the verb.

Keep in mind that for conversational Italian, the familiar is used very commonly in Italy today, so if you can remember the verb endings for the **io,** **tu,** and **noi** forms (which will be the same for each subject pronoun in all three conjugations), you are well on your way to speaking Italian! Remember these forms when you speak; recognize the other forms when you are listening.

You familiar (singular) – **tu** with an **–i** ending for the **–are, –ere** and **–ire** verbs is used for people you know well, or are familiar with – family (always with children), friends, or someone you would like to be a friend. For instance, **"Tu parli italiano?"** uses the "familiar you" form of the verb **parlare** to ask the question, **"Do you speak Italian?"** Remember this form for traveling, as it can be used in almost all situations.

You polite (singular) – **Lei** with an **–a** ending for the **–are** verbs is used for people you do not know or have just met, and to be respectful toward someone older than you. **"Lei parla italiano?"** also means, **"Do you speak Italian?"** but asks this question in a more polite way than the example given in the last paragraph. This form of the verb, called the "polite" or "formal" form, is important to show respect to others. For the traveler, who is often a customer, the hotel personnel or the salespeople in a shop may use the polite form. You, in turn, may also want to use this polite form when making requests, and this will be emphasized throughout the text. Notice that in our dialogue, the stewardess Maria uses the "polite you" when she says to Caterina, whom she has just met, **"Lei parla italiano molto bene."** The response may be in the familiar or polite form, and the situation will usually determine what form the rest of the conversation will continue in. We will focus on the appropriate use of the polite form and how and when to switch to the familiar form in Unit 2.

In written Italian, the subject pronoun **Lei** is capitalized in formal situations. In spoken Italian, the meaning of **Lei,** which means **polite you,** and **lei,** which means **she,** is, of course, understood from the situation.

1(V)4

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - The Many Forms of "You" in Italian – Plural Forms

You familiar (plural) – **voi** with an **–ate** ending for the **–are** verbs is used when calling a group of people "you." In this text, this form will be referred to as the "you all" form, since the use of this subject pronoun is similar to the colloquial phrase used in the southern states of America. If speaking directly to a group of people you know, such as your family, use this form. Tour guides when addressing "all of you" on the tour will probably use this form, as they will become familiar with the members of the tour group.

When asking shop clerks, **"Do you have…?"** use this form for the "collective you" that includes owners and shopkeepers, and start your question with, **"Avete…?"** **"Do you all have…?** To ask a group of people if they speak Italian, we can say, **"Voi parlate italiano?"** which means, **"Do you all speak Italian?"**

You polite (plural) – **Loro** with an **–ano** ending for **–are** verbs. **Loro** is capitalized to distinguish the "polite plural you" from **loro,** which means **they**. **Loro** as the "polite you plural" is almost never used by Italians today, and it gives the language a very stiff feeling when it is occasionally used. In a very formal situation, **Loro** may be used to address a group of people, but it is unlikely one will encounter this use while traveling. So, the word **Loro** with a capital "L" to mean "polite you all" will not be included in the tables used to present verb conjugation after this section.

Finally, then, if we want to ask a group of people if they speak Italian in an extremely formal way, we could say, **"Loro parlano italiano?"** which, again, means**, "Do you all (to a group) speak Italian?"** When making a general statement about a group of people, one would also say, **"Loro parlano italiano,"** to mean, **"They speak Italian."**

Subject Pronouns		
io	I	1st person singular
tu	you (familiar)	2nd person singular
Lei/lei/lui	you (polite)/she/he/(it)	3rd person singular
noi	we	1st person plural
voi	you all (familiar)	2nd person plural
Loro/loro	you all (polite)/they	3rd person plural

1(V)5

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 1

Infinitive Forms	-are	-ere	-ire	-ire (isco)
io	o	*	*	*
tu	i	*	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	a	*	*	****
noi	iamo	****	****	****
voi	ate	***	***	***
loro	ano	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (*****)	Avere (******)
io	****	**
tu	***	***
Lei/lei/lui	*	**
noi	*****	*******
voi	*****	*****
loro	****	*****

Irregular Verbs	Andare (*****)	Volere (*******)	Sapere (*******)	Conoscere (*******)
io	****	******	**	******
tu	***	****	***	*******
Lei/lei/lui	**	*****	**	*******
noi	*******	********	********	********
voi	******	******	******	*********
loro	*****	*******	*****	*********

1(V)6

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - Dove and Ecco

As in English, many Italian expressions do not make sense if each word is translated literally, but together the words do have a significant meaning. These types of phrases can be called "idiomatic expressions." Note that many of the meeting/greeting phrases are idiomatic expressions in Italian, and just need to be memorized. Here are a few more. For instance, the interrogative expressions for **where is/where are** are **dov'è** and **dove sono.** The typical answer of **here/there is/are** is **ecco. Ecco** is a single word in Italian that encompasses both the adverbs **here/there** and the verbs **is/are.** Note that **ecco** is used to point out something in plain sight.

Students can practice together to enlarge their vocabulary in each section using these expressions. For instance, one student can ask the next, **"Dov'è l'Italia?"** for **"Where is the (country of) Italy?"** and the response will be, **"Ecco l'Italia!"** for **"Here Italy is!"** when pointing to the correct country on a map.

Dove?	Where?
Dov'è…?	Where is…?
Dove sono …?	Where are…?
Ecco…	Here is…/Here are…
	There is…/There are…
Eccolo!/Eccola!	Here he is!/Here she is!/Here it is!
Eccomi!	Here I am!

To ask someone where they are from, combine the prepositions, **di (of/from)** or **da (from)** with **dove** and a verb, as in the examples below. Either of the two phrases below can be used. (The grammar for this will be covered in Chapter 2). To make it easy to remember the response, simply repeat the same preposition and verb you hear in the question when giving your answer! It should be noted that Italians often answer with the largest city nearest to their town of origin, so you might want to do that also, especially as most Italians are familiar with the names of the larger cities in America.

Di dov'è Lei?	Where are you (pol.) from? (lit. From where are you?)
Di dove sei?	Where are you (fam.) from? (lit. From where are you?)
Sono di Chicago.	I am of (from) Chicago.
Da dove viene?	Where (do) you (pol.) come from? (lit. From where do you come?)
Da dove vieni?	Where (do) you (fam.) come from? (lit. From where do you come?)
Vengo da Chicago.	I come from Chicago.

. 1(IE)1



Gondolas on the Grand Canal, Venice

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers – Counting 0 - 10

We will focus on numbers in every chapter of the first two units. Numbers are important in the daily life of a traveler, as you can imagine, for making reservations, keeping appointments,and purchasing goods and services.

Flash cards that children use when learning addition or multiplication can be an entertaining way to practice numbers in a group. Each student can take turns picking a card, any card, out of the pile, and say the number in Italian!

0	zero	Zero will change to the plural zeri when describing more than one of this number (i.e. 100 has **two zeros**, or due zeri).
1	uno	
2	due	
3	tre	
4	quattro	
5	cinque	
6	sei	
7	sette	
8	otto	
9	nove	
10	dieci	

1(N)1



Venice
Residential Canal

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 2 – At Customs in Italy

Dialogue

After an uneventful flight, Caterina arrives at Milan's Malpensa Airport, and, with documents ready, passes easily through **customs (la dogana).** Here is a brief conversation between **the customs agent Joseph (l'agente doganale Giuseppe)** and Caterina, which starts out politely, but then switches to the familiar. Can you find the point in the dialogue where Giuseppe switches to the familiar when talking to Caterina? Why do you think he does this?

Giuseppe:	Buon giorno. Dov'è il passaporto? Good morning. Where is the passport?
Caterina:	Eccolo. Here it is.
Giuseppe:	Come si chiama? What (is) your (pol.) name?
Caterina:	Mi chiamo Caterina. My name (is) Kathryn.
Giuseppe:	Nome Caterina. E il cognome? Name Kathryn. And the last name?
Caterina:	Occhipinti. Occhipinti.
Giuseppe:	Da dove viene? From where (do) you (pol.) come?
Caterina:	Vengo dall'America. (I) come from America.
Giuseppe:	Tu sei americana, ma il cognome è italiano. You (fam.) are American, but the last name is Italian.
Caterina:	Si. Io sono italo-americana. Yes. I am Italian-American.

2(Vo)5

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 2 – At Customs in Italy

Dialogue (cont'd)

Giuseppe: L'indirizzo in America, è corretto? *(Guarda il passaporto.)*
The address in America, is (it) correct? *(He looks at the passport.)*

Caterina: Si. Via North Michigan sei, appartamento ventidue.
Chicago, Illinois, Stati Uniti.

Yes. Street North Michigan 6, apartment 22. (6 N. Michigan Ave.,#22)
Chicago, Illinois, United States.

Giuseppe: Sei in Italia per vacanza o per lavoro?
Are (you fam.) in Italy for vacation or for work?

Caterina: Sono in vacanza.
(I) am on vacation.

Giuseppe: Dove sei diretta?
Where is (your) destination?

Caterina: Vado a Milano e poi a Stresa, sul Lago Maggiore.
(I) go to Milan and then to Stresa, on Lake Maggiore.

Giuseppe: Va bene. La campagna in Italia è molto bello d'estate.
Per quanti giorni?

That's good. The Italian countryside is very beautiful (in the) summer.
For how many days?

Caterina: Trenta. Torno in America a settembre.
Thirty. (I) return to America in September.

Giuseppe: Qualcosa da dichiarare?
Anything to declare?

Caterina: No, niente.
No, nothing.

Giuseppe: Allora, è tutto a posto. Arrivederci, e buona vacanza!
Then, everything is in place. Good bye and (have a) good vacation! 2(Vo)6

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Customs in Italy

United States citizens must present a valid passport to the customs agent in Italy. Always check upadates for passport requirements. For our purposes, the customs agent spoke to Caterina about her citizenship and vacation in the last dialogue, although many times they say very little. United States citizens can remain in Italy for a period of 90 days as a tourist, on business, or to study, but must obtain a visa or residence permit for a longer stay. This involves filling out forms to declare the length of the stay and the reason for the visit, including any activities of interest. These forms can now be found on the internet. They are in Italian, but can be translated by the online translator, if necessary. Here is a vocabulary list with some of the most commonly encountered words.

la dogana	customs	andare	to go
l'agente doganale	customs agent	venire	to come
la tariffa doganale	the customs duty/tariff	tornare	to return
passare la dogana	to pass through customs	ritornare	to return
il paese	country,village,town		
il paesano	countryman/woman	guardare	to look (at)
paesano(a)	rustic/as in the country	scadere	to expire
la nazionalità	nationality	rinnovare	to renew
i cittadini	citizens	dichiarare	to declare goods
la Communità Europea	European Union		
lo/la straniero(a)	foreigner/alien		
l'ambasciata	embassy	Buon viaggio!	Have a good trip!
l'entrata/l'ingresso	entry	Buon soggiorno!	(Have a) good stay!
la partenza	departure	Buona permanenza!	(Have a) good stay!
l'arrivo	arrival		
il passaporto	passport		
il visto (di ingresso)	visa (of entry)		
il permesso di soggiorno	residence permit		
la carta d'identità	identity card		
il nome	name		
il cognome	last name/surname		
il nome da nubile	maiden name		
l'indirizzo	address		
la data di nascita	date of birth		
il luogo di nascita	place of birth		
in viaggio d'affari	business trip		
in vacanza	on vacation		
le ferie	time off/leave/break/vacations		
il giorno di ferie	vacation day/day off		
il luogo di residenza	place of residence		
il documento di viaggio/i documenti	travel document/documents		
l' occupazione/la professione/il lavoro	occupation/profession/work		

2(Vo)7

Vocabulary - The Calendar in Italian
Days of the Week

Note that the days of the week are not capitalized in Italian, and all take the masculine definite article **il** - except for **Sunday**, which is feminine and takes **la (la domenica)**. Although **settimana** is feminine, **il fine** is masculine, and precedes **settimana** for our favorite part of the week – the weekend **(il fine settimana)**.

il giorno/i giorni	day/days	la settimana	week
il lunedì	Monday	il fine settimana	the weekend
il martedì	Tuesday	la giornata	the entire day
il mercoledì	Wednesday	la serata	the entire evening
il giovedì	Thursday	oggi	today
il venerdì	Friday	domani	tomorrow
il sabato	Saturday	dopodomani	the day after tomorrow
la domenica	Sunday	la mattina	the morning

Months of the Year

The months of the year are not capitalized in Italian.

gennaio	January	il mese	the month
febbraio	February	l'anno	the year
marzo	March	mensile	monthly
aprile	April	annuale	yearly
maggio	May		
giugno	June		
luglio	July		
agosto	August		
settembre	September		
ottobre	October		
novembre	November		
dicembre	December		

The Seasons - **Le Stagioni**

The definite article is used when referring to the seasons; use **in** or **d'** to mean "**in the**."

la primavera/in primavera	(in the) spring	stagione primaverile	springtime	
l'estate/d'estate	(in the) summer	periodo estivo	summertime	
l'autunno/in autunno	(in the) autumn	autunnale	autumnal	
l'inverno/d'inverno	(in the) winter	periodo invernale	wintertime	2(Vo)8

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Basic Communication

For our dialogues, Caterina speaks simple, basic Italian, and understands the more complex Italian spoken to her. Here are some simple phrases that may help in real life situations, when it may be difficult to understand exactly what is meant during an Italian conversation. Also, notice that Italians do not insert the word "do" at the beginning of their questions, as is proper in English. We will learn more of the grammar for these phrases as we progress in the book.

Most Italians have some knowledge of English, and will try to oblige by speaking in both Italian and English if needed, choosing the words they know best from each language. So, don't be afraid to use a few Italian phrases yourself. Somehow, it all works out in the end!

If you are asked,	Parla italiano?	(Do) you speak Italian?
You may reply,	Si, un po'.	Yes, a little.
	Si, molto bene.	Yes, very well.
	No, mi dispiace!	No, I am sorry!
	Parla inglese?	(Do) you speak English?
An Italian may say,	No, parlo soltanto italiano.	No, (I) only speak Italian.
	Dov'è un interprete?	Where is an interpreter?

If you are having difficulty understanding fluent Italian, you may want to say:

Che cosa?	What?
Non capisco.	(I) don't understand.
Non capisco che cosa hai detto.	(I) didn't understand what you said.
Non ho sentito.	(I) didn't hear (you).
Lei parla troppo veloce (per me)!	You speak too fast (for me)!
Per favore, può...	Please, could you...
...parlare più lentamente?	...speak more slowly?
...parlare più piano?	...speak more slowly?
...parlare più forte?	...speak more loudly?
...parlare in inglese?	...speak in English?
Non parlare troppo veloce.	Don't speak too quickly.
Può ripetere?	Could you (pol.) repeat (that)?
Come si dice...?	How (do) you say...? (lit. How does one say...?)
Come si dice in italiano?	How (do) you say (it) in Italian?
Cosa significa?	What does (it) mean?
Come si chiama quello?	What is that called? 2(IP)5

Cultural Note – Describing Nationality

In order to explain where we are from, we must use adjectives that identify our country of origin. For men, adjectives of nationality end in **–o** and change to an **–i** in the plural, and for women, these same adjectives end in **–a** and change to **–e** in the plural. So, a man from Italy is **italiano,** but a woman is **italiana.** Adjectives of nationality that have only one form for both men and women usually end in **–ese**. What to do if the adjective describing nationality ends in an **–e?** Well, use the same **–e** ending for both men and women, and for the plural, change the letter **–e** to an **–i.** Adjectives of nationality always *follow* the noun, and are not capitalized.

European	europeo(a) *(pl. europei, europee)*	African	africano(a)
Austrian	austriaco(a)	Asian	asiatico(a)
Belgian	belga(a)*		
Danish	danese	Central American	centroamericano(a)
Dutch	olandese	European	europeo(a)
English	inglese	Middle Eastern	mediorientale
French	francese	North American	nordamericano(a)
German	tedesco(a)	South American	sudamericano(a)
Grecian	greco(a) *(pl. greci, greche)*	Australian	australiano(a)
Irish	irlandese		
Italian	italiano(a)	Argentinian	argentino(a)
Norwegian	norvegese	Brazilian	brasiliano(a)
Polish	polacco(a)	Canadian	canadese
Portugese	portoghese	Chilean	cileno(a)
Scandanavian	scandinavo(a)	Chinese	cinese
Spanish	spagnolo(a)	Egyptian	egiziano(a)
Swedish	svedese	Indian	indiano(a)
Swiss	svizzero(a)	Indonesian	indonesiano(a)
		Japanese	giapponese
		Korean	coreano(a)
		Mexican	messicano(a)
		Pakistan	pachistano(a)
		Russian	russo(a)
		Turkish	turco(a)
		United States (of America)	statiunitense
		Vietnamese	vietnamita(a)*

*These nationalities have an irregular singular form (**–a** ending for both masculine and feminine) but a regular plural form (**–i** for masculine and **–e** for feminine). 2(IP)6

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Describing Where You Are From

One of the questions most frequently asked of travelers during polite conversation is, "Where are you from?" Two phrases can be used to ask this question in Italian. There are subtle differences in the meaning of these two questions, as well as in the reply for each. The first phrase uses the combination:

di + dove + essere	from + where + to be

This phrase is used to inquire about an individual's place of birth. In Italian, when the verb **to be (essere)** is used, the idea of **from** is expressed with **di,** as in, "From where are you?" In proper English, of course, we would say, "Where are you from?" The answer in Italian will also use **di,** and will be followed by the town of one's birth. Notice that the subject pronoun **io (I)** is usually left out of the answer, as it is understood from the ending of the verb.

Di dov'è Lei?	Where are you (pol.) from?
Di dove sei?	Where are you (fam.) from?
Sono di Chicago.	(I) am from Chicago.

The second phrase uses the combination:

Da + dove + venire	from + where + to come

This phrase uses the action verb **venire,** and is usually used in conversation when someone is visiting or has moved to a new place. The reply will use the **io** form of **venire,** which is **vengo** (See Chapter 7), and **da** for **from,** followed by a city, town, region/state, or country. Also, remember that when speaking of a region, state, or country, the definite article **(il, lo, la, l', gli)** must be used. The preposition **da** is then combined with the definite article to make **dal, dallo, dall', dalla,** or **dagli,** which means, **"from the."** For now, don't worry about these rules. Just look up and remember the correct way to say where you are living in case you are asked!

Da dove viene?/Da dove vieni?	Where do you come from? (pol.)/(fam.)
Vengo dall'America.	(I) come from America./I am from America.
Vengo dagli Stati Uniti.	(I) come from the United States.
Vengo dall'Illinois.	(I) come from Illinois.
Vengo dalla California.	(I) come from California.
Vengo dal New Jersey.	(I) come from New Jersey.
Vengo da Chicago.	(I) come from Chicago.

2(G)3

Grammar Note – Italian Street Addresses

In Italy, the format for street addresses is different from in the United States, as you have probably noticed from the previous dialogue. The word **via** for **street** *precedes* the Italian street name, and is not capitalized when written. The number of the building is given *after* the street name, and is followed by the apartment number. The Italian abbreviation **int.** stands for **interno,** and is used instead of a number sign before the apartment number. Writing the apartment number for the address is not always necessary in Italy, though, as in many towns the same families have lived in the same home for generations! The second line of the address gives the **Italian zip code** for the city **(Codice Avviamento Postale,** or **CAP)** and then the name of the city. The **CAP** should always be included. The region (usually abbreviated) is usually written in parentheses after the city as well. Here is Caterina's (fictional) address in proper English, and then in Italian, side by side for comparison.

6 North Michigan Street, #22	via North Michigan, 6 int. 22
Chicago, IL 61615	61615 Chicago (IL)

Grammar Note – Saying the Date in Italian

In the last section of this chapter, you will learn Italian numbers from 20 – 99, and then can start saying the date in Italian. Here is the word order that is followed in Italian:

definite article + number +di +month

This is actually a lot easier than it may look! Below are a few examples. You will notice that in English we say, "January second," for "January 2," and so on, while in Italian, the phrasing and word order reads ,"the two of January." However, the word **primo,** which means **first,** must always be used to describe the first day of the month, instead of **uno.**

Oggi è il due di gennaio.	Today is January 2.
Domani è il tre di gennaio.	Tomorrow is January 3.
Dopodomani è il quattro di gennaio.	The day after tomorrow is January 4.
Oggi è il primo di agosto.	Today is August 1. (lit. the first of August)

To say "On Mondays…" referring to something that happens *every* Monday, just use the definite article **il** or **la** before the day of the week. The definite article **il** will work for all of the **masculine days of the week (lunedì, maretdì, mercoledì, venerdì,** and **sabato),** but remember to use **la** before the feminine day that is **Sunday (domenica).**

Il lunedì io vado al lavoro.	On Mondays, I go to work.
La domenica io vado in chiesa.	On Sundays, I go to church.

2(G)4

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Singular and Plural Nouns and Adjectives

In the "Getting Started" section, we learned that all Italian nouns are either masculine or feminine and that each type of noun uses a different form of the definite article **(the) (il, lo, la, l', i, gli, le)**.

In most situations, the masculine noun will end in **–o.**
What if we want to make it plural? Just change the **–o** at the end of the word to an **–i.**

il giorno (day) becomes i giorni (days)

In most situations, the feminine noun will end in **–a.**
What if we want to make it plural? Just change the **–a** at the end of the word to an **–e.**

la settimana (week) becomes le settimane (weeks)

If a noun ends in **–e,** it can be either masculine or feminine.
To make it plural, we simply change the **–e** at the end of the word to an **–i.**

il viaggiatore (male traveler) becomes i viaggiatori (group of male travelers)

Nouns ending in **–e** can be a bit confusing as far as gender goes in the plural. For instance, **stagione** is a feminine word that in the plural has an **–i** ending, which we have just described as masculine! To help to solve this problem, *the definite article that is used will remain feminine in the plural form* and remind us in each case that the plural noun is feminine. So, **la stagione** becomes **le stagioni**. (See, the title in the "Vocabulary" section a few pages back.)

la stagione (season) becomes le stagioni (seasons)

For the adjectives that describe these nouns, then, we will need four different endings: **-o** and **–i,** for the masculine singular and plural, and **–a** and **–e** for the feminine singular and plural. The endings for the adjectives, then, correspond exactly to the gender for the nouns they modify in both the singular and the plural! See the next page for some examples using the adjectives you have met so far, **buono** and **bello.**

Singular to Plural Nouns and Adjectives Table

masculine singular	o	goes to	i	masculine plural
feminine singular	a	goes to	e	feminine plural
masculine/feminine singular	e	goes to	i	masculine/feminine plural

Grammar Note – Singular and Plural Adjectives
Buono

The adjective **buono** follows the rules we have just outlined in the last section for changing its singular form to the plural. There are two masculine singular forms, of course, **buono** and **buon,** but the plural will be the same for each, and is **buoni.** Remember, this adjective changes form in the singular to **buon** only when placed before the noun! You will recall that **buona** is used both before and after feminine nouns. The plural is always **buone.**

Singular to Plural Buono				
buono	o	goes to	i	buoni
buon	(masc. before noun)	goes to	i	buoni
buona	a	goes to	e	buone

Now we are ready for some examples of noun/adjective combinations using **buono** to describe the good time you will have in Italy!

il giorno buono	the good day	becomes	i giorni buoni
il buon giorno	the good day	becomes	i buoni giorni
la buona settimana	the good week	becomes	le buone settimane

When **buono** modifies a masculine noun that ends in **–e,** both the adjective and the noun will change to **–i** in the plural, so **il buon dottore** becomes **i buoni dottori.**

For our very last example below, the noun being modified is **stagione,** which we have just learned is a feminine noun that ends in **–e.** We have also learned that the definite article is used to signal the gender of nouns that end in **–e** for both the singular and the plural forms. If we add an adjective such as **buona,** *the ending of the adjective must follow that of the definite article,* and the phrase will change to **le buone.** The noun will change its **–e** ending to **–i,** as usual, and the final phrase in the plural will be **le buone stagioni.**

il buon dottore	the good doctor	becomes	i buoni dottori
la buona stagione	the good season	becomes	le buone stagioni

2(G)6

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Singular and Plural Adjectives
Bello

When placed *after* the noun, the adjective **bello** follows the basic rules for changing singular adjectives to plural adjectives that we have already discussed: **bello** becomes **belli** and **bella** becomes **belle**. These additional plural forms should be fairly easy to commit to memory, especially since **bello** is such a commonly used word in Italy!

Singular to Plural Bello After the Noun				
bello	o	goes to	i	belli
bella	a	goes to	e	belle

Now we are ready for some examples of noun/adjective combinations using **bello** to describe the wonderful time you will have in Italy! Remember that for nouns that end in an **–e**, the definite article will signal the gender and number, and **bello** will agree with the definite article; the last letter of the noun will change from an **–e** to an **–i**.

il giorno bello	the beautiful day	becomes	i giorni belli
la settimana bella	the wonderful week	becomes	le settimane belle
il dottore bello	the nice doctor	becomes	i dottori belli
la stagione bella	the nice season	becomes	le stagioni belle

When the adjective **bello** is placed *before* the noun, changing the singular to the plural form is a little bit more difficult. The endings actually follow the same pattern as the plural definite article (**i, gli,** and **le** – see the "Getting Started" section). *Don't get too bogged down trying to memorize these endings right now, though, as most times it is perfectly fine to place **bello** after the noun and the regular endings can be used!*

Singular to Plural Bello Before the Noun				
bel	(masc. before consonant)	goes to	i	bei
bello	(masc. before, s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn)	goes to	gli	begli
bell'	(masc. before vowel)	goes to	gli	begli
bella	(fem. before consonant)	goes to	le	belle
bell'	(fem. before vowel)	goes to	le	belle

il bel giorno	the beautiful day	becomes	i bei giorni
il bello zio	the handsome/nice uncle	becomes	i begli zii
il bell'albero	the beautiful tree	becomes	i begli alberi
la bella settimana	the nice week	becomes	le belle settimane
la bella stagione	the beautiful season	becomes	le belle stagioni
la bell'europea	the beautiful European	becomes	le belle euoropee

Final Summary **Buono** and **Bello**

	Buono		after the noun	Bello	
	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
masculine	buono	buoni		bello	belli
feminine	buona	buone		bella	belle

	Buono		before the noun	Bello	
	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
masculine	il buon	i buoni		il bel	i bei
masculine s+consonant z, ps, gn, pn	il buono	i buoni		il bello	gli begli
			masculine +vowel	il bell’	gli begli
feminine	la buona	le buone		la bella	le belle
feminine +vowel “a”	la buon’	le buone	feminine +vowel	la bell’	le belle

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense – First Conjugation
More Regular **–are** Verbs

Here are some important regular **–are** verbs. Practice the different conjugated forms of each verb to get used to how the words sound with their different endings, focusing on the "I," "you familiar," and "we" forms. Drop the **–are** and add: **o, i, a, iamo, ate, ano.**

abitare	to live	fermare	to stop
accettare	to accept	firmare	to sign
accompagnare	to come along with	fotografare	to take a picture
affittare	to rent	funzionare	to function/work
amare	to love	girare	to turn/tour
annullare	to cancel	giurare	to swear/take an oath
arredare	to furnish/equip	guadagnare	to earn money
arrivare	to arrive	guardare	to look at
ascoltare	to listen	guidare	to drive
aspettare	to wait	gustare	to enjoy the taste of food
attraversare	to cross	illuminare	to light up
atterrare	to land (plane)	imparare	to learn
aiutare	to help	importare	to be important/matter
ballare	to dance	indossare	to wear/put on
buttare	to throw (away)	informare	to inform/educate
camminare	to walk	iniziare	to begin/start
cantare	to sing	insegnare	to teach
cenare	to eat diner	mandare	to send
chiacchierare	to chat/gossip	mostrare	to show/exhibit
chiamare	to call/telephone	nuotare	to swim
compilare	to fill out (a form)	obliterare	to cancel/validate ticket
comprare	to buy	ordinare	to order
confermare	to confirm (reservation)	parlare	to talk/speak
controllare	to check/control	passare	to pass through/spend time
convalidare	to validate		to put through (telephone)
costare	to cost	pensare	to think
cucinare	to cook food	portare	to carry/bring
danzare	to dance (perform)	pranzare	to eat lunch
decollare	to take off	prenotare	to make a reservation
depositare	to check baggage	preparare	to prepare
desiderare	to desire/want/wish for	presentare	to introduce
dichiarare	to declare (customs)	provare	to try/test/rehearse
domandare	to ask	raccomandare	to recommend
entrare	to enter	regalare	to give a gift

2(V)7

Present Tense – First Conjugation
More Regular **-are** Verbs (cont'd)

restare	to stay/remain
richiamare	to call back (telephone)
ricordare	to remember
rifare	to re-do/make up a room
rinnovare	to renovate
riparare	to repair
riposare	to rest
riscaldare	to reheat/warm up
riservare	to reserve
ritornare	to return
salutare	to greet/say hello
scappare	to escape/run away/leave
scherzare	to joke
scontare	to discount/reduce (price)
scordare	to forget
sembrare	to seem/appear/look or feel like
sognare	to dream
sorpassare	to overtake/pass on road
sostare	to take a break/stop
sperare	to hope
squillare	to ring (telephone/doorbell)
suonare	to play music
svoltare	to turn around
timbrare	to stamp (ticket)
tornare	to return
traslocare	to move/change residence
trovare	to find/meet by chance /visit
usare	to use/employ
vietare	to forbid/ban/obstruct/block
visitare	to visit (a place)
volare	to fly

The following verbs end in **-care, -gare, -ciare, -giare**, and **-iare.** and have irregular spelling or pronunciation in some conjugations, to be discussed in later chapters:

abbracciare	to hug/embrace
allacciare	to fasten/tie/lace
annoiare	to bore
assaggiare	to taste/nibble
baciare	to kiss
bloccare	to block
cambiare	to change
cercare	to look for
cominciare	to start/begin
consigliare	to give advice
dimenticare	to forget
festiggiare	to celebrate/party
giocare	to play game/sport
graziare	to pardon/forgive
imbarcare	to board
iniziare	to begin/start
inviare	to send
lasciare	to leave be/let go
litigare	to argue/fight
mangiare	to eat
noleggiare	to rent a car
odiare	to hate
pagare	to pay
parcheggiare	to park
passeggiare	to walk slowly/stroll
pescare	to fish
pregare	to pray/ask of/beg
ringraziare	to thank
spagliare	to be wong
significare	to mean
soffiare	to blow
spiegare	to explain
studiare	to study
tagliare	to cut
toccare	to touch
viaggiare	to travel

2(V)-8

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense – First Conjugation
Irregular –are Verb Andare

Andare is an irregular verb that means **to go,** and will come up frequently in its various forms in our text since our focus is on traveling. Since it is irregular, the stem left after the **–are** ending is dropped will change for all forms except the **noi** and **voi** form. But, you will notice from the table below that the endings are all regular! You will find it is easiest to memorize all the different conjugations of **andare** as individual words. The **noi** form of this verb, **andiamo,** is also important, as it is used to mean not only **we go**, but also, **"Let's go!"** **"Andiamo!"** is written with an exclamation point when it takes the meaning of **"Let's go!"** I am sure you will hear this word in Italy, if you haven't already here in America!

Andare – to go		
io	vado	I go
tu	vai	you (familiar) go
Lei lei/lui	va	you (polite)go she/he goes
noi	andiamo	we go
voi	andate	you all go
loro	vanno	they go

Grammar Point – Writing "I" and "Is" in Italian
Italian Accents

A couple of notes that are essential to know about how to write Italian should be mentioned here, even though our main focus is on learning how to speak Italian.

First, you may have noticed that the word for **I, io,** is not capitalized in Italian the way it is in English. Instead, Italians give emphasis in writing to the polite forms of **you, Lei** and **Loro,** by capitalizing both of these forms. When addressing a man in Italian, of course, it is simly understood that **Lei** refers to the polite form of **you,** and not the word for "she."

Also, the word that means **is** in Italian, **è,** is always written with an accent. The Italian letter **e** without the accent is the word **and**. When speaking Italian, the sound of the accented word **è** is stronger than the unaccented **e,** and the meaning should be easily understood from the context. Otherwise, the accent is used in written Italian when the last syllable should get the emphasis when speaking, as in the commonly used word for **city, città.** Did you notice that the days of the week with an **–i** ending **(lunedì, maretdì, mercoledì, giovedì,** and **venerdì)** are also written with an accent? 2(V)9

Present Tense – Auxiliary Verb **Essere**

"To be, or not to be…" is one of the most famous lines ever written in the English language. But that phrase would not be possible if there were no verb to express the very idea that we exist. Think of how many times a day we say, "I am," or, "he is," or "we are" – all forms of the English infinitive verb "to be."

In Italian, the verb **essere** means **to be**. **Essere** is categorized as an auxiliary, or "linking" verb, as it links the subject in the beginning of the sentence with specific information about the subject at the end of the sentence. No action is described, as with the action verb **andare (to go)** from the prior section, or the very first verb we learned in Chapter 1, **abitare (to live)**. Instead, with the verb **essere,** the subject can be thought of as one and the same as, or "linked" to the information that follows.

As this book progresses, we will see how the use of the linking verb **essere** requires the endings for the words that follow to match the gender and number of the subject – they are, after all, one and the same!

For now, just focus on learning the different forms of **essere** in the present tense. **Essere** is an irregular verb, and all forms need to be memorized – but they should be easy to remember given the daily use you will get out of them!

Essere – to be		
io	sono	I am
tu	sei	you (familiar) are
Lei lei/lui	è	you (polite)are she/he is
noi	siamo	we are
voi	siete	you all are
loro	sono	they are

2(V)10

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 2

Infinitive Forms	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	o	*	*	****
tu	i	*	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	a	*	*	****
noi	iamo	****	****	****
voi	ate	***	***	***
loro	ano	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Avere (*******)
io	sono	**
tu	sei	***
Lei/lei/lui	è	**
noi	siamo	*******
voi	siete	*****
loro	sono	*****

Irregular Verbs	Andare (to go)	Volere (*******)	Sapere (*******)	Conoscere (*******)
io	vado	******	**	*******
tu	vai	****	***	*******
Lei/lei/lui	va	*****	**	*******
noi	andiamo	********	********	**********
voi	andate	******	******	********
loro	vanno	********	*****	*********

2(V)11



Cable Car in front of La Scala Opera House, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions – "Come va?"

If you spend any time at all in Italy, you are sure to hear expressions using the word **va,** which means **goes.** We do the same in America, if you think about it. "How's it going?" is a familiar slang expression we use with our friends. They often answer with the slang (and grammatically incorrect**)** "It's going good." Nobody is actually *going* anywhere, of course… it's just a figure of speech!

You will notice from the list below that the subject pronoun "it" is always omitted and that the simple present tense is used in these expressions to convey the same meaning as the progressive ("ing") tense in English.

So, have fun with these expressions. For practice, ask your friends how things are going, and see what creative answers they can come up with (in Italian)!

Come va?	How is it going?
Va bene.	It goes well./It is fine./O.K.
Abbastanza bene.	Pretty good.
Così, così.	So, so.
Non c'è male.	Not too badly.
Bene.	Fine./Well./Good.
Male.	Badly.
Molto male.	Very badly.

By the way, if someone answers, **"Male,"** a polite reply would be, **"Mi dispiace,"** for **"I'm sorry,"** as we've learned from Chapter 1.

A variant of this expression is used in order to ask someone what he or she wants to do:

Cosa ti va di fare?	What do you want to do/feel like doing?

And, if you don't feel like doing something, you can always say,

Non mi va.	I don't feel like it.

2(IE)3



Traffic along the Colosseum, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers – Counting 20 – 99

In order to count from 20 to 99 in Italian, just combine the numbers from one to ten that we have learned in Chapter 1 with the numbers from 20 through 90 that are given below. The method is the same as in English!

Counting by Tens	
20	venti
30	trenta
40	quaranta
50	cinquanta
60	sessanta
70	settanta
80	ottanta
90	novanta

There is only one rule necessary to remember for Italian: the numbers **one** and **eight**, **uno** and **otto,** are added to the number stem only *after dropping the last vowel from the stem*. This makes for smoother pronunciation.

The following line, coined by a student, rhymes a bit and may help with remembering the rule for 30 to 90: "For ones and eights, take away **a**!" Here are the 20's and 30's in full.

20 – venti	30 – trenta
21 – ventuno	31 – trentuno
22 – ventidue	32 – trentadue
23 – ventitre	33 - trentatre
24 – ventiquattro	34 – trentaquattro
25 – venticinque	35 – trentacinque
26 – ventisei	36 – trentasei
27 – ventisette	37 – trentasette
28 – ventotto	38 – trentotto
29 – ventinove	39 – trentanove

2(N)3



Rome
The Colosseum

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 3 – Taking a Taxi

Dialogue

After passing through customs in Malpensa Airport, located about 40 minutes northwest of Milan, Caterina chooses to take a taxi to the train station to the adjacent town of Gallarate. From Gallarate, she will take a train directly into Milan's Stazione Centrale to complete her journey, where her cousin Pietro will be waiting for her. Caterina chooses an "official" taxi from the line of cars outside at the taxi stand designated by a bright orange sign. Then, Caterina uses simple, polite Italian phrases to hire **the taxi driver (il tassista)** for the short ride.

Note the placement of the subject pronoun **io** after the verb when the taxi driver wants to emphasize that he would like to take the luggage for Caterina. A similar expression is **"Vado io!"** for **"I'll get it!"** when going to answer the door at home.

Caterina:	Buon giorno. Good morning.
Il tassista:	Buon giorno. Good morning.
Caterina:	È libero? Are (you pol.) free (available)?
Il tassista:	Si. Sono libero. Dove vuole andare? Yes. (I) am free. Where (do) (you pol.) want to go?
Caterina:	Stazione ferroviaria di Gallarate, per piacere. (The) train station at Gallarate, please.
Il tassista:	Molto bene. Very well.
Caterina:	Quanto costa? How much (does it) cost?
Il tassista:	Quattordici euro. 14 euros.
Caterina:	Va bene. OK.

3(Vo)9

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 3 – Taking a Taxi

Dialogue (cont'd)

Il tassista: Ha bagagli?
(Do) (you pol.) have (any) luggage?

Caterina: Ho solamente una valigia.
(I) have only one suitcase.

Il tassista: Le porto io, la valigia.
I'll take it for you, the suitcase. (lit. For you, take (it) I will, the suitcase.)

Caterina: No, grazie. Non è pesante.
No, thank you. (It) is not heavy.

Il tassista: Allora, andiamo!
Then, let's go.

(Dopo quindici minuti...)
(After fifteen minutes...)
Ecco la stazione ferroviaria.
Here is the train station.

Caterina: Ecco quindici euro. Tenga il resto.
Here are fifteen euros. Keep the change.

Il tassista: Grazie per la mancia!
Thank you for the tip!*

Caterina: Prego.
You are welcome.

*Italian taxi drivers do not expect a tip of a certain percentage for each ride. All taxi fees are official and set by each city. For instance, there is a fixed charge to and from the airport in Rome, and an automatic surcharge when hiring a taxi from a train station. For larger cities, the meter may start with a base fare that varies with the time of day. For short trips with luggage, there is a surcharge of 1€ per bag automatically added on, which the taxi drivers often remind their passengers of ahead of time. Caterina avoided this charge by handling her own bag, and then "rounded" up the fare so that the taxi driver ended up with a 1€ tip, which is the customary way to leave a bit extra for the driver. For the safest (and fairest) taxi ride, always choose a taxi from the official taxi stand with a properly working meter and know the address of your destination (in Italian)!

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Trains and Automobiles

Here are a few vocabulary words to get you started traveling around Italy by your chosen means of transportation. The list includes vehicles you may encounter while on the road, or need to take to visit the Italian islands, and, of course, important verbs from the dialogue in this chapter.

la stazione dei treni	train station
la stazione ferroviaria	train station
il treno	train
il vagone/la carrozza letto	sleeper car
il vagone/la carrozza ristorante	restaurant car
il vagone/la carrozza fumatori	smoking car
il binario	track
il marciapiede/la banchina	platform/sidewalk
il/la macchinista	conductor
il controllore	ticket collector
il/la passeggero(a)	passenger
il biglietto	ticket
la biglietteria	ticket counter (purchase)
la biglietteria automatica	automatic ticket dispenser
il biglietto veloce	quick ticket dispenser
la tariffa (ferroviaria) intera	full (train) fare
la tariffa (ferroviaria) ridotta	discount (train) fare
il supplemento	additional charge
in carrozza!	all aboard!
tutti a bordo!	all aboard!
il treno sbagliato	the wrong train
la buca	hole/ditch
il taxi/tassì	taxi
il/la tassista	the taxi driver
l'autista	driver/chauffer
la macchina	car
l'automobile/l'auto	car
il camion	truck
il carro attrezzi	tow truck
la stazione bus	the bus station
l'autobus/il bus	bus
l'autista di autobus	bus driver
la fermata dell'autobus	bus stop
la linea di autobus	bus line

l'ambulanza	ambulance
la motocicletta	motorcycle
la bicicletta	bicycle
la vespa	scooter
lo scuolabus	school bus
l'autopompa	fire truck
la metropolitana	subway
il vaporetto	passenger boat in Venice
l'aliscafo	the hydrofoil on the Amalfi coast

andare	to go
portare	to carry/to bring
tenere	to keep
volere	to want

3(Vo)11

Vocabulary - Money

When speaking about money, the following words and phrases will come in handy. The most common Italian words for **money** are **il denaro** and **i soldi,** and the Italian currency is **l'euro.** All of these nouns are invariable (the ending does not change). American money is called **i dollari**. Listen a bit and you may hear some of these expression in Italian movies, or even in real life! When changing money, be sure to bring your passport to the bank.

la banca	the bank	costare	to cost
il denaro	money (lit. cash ahead of time)	pagare	to pay
l'anticipo	downpayment	cambiare	to change money
denaro in mano	cash in hand	accettare	to accept
denaro straniero	foreign money		
denaro sudato	hard-earned money (lit. sweated money)		
senza denaro	poor (lit. without money)		
ricco	rich/affluent		

i soldi	money
un sacco di soldi	lots of money (lit. a bag of money)
soldi in mano	cash in hand
da due soldi	very cheap
pochi soldi	for a little money

i contanti	cash
il prezzo	price
la tariffa	price, as in rate/fee/duty/tariff
la tariffa intera	the full price
la tariffa ridotta	the reduced price
la tariffa base	basic fee/lowest fee
la tariffa superiore	premium fee
la tariffa di gruppo	group fee

la moneta	change/small bills
la lira	currency of Italy prior to joining the European Union, symbol: **ℓ**
l'euro	currency of the European union, symbol: **€**
i dollari	American money/American dollars
il cambio/ il tasso di cambio	exchange/ exchange rate
il portofoglio/il portamonete	wallet

Non ho una lira.	I am broke. (lit. I don't have one lira.)
Sono senza soldi.	I have run out of money. (lit. I am without money.)
Sono a secco.	I am out of gasoline/money. (lit. I am dry.)

3(Vo)12

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Money

You may have noticed from our dialogue that the word **euro** is invariable in Italian – the ending is the same whether we are speaking of one or one million **euros!** Also, although in English we pronounce the word "euro" something like "your/ro," in Italian, the word is pronounced with the **–u,** as you may recall, pronounced as an "oo" sound. Phonetically, the Italian word is pronounced something like this: "ehoo/ro," with each syllable running directly into the next.

Here are some important phrases to use when changing money:

Dov'è una banca?	Where is a bank?
Cerco una banca.	I am looking (for) a bank.
Ho bisogno di cambiare i soldi.	I need to change money.
Vorrei cambiare i soldi.	I would like to change money.
Ho bisogno di cambiare i dollari con l'eruo.	I need to change (the money in) dollars for (the money in) euros.
Vorrei cambiare i dollari con l'euro.	I would like to change dollars for euros.
Qual'è il tasso di cambio?	What is the exchange rate?
Qual'è la tariffa?	What is the fee (for exchanging)?
Qual'è la percentuale?	What is the percent?

It may also be helpful to know some phrases to use in order to barter with the local merchants in the piazza. We begin by asking:

Quanto costa…	How much is… (lit. How much costs…)

Of course, the listed price will be:

troppo caro	too expensive
costoso	expensive, costly
proprio costoso	really expensive
Costa un occhio della testa!	Costs an arm and a leg! (lit. Costs an eye out of the head!)

Unless the article happens to be:

in vendita/in saldo,saldi	on sale/on sale for a reduced price
in svendita	in a closeout sale
sconto/scontato	discount/discounted
a prezzo basso	at low/lowered price

3(IP)7

Important Phrases – Money (cont'd)

Once we have decided on that perfect souvenir, here are the different methods to use to pay for it!

If you want to ask if a certain method of payment is accepted, you could say:

Posso/Può pagare (con)...	Can I/Can you pay (with)...
...la carta di credito?	...a credit card?
...il bancomat?	...a debit card?
...in contanti?	...in cash?
...un assegno?	...a check?

And the answer will usually be:

Accettiamo la carta di credito.	We accept credit card(s).
Accettiamo il bancomat.	We accept debit card(s).
Documento, per favore...	Identification, please...
Non accettiamo assegni.*	We do not accept checks.*

To ask for the check in a restaurant:

Il conto, per favore.	The check, please.

When dining, a service charge may be included in the price of the meal and should be listed on the restaurant bill – always look at the bill or ask your waiter if you are not sure. A little more is sometimes left for the waiter as a tip as well, but this does not have to be a certain percentage of the bill, and is usually determined by "rounding up" the payment to make it easier to pay in cash. (See Unit 3 for advice on tipping.)

È incluso il servizio?	Is the service charge included?
Tenga il resto.	Keep the change.

If you only have large bills or if you want a receipt, you might ask and hear in response:

Mi può portare il resto, per favore?	Could you bring me the change, please? (pol.)
Mi può dare la ricevuta, per favore?	Could you give me a receipt, please? (pol).

*Italian checks are not usually accepted for small purchases, and foreign checks are not likely to be accepted at all! 3(IP)8

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Regions and Major Cities of Italy

All of Italy is divided into regions, much like the states we have in America. In Italy, though, the history behind these regions and the cultural traditions that are associated with each go back thousands of years, from before Italians thought of themselves as a unified country. Rome is the general dividing line between northern and southern Italy. The regions in Italy and the capital city for each is listed below, from north to south. The larger Italian regions and cities have an English translation, while others are known only by their Italian name. As usual, the Italian names are in **blue,** and the English names in **black**. How many do you recognize?

There are four small regions at the very northern border of Italy, along the Alps, from west to east:

Region	**City**
Aosta	Aosta
Alto Adige	Bolzano
Trentino	Trento
Friuli-Venezia Giulia	Trieste

The larger regions are:

Region	**City**	**Region**	**City**
Piemonte	Torino	Piedmont	Turin
Liguria	Genova	Liguria	Genoa
Lombardia	Milano	Lombardy	Milan
Veneto	Venezia	Veneto	Venice
Emilia Romagna	Bologna		
Toscana	Firenze	Tuscany	Florence
Marche	Ancona		
Umbria	Perugia		
Lazio	Roma	Lazio	Rome
Abruzzo*	L'Aquilla**	Abruzzo	Aquilla
Campania	Napoli	Campania	Naples
Puglia	Bari		
Molise	Campobasso		
Basilicata	Potenza		
Calabria	Catanzaro		
Sicilia	Palermo	Sicily	Palermo

*In the past, the plural form of this name, **Abruzzi,** was used to describe this region, which was made up of several smaller regions. Today the correct term is in the singular – **Abruzzo.**

The definite article **L' is part of this city's name, and so it is always included and is capitalized.

3(IP)9

Cultural Note - Discovering Italy

The country of Italy is actually a peninsula, easily identified by its boot-like shape jutting out from the heart of Europe. It extends from the Alpine mountains of Switzerland and Austria in the north into the Mediterranean Sea, and includes the large islands of Sardinia and Sicily, which bring it almost to the tip of Africa. The extension of this peninsula southward from central Europe suggests a wide variety of climates, although the weather is moderated through much of the country by Italy's central location within the Mediterranean Sea and the location of major cities along the western or eastern shorelines. The Apennine Mountains form the central "spine" of the country, and here one can see snow in the winter. From Rome southward, the summers are very hot, and travel in the spring or fall brings the nicest weather (and fewer tourists). In the month of August, it seems as if all of the Italian cities, large and small, close down for several weeks so that people can return to their town of origin or escape the summer heat in the treasured mountains and beaches. (See Unit 3 of this book, when Caterina has the opportunity to join her Italian family on their Ferragosto vacation!)

There are two smaller countries within the country of Italy: San Marino, along the eastern coast, and Vatican City, just northwest of Rome. Vatican City is home to the Pope, the leader of the Catholic religion. It is the world's smallest independent state at 106 acres, with about 500 inhabitants, and is surrounded by high stone walls, with entryways that are watched over by the Vatican guards. There are long lines in the summer months when Catholics and art lovers visit the famous Basilica of St. Peter and the Vatican museums, which house an extensive collection of artwork and artifacts from Roman times through the centuries. Here too, you'll find the Sistine Chapel, famous for Michelangelo's fresco known as *The Creation of Adam* on the ceiling. It is helpful to book a tour of Vatican City and other well-known Italian cultural attractions ahead of time in order to avoid the long lines of tourists waiting to gain entry. There are many tour books which list telephone numbers and internet sites that make booking a daily tour from home prior to a trip to Italy easy and reliable.

Which brings us to the question – what is the best time to visit Italy? Of course, the answer is, just about any time! Italy is a country of friendly people, with something for everyone to see and enjoy. The high tourist season for the larger, well-known cities of Rome, Venice and Florence is late May through August (with the best sales in the last week of July). There are many other cities and towns to visit year-round, of course, each with its own particular beauty, traditional events, wonderful architecture, food, art, and music. See the third unit of our textbook for lists of wonderful foods found in Italy and the major sites, attractions and holidays celebrated in Italy today.

3(IP)10

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - How to Say "Yes" and "No"
The Uses of **Si, No, Non** and **Mai**

In the previous dialogue, we heard many exchanges between Caterina and the taxi driver that required replying in the positive, with **si,** for **yes,** or in the negative, with **no** for **no.** This is easy enough. It is also easy to make any verb negative in Italian simply by using the word **non,** as we do in English, with the word **not.** The difference, though, is that in Italian, the word **non** comes *before* the verb, instead of after the verb, as in, **"Il baggaglio non è pesante."** As we have discussed already, in Italian, the subject "it" is always left out of the sentence. So, when Caterina speaks to the taxi driver in our dialogue, the sentence above becomes, **"Non è pesante."**

In order to say **never** or **ever** in Italian to make the ultimate negative statement, place **non** *before* the verb as usual, and then add the word **mai** *after* the verb. **"Non è mai pesante,"** translates to, **"It is never heavy."**

Grammar Note - **Quanto** - Asking How Much/How Many

Quanto means **how much** in Italian, and is often used as an interrogative pronoun *preceding the verb* **costare (to cost).** In this case, **quanto** is invariable, and the phrase is, **"Quanto costa?"** and uses the third person singular conjugation for **costare,** which is **costa.** When Caterina asks how much the cab fare ("it") will be in our dialogue, she says, **"Quanto costa?"** If Caterina were to go to a shop and ask how much several things would be, she would need to use the third person plural, **costano,** and the phrase would be, **"Quanto costano?"**

Quanto also means **how much** or **how many** in Italian when it is used as an interrogative adjective and *precedes a noun*. As we have learned, adjectives that precede nouns must agree with the noun in gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural). The four forms of **quanto** are therefore **quanto, quanti, quanta, and quante**. In Chapter 2, the customs agent asks Caterina how long her stay will be, by saying, **"Da quanti giorni?"** which means, **"For how many days?"** See also the "Idiomatic Expressions" section at the end of this chapter, for the phrase, **"Quanti anni hai?"** which means, **"How old are you?"**

Singular to Plural Quanto				
quanto	o	goes to	i	quanti
quanta	a	goes to	e	quante

3(G)9



Taxi Stand, Rome



.. Taxi Stand at the Train Station, Florence

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Auxiliary Verb **Avere**

The verb **avere,** which means **to have,** is an essential auxiliary verb in Italian. "I have, you have, he/she has," will be used often when conversing in Italian, and all forms of this verb should be memorized and readily available for use. **Avere** is an irregular verb in all forms except the **voi** form, where it follows the usual rules for the **–ere** verbs that we will encounter shortly. Remember that the Italian **h** is always silent!

Avere – to have		
io	ho	I have
tu	hai	you (familiar) have
Lei lei/lui	ha	you (polite) have she/he has
noi	abbiamo	we have
voi	avete	you all have
loro	hanno	they have

Expressions that Use **Avere**

Many Italian expressions of of emotion or physical sensation use **avere** as an essential part of the phrase. For the proper translation in English, we would use the verb "to be" in these phrases instead. But, we must learn to think in Italian if we want to speak in Italian! One fully conjugated example of these common phrases is given in the table below, with the literal and actual translations. A list of more expressions that take **avere** follows.

Avere fame – to have hunger/be hungry			
io	ho fame	(lit. I have hunger.)	I am hungry.
tu	hai fame	(lit. You (familiar) have hunger.)	You (familiar) are hungry.
Lei lei/lui	ha fame	(lit. You (polite) have hunger.) (lit. She/he has hunger.)	You (polite) are hungry. She/he is hungry.
noi	abbiamo fame	(lit. We have hunger.)	We are hungry.
voi	avete fame	(lit. You all have hunger.)	You all are hungry.
loro	hanno fame	(lit. They have hunger.)	They are hungry.

avere fame	to have hunger/be hungry	avere bisogno(di)	to have need (of)/need
avere sete	to have thirst/be thirsty	avere paura (di)	to have fear (of)/be afraid
avere caldo	to have warmth/be warm	avere ragione	to have right/be right
avere freddo	to have cold/be cold	avere fretta	to have haste/to hurry
avere sonno	to have sleepiness/be sleepy	avere voglia (di)	to feel like 3(V)13

Grammar Point - Choosing **Essere** or **Avere**

Now that you are familiar with the auxiliary verbs **essere** and **avere,** we will go over the situations in which each is used. In general, the verb **essere** is used to state a fact that does not change. **Avere** will be used to refer to feelings or personal situations that can change, as well as to to describe possession.

For example, to state who she is, Caterina can simply say, **"Io sono Caterina,"** for, **"I am Kathy,"** rather than, **"Io mi chiamo Caterina."** You will remember from our dialogues that Caterina uses the verb **essere** to more clearly state who she is when she says, **"Sono italo-americana."** These are facts that will not change. **Essere** is also used in simple, descriptive sentences to link subjects with additional factual or descriptive information.

Io sono Caterina.	I am Kathy.
Io sono italiana.	I am Italian.
Caterina è italo-americana.	Kathy is Italian-American.
Io sono in Italia.	I am in Italy.
Lui è uno studente.	He is a student.
Tu sei alto.	You are tall.

Now, notice the examples on the previous page under "Expressions that Use Avere." You will see that in many situations **avere** is used to indicate how a person is feeling – hot,cold, hungry, etc. **Avere** is also used to indicate what a person needs. It may sound awkward to us, but in Italian they say, **"Ho bisogno di una macchina,"** or literally, **"I have need of a car,"** always including the word **di** for **of,** in the phrase. In English, we would simply say, **"I need a car."** And, of course, **avere** is used to indicate what things a person actually does possess. Finally, when stating your age, use **avere** to describe how many years you have accumulated at the time of the question. See the "Idiomatic Expressions" section later in this chapter for more discussion on this point.

Io ho caldo.	I am hot. (lit. I have heat.)
Io ho bisogno di una macchina.	I (have) need (of) a car.
Io ho una macchina.	I have a car.
Io ho quarantadue anni.	I have 42 years.

3(V)14

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 3

Infinitive Forms	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	o	*	*	****
tu	i	*	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	a	*	*	****
noi	iamo	****	****	****
voi	ate	***	***	***
loro	ano	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Avere (to have)
io	sono	ho
tu	sei	hai
Lei/lei/lui	è	ha
noi	siamo	abbiamo
voi	siete	avete
loro	sono	hanno

Irregular Verbs	Andare (to go)	Volere (******)	Sapere (*******)	Conoscere (*******)
io	vado	******	**	******
tu	vai	****	***	*******
Lei/lei/lui	va	*****	**	*******
noi	andiamo	********	********	**********
voi	andate	******	******	*********
loro	vanno	********	*****	**********

3(V)15



Notice of Fixed Taxi Fees, Train Station, Florence

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions – "Quanti anni hai?"

Perhaps the most commonly asked question of someone is how old they are. In English, we say, **"How old *are* you?"** using the verb **to be,** as a statement of fact. But, Italians look at this question as the number of years accumulated during a lifetime (and maybe the wisdom accumulated during these years?) so they use the verb **to have, avere.** The question in Italian is, **"Quanti anni hai?"** or literally, **"How many years do you have?"** This is not really an idiomatic expression, but just another way of looking at things.

Quanti anni hai?	How old are you? (lit. How many years do you have?)

After this question is asked of you, the response will also use the verb **avere,** and you will respond,

Io ho ___ anni.	I have ___ years.

It is not necessarily considered bad manners for a woman to lie about her age (depending on the situation)! But, whatever age a woman (or anyone else, for that matter) chooses to give, there are a couple of rules that are necessary to make conversation flow more easily in Italian:

1. The tens (20, 30, 40, etc.) drop their last vowel *before the word **anni***. In this case, the expression would be:

Io ho vent'anni.	I have 20 years.
Io ho trent'anni.	I have 30 years.
Io ho quarant'anni.	I have 40 years.

2. All numbers that end in **uno,** (21, 31, 41, etc), drop the final **–o** *before a noun that starts with a vowel*. So, if one were 21, 31, or 41 years old, the reply would be as follows:

Io ho ventun'anni.	I have 21 years.
Io ho trentun'anni.	I have 31 years.
Io ho quarantun'anni.	I have 41 years.

No need to remember all these rules – just look up and commit to memory your age and the ages of your immediate family members for now!

3(IE)5

Idiomatic Expressions – "Quanti anni hai?" (cont'd)

One more thing, after all these rules – suppose the speakers are discussing the age of someone else? In this case, the question and answer (using the third person singular) would be:

Quanti anni ha ___?	How old is ____? (lit. How many years does ____ have?)
Il bambino ha ____ anni.	The baby has ____ years.

To complete our discussion of age, here is a general list of terms that describe us all, as we grow from a baby to an adult:

il bambino/il bimbo	the baby (male)
la bambina/la bimba	the baby (female)
il ragazzino	the little boy
la ragazzina	the little girl
il ragazzo	the boy/the young man
la ragazza*	the girl/the young woman*
l'uomo	the man
la donna	the woman
il signore	the gentleman
la signorina	the young lady (unmarried)
la signora	the lady (married)

***Opera fans may encounter the words **fanciulla** **(the pretty young maiden)** and **giocanda** **(the lighthearted, merry girl)**, but **fanciulla** and **gioconda** are otherwise not used much anymore in Italy to describe young women.

***La Fanciulla del West** **(The Girl of the West)** is an opera by Giacomo Puccini based on a play by the American author David Belasco.

***La Gioconda** is a reference to the girl who plays the title role in the grand opera of the same name, composed by Amilcare Ponchielli, and is also used as the Italian name for **the Mona Lisa**.

3(IE)6

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers – Counting 11 - 19

Here are the Italian numbers from 11 through 19, which you will probably use frequently. At first, the shortened form for the word for **"ten,"** **"dici,"** that is used to make these compound numbers is tacked onto the end of the number. But, at 17, the pattern changes, and **"dici"** switches to the beginning of the number, with **"dicia"** used for 17 and 19. Each number needs to be memorized individually, though, as the root words are not identical to the original numbers.

Practice these numbers by asking, **"Quanto costa?"** for, **"How much does it cost?"** If you want, use flash cards to prompt your friend with a number or picture to identify in Italian. To be authentic, add the word **euro** when answering the phrase. Another good method for learning Italian numbers with a group is to play a game of BINGO. The caller gives each number in Italian. The winner of each round is "rewarded" by becoming the caller for the next round!

11	undici
12	dodici
13	tredici
14	quattordici
15	quindici
16	sedici
17	diciassette
18	diciotto
19	dicianove

3(N)5



Milan
Stazione Centrale

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 - Transportation
Chapter 4 – At the Train Station
Dialogue

Caterina has arrived at the local train station in the town of Gallarate, where she needs to buy a train ticket to Milan's **Stazione Centrale,** or **Central Station,** for the last leg of her journey. She speaks with a friendly **clerk Rose, la bigliettaia Rosa,** at the **ticket counter (la biglietteria),** and discovers important information about how to validate her ticket for travel on Italian trains. Notice that Rosa uses the 24 hour clock when telling Caterina the official time of her train's departure, which we will learn more about in the "Numbers" section of Chapter 5.

Can you find the two different tenses of the **-ere** verb **volere** used in this dialogue? Also, notice that the **-are** verb **desiderare** is another useful polite verb which means **to want,** with the connotation of **to desire,** or **to wish for,** that is often used during interactions between merchants and customers. Although there are subtle nuances for when to use each verb, don't worry, as they are, for the most part, interchangeable. Also, look for the phrase **"ho bisogno di,"** which we have learned in Chapter 3 means **"I need,"** and comes up frequently in this dialogue.

Caterina:	Buon giorno Good day.
Rosa:	Buon giorno. Dove desidera andare? Good day. Where (do) (you pol.) want to go?
Caterina:	Vorrei andare a Milano. Ho bisogno di un biglietto di sola andata per la Stazione Centrale. (I) would like to go to Milan. (I) need a one-way ticket (lit. a ticket only for leaving) for the Stazione Centrale.
Rosa:	Per quante persone? For how many people?
Caterina:	Solamente uno. Only one.

4(Vo)13

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 4 – At the Train Station

Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Rosa: Quando vuole partire?
When (do) (you pol.) want to depart?

Caterina: Voglio partire oggi, alle due o anche dopo. Non ho bisogno di un biglietto di ritorno

(I) want to leave today, at 2:00 (PM) or even later. (I) don't need a return ticket.

Rosa: Prima o seconda classe?
First or second class?

Caterina: Desidero la prima classe, diretto, per Milano, per favore.
(I) want (the) first class, direct, for Milan, please.

Rosa: Allora. Un biglietto di prima classe, per Milano.
Ok, then. One ticket, for first class, for Milan.

Caterina: Ho bisogno di pagare un supplemento?
(Do)(I) need to pay an extra fee (for the direct or rapid train)?

Rosa: No. È tutto incluso.
No. (It) is all included.

Caterina: Da quale binario parte il treno? A che ora?
From which track (does) the train leave? At what time?

Rosa: Dal binario due. Parte alle tredici e quindici.
From (the) track 2. (It) leaves at 13:15 (1:15 PM).

4(Vo)14

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 - Transportation
Chapter 4 – At the Train Station
Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Caterina: Quanto costa?
How much (does) (it) cost?

Rosa: Ventidue euro.
Tweny two euros.

Caterina: Ecco trenta euro.
Here are thirty euros.

Rosa: Ecco il resto, otto euro...
Here is the change, 8 euros...

Rosa: Non dimentichi di convalidare il biglietto prima di partire.
La macchina obliteratrice è nel sottopassaggio.

Don't (you pol. command) forget to validate the ticket before departing.
The ticket canceling machine is by the underpass.

Caterina: Che cosa è una macchina obliteratrice?
What is a "macchina obliteratrice"?

Rosa: È una machina piccola e gialla, sul muro del sottopasso,
dove si timbra il biglietto. Altrimenti c'è una multa da pagare sul treno.

It is a machine small, yellow, on the wall of the underpass,
where one stamps the ticket (to validate it for travel). Otherwise,
there is a fine to pay on the train.

Caterina: Tante grazie per l'informazione.
Thank you very much for the information.

Rosa: Prego.
You're welcome.

4(Vo)15

Vocabulary - At the Train Station

This vocabulary list may be helpful in navigating the typical Italian train station and train routes. You may want to try the automatic ticket machines if there is a long line at the ticket counter. Otherwise, it may be helpful to try your Italian with a friendly clerk, just as Caterina did in our last dialogue!

il binario	train track/train rail
la fermata	the stop (along a train or bus route)
la prima fermata	the first stop
la prossima fermata	the next stop
l'ultima fermata	the last stop
locale/regionale	local train which makes all stops of the route
diretto	direct/non-stop train to the stated destination
espresso	express/non-stop train to the stated destination
intercity	train which goes from one major city to another
la macchina obliteratrice	ticket canceling and date validating stamping machine
cambio treno	change train(s)
la coincidenza	the connection
il sottopassaggio/sottopasso	underpass used to get to train tracks at a station
l'andata	the journey there, the act of leaving on a trip
il ritorno	the return trip, the act of coming back
il biglietto di sola andata	the one way ticket
l'andata e ritorno	round trip (lit. leave and return)
il biglietto di andata e ritorno	the round trip ticket
l'ora	the hour
l'orario	the schedule
l'arrivo	the arrival
la partenza	the departure
la valigia	suitcase
il bagaglio	baggage
il deposito bagagli	luggage check room
il bagagliaio	luggage compartment
la carrozza	the train car
lo scompartimento	the compartment in a train
il posto/i posti	seat/seats
occupato(a)/riservato(a)/ libero(a)	occupied (seat)/reserved (seat)/free, open (seat)
dimenticare	to forget
arrivare	to arrive
partire	to leave
tornare	to return
obliterare	to validate a train ticket by stamping the date/cancel ticket for further use
convalidare	to validate a train ticket
timbrare	to stamp

4(Vo)16

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary – Colors

Here is a list of adjectives to describe the colors **(i colori)** in Italian. Some of these adjectives have endings that change to agree with the gender and number of the nouns they describe. In this case, all forms are given. Others are invariable (the endings will not change). Adjectives denoting color always *follow* the noun they modify (as do the adjectives of nationality, as we have seen).

bianco/bianca (bianchi/bianche*)	white	marrone (marroni)	brown
nero/nera (neri/nere)	black	beige	beige
grigio/grigia (grigi/grigie)	gray	rosa	pink
giallo/gialla (gialli/gialle)	yellow	blu	blue
rosso/rossa (rossi/rosse)	red	lilla	lilac
azzurro/azzurra (azzurri/azzurre)	blue	viola	purple
arancione (arancioni)	orange		
verde (verdi)	green		

Vocabulary – Ordinal Numbers

The Italian ordinal numbers **prima (first)** and **seconda (second)** were encountered in our last dialogue. Unlike the cardinal numbers that we use for counting, which are invariable in Italian, the endings of the ordinal numbers will change to agree with the noun they modify. For instance, in our last dialogue, Rosa asks if Caterina would like a ticket for **la prima o seconda classe (the first or second class)**. Since **classe** is a feminine singular noun, both **prima** and **seconda** must end in the letter **–a** in order to agree with **classe.** Below are all the different forms of the ordinal numbers from the first through the fifth.

primo/prima (primi/prime)	first
secondo/seconda (secondi/seconde)	second
terzo/terza (terzi/terze)	third
quarto/quarta (quarti/quarte)	fourth
quinto/quinta (quinti/quinte)	fifth

***Bianchi** and **bianche** are irregular plural adjectives; an **h** is inserted when forming the plural before the usual **-i** and **-e** endings, in order to maintain the original sound of the singular form.

4(Vo)17



Tiburtina Railway Station, Rome



Ticket Counter and Self Service Ticket Machine, Avezzano

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Buying a Ticket and Taking the Train

Here is a summary of important phrases travelers need to know to get around town on public transportation. Notice that Italians say they need or want a ticket **for,** with the word **per,** rather than the more usual English **to**. Also, although one could use, **voglio,** for **"I want,"** it is considered more polite to instead use **vorrei,** which means, **"I would like."**

Ho bisogno di un biglietto per Milano.	(I) need a ticket for Milan.
Vorrei un biglietto per Milano.	(I) would like a ticket for Milan.
Vorrei un biglietto di andata e ritorno.	(I) would like a round trip ticket. (lit. a ticket of going and returning)
Vorrei il diretto.	(I) would like a direct train (non-stop train).
Voglio prendere il treno diretto.	(I) want to take the direct train (non-stop train).
Voglio prendere il treno diretto per Miano.	(I) want to take the direct train for Milan.
Devo pagare il supplemento?	Must (I) pay an extra fee (for fast trains)?
Vorrei il locale.	(I) would like the local (many stops on the route).
Cambio/Cambi treno a...	(I)/(You) change train(s) at...
Non vorrei cambiare treno.	(I) don't want to change train(s).
Devo cambiare treno?	Must (I) change trains?
Quanto ci vuole per la coincidenza?	How much time is needed for the connection?
Stare per partire.	(It's) about to leave.
Sta partendo.	(It's) leaving (right now).
Sta arrivando.	(It's) arriving (right now).
Il treno sta arrivando/sta partendo.	The train is arriving/departing (right now).
Dov'è l'orario?	Where is the (train) schedule?
A che ora parte il treno?	At what time (does) the train leave?
A che ora arriva il treno?	At what time (does) the train arrive?
Prendo il treno per Milano alle dieci.	(I) take the train for Milan at 10 AM.
È questo il treno per Milano?	Is this the train for Milan?
È questa la fermata per Milano?	Is this the stop for Milan?
È la prossima fermata per Milano?	Is the next stop for Milan?
Hai perso* treno!	(You) (fam.) have missed the train!
Ho perso* treno!	(I) have missed the train!
Ho preso** il treno sbagliato!	(I) have taken the wrong train!

***Irregular past participle of **perdere.**
****Irregular past participle of **prendere.**
See Chapter 11 for a list of irregular past participles. 4(IP)11

Cultural Note - Taking the Train in Italy

After Caterina arrives in Italy at Malpensa Airport, about 50 km northwest of Milan, she must then make her way into the city. First, she takes a taxi to the near-by town of Gallarate, in order to get onto the local train system, called **Trenitalia** (www.raileurope.com/Trenitalia-Italy). This local railway cannot be accessed directly from the Malpensa Airport, but, until recently, was the only way to obtain a train after flying into Malpensa. The train line from Gallarate goes to the largest terminal in Milan, the Stazione Centrale. Gallarate can also be reached by bus from Malpensa Airport for a small fee, about 1-2 euros, and buses leave regularly from the airport all day. Of course, there are also bus routes to many other nearby cities from the Malpensa bus terminals, including to Milan, for those who prefer to take a bus for the entire trip.

When at the Gallarate train station, Caterina asks for a train that will take her directly to Stazione Centrale, avoiding the possibility of having to change trains along the way. A typical train ticket from Gallarate to Milan should actually cost less than we have noted in the dialogue, and it takes between 40-60 minutes to reach Milan.

There is now a newer, separate train system, called the **Malpensa Express,** which opened in 1999, and leaves directly from Malpensa's Terminal 1, underground floor, every thirty minutes. As the name suggests, this train goes directly into Milan, but ends at a smaller station, the Stazione Cordona. The Malpensa Express trains are new trains with only first class seats and luggage areas in-between compartments. Non-stop trains are available in the mornings and late at night, but during the day there are a few additional stops along the way to Milan for the 40 minute trip. To learn more about the Malpensa Express trains or to view a train schedule and current ticket prices, go to www.malpensaexpress.it.

In our dialogue, the ticket agent Rosa very kindly reminds Caterina to validate her train ticket before boarding the local train. In Italy, when using the local train system, it is possible to buy an "open" ticket, which can be used at any time within a two month period. Stamping each ticket with the date and time prior to entry on the train prevents this type of ticket from being used more than once. The name of the machine that is used to stamp the date and time onto the ticket is translated by the makers of the machine as a **"ticket canceling machine,"** or **macchina obliteratrice.** The older machines are yellow, but the new machines now in common use have a green and white face with the Trenitalia logo and name along the top. These small machines are usually found attached to the wall at the entrances to the individual train tracks, which are usually on the lower level of the train station. When referring to what the machine actually does, you can use the verb **timbrare,** which means **to stamp,** or **convalidare,** which means **to validate.** The verb **obliterare,** which means **to cancel,** also means **to stamp** or **to punch** when referring to tickets. In effect, all three verbs apply, since the ticket is literally stamped, which validates it for travel and cancels it for further use at the same time.

4(IP)-12

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Taking the Train in Italy (cont'd)

After boarding the train, **the ticket inspector (il controllore)** will come through each car and ask to see each passenger's ticket. If the date and time have not been stamped on the ticket, that passenger will be asked to pay a cash fine before leaving the train. Signs are sometimes posted on the interior doors of the trains warning of the fine to be paid if the ticket has not been **convalidato (validated)** – in Italian, with no English translation! Tickets for the Malpensa Express also need to be validated. So, remember to look for those little yellow or green and white machines each time you board a train in Italy and stamp your ticket the way Caterina did. It takes only a second but can save a good deal of money!

A word about the other major airports in Italy. Alitalia flights into Milan used to land primarily at Linate Airport, but nowadays, most passenger airlines land in Malpensa, which is the second largest international airport in Italy.

Rome's Leonardo da Vinici Airport remains the largest international airport in Italy. It is located 26 km west of Rome, and the nearest city is Fiumicino (which is the old name the airport used to go by, and is still used for the airport code: **FCO**). It is very simple to take the train from this airport to downtown Rome. Just follow the signs to the ticket counter, or buy a ticket at the Alitalia office that is on-site or from an automatic ticket machine. After a 30 minute ride, the train ends at Roma Termini, which is Rome's central station.

The Marco Polo Airport serves the city of Venice and is located on the mainland, near the town of Mestre, just across the lagoon. The major island of **Venice (Venezia)** is connected by a bridge to the mainland, and served by a local train station and a large bus station. A city bus or taxi can be taken over this bridge directly into Venice from the airport. A taxi ride to the nearby town of Mestre to the train station is possible, and will connect you to points north of Venice on the mainland as well as to the Santa Lucia train station in Venice.

Unique to Venice are the water bus and water taxi. Take the yellow **Alilaguna** water ferry to Saint Mark's Square or to the beaches of the Lido from the Marco Polo Airport by following the covered walkway from arrivals to the near-by dock. The walk takes about 10 minutes, so it may be necessary to hire a taxi if you have a lot of baggage or have difficulty walking. Tickets can be purchased at arrivals in the airport or at the dock and are about 15€ one way. The trip takes 1-2½ hours, depending on the number of stops made along the route. Also along the same dock are smaller, private water taxi boats that can take travelers directly to their destination.

Once in Venice proper, purchase an **"imob.Venezia"** card at a tobacco shop or water bus stop for the length of your stay (4 days, 7 days, or longer) to take the public **ACTV** water bus system to all of the major sites on the islands. This card can also be used on the local bus system on the Lido. Private water taxis are also available at most docks. And, of course, for a leisurely ride through the smaller canals, try the classic sleek, black **gondola** piloted with one oar by one of the trained **gondolieri** in their black and white striped uniforms! 4(IP)13



Ticket Stamping Machine, Avezzano



Self Service Ticket Machine, Avezzano



Train Tracks 2 and 3, Avezzano

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – The Indefinite Article

The indefinite article in English is the word **"a"** for nouns that begin with a consonant and the word **"an"** for nouns that begin with a vowel or the letter **h**. In Italian, the indefinite article is the word **un, uno, una** or **un'** and changes according to the gender of the noun modified. And, as usual for Italian, this change also takes into account the letter the noun begins with. All of these changes are given in the tables below, with the important forms in bold.

Masculine Indefinite Article	
un	consonants
(uno)	(s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn)
un	vowel

Feminine Indefinite Article	
una	consonants
un'	vowel

It will be easiest to remember **un** and **una** for the masculine and feminine forms of the indefinite articles in conversational Italian. You will notice that when the Italian noun starts with a vowel, both masculine and feminine forms are pronounced "un," as the feminine **una** drops it's **–a** ending for smoother conversation.

And, soon, **uno** will sound natural in the few situations when it is necessary: before Italian masculine nouns that begin with **s + consonant, z, ps, gn** or **pn**. Do you remember the popular words in this category, **zio (uncle)** and **studente (student)?** Listed below are these important words and a few more examples for the indefinite articles.

un biglietto	a ticket
uno studente	a student
uno zio	an uncle
uno zero	a zero
uno psicologo	a psychologist
uno gnocco	a (potato) dumpling
uno pneumatico	a tire
un orario	a timetable

una valigia	a suitcase
un'ora	an hour

And, don't forget, when counting or doing mathematics, always use **uno** for the number **one**, as we learned in the first chapter!

Uno for Counting	
uno	one
due	two
tre	three

4(G)11

Grammar Note - Irregular Plural Nouns and Adjectives
The –co and –ca Endings

The basic rules for singular and plural nouns and adjectives will work in most situations. A few additional spelling rules should be noted, however, which are intended to keep the sound of the word in the plural form the same as in the singular form. The rules are listed below. But, for conversational Italian, don't worry about the spelling – your ear will tell you which word is correct!

For instance, you may have noticed the plural spelling of **bianco (white)**, which ends in **–co**, is **bianchi**, rather than **"bianci."** To form the plural **bianchi**, the silent Italian letter **–h** is placed between the **–c** and the **–i** at the end of this word to avoid the "ch" sound (as in "cheese") that the Italian **–ci** combination would otherwise produce. Instead, with the letter combination **–chi**, the "hard c" sound is preserved, and the ending of **bianchi** sounds like the word "key".

A similar problem arises for feminine nouns and adjectives ending in **–ca**, such as **amica (girlfriend)**. The correct pronunciation is given by the spelling **amiche** for **girlfriends**.

Singular to Plural Irregular Nouns and Adjectives				
masculine singular	co	goes to	chi	masculine plural
feminine singular	ca	goes to	che	feminine plural

bianco	(white)	becomes	bianchi
cuoco	(cook)	becomes	cuochi
ricco	(rich)	becomes	ricchi
poco	(a little)	becomes	pochi
amica	(friend fem.)	becomes	amiche
turistica	(tourist fem.)	becomes	turistiche

Easy enough? Well, as anyone who has friends in Italy can tell you, there must be an exception to these rules. Yes, **amici, (a group of men,** or **men and women)** is correct, and it is an exception to the rule above. The regular rule of **–o** to **–i** for masculine endings is followed, *and the sound of the ending changes*! Don't try to figure out when to use which rule… just listen to what people are saying!

amico	(friend masc.)	becomes	amici
classico	(classical)	becomes	classici
greco	(Greek)	becomes	greci
simpatico	(nice)	becomes	simpatici
turistico	(tourist masc.)	becomes	turistici

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Irregular Plural Nouns and Adjectives
The –go, -ologo, and –ga Endings

Similar to the **–co** issue we have just encountered, there is also a problem with the Italian **–go** combination ending for nouns and adjectives. In this case, when the plural is formed, since the Italian **–gi** combination makes a "j" sound (like "jet"), rather than the hard "g" sound (like "go"), without a spelling change the pronunciation of the singular and plural words would not be similar. Again, for these nouns and adjectives,**-h** is added and **-ghi** is formed for the plural ending to retain the original sound. There are only a few frequently used words with this ending, but the rule should still be noted. So, for instance, **albergo (hotel)** becomes **alberghi, lago (lake)** becomes **laghi,** and **lungo (long)** becomes **lunghi.**

Similarly, for the few feminine nouns and adjectives that end in **–ga,** the plural is not **"ge"** but instead is **–ghe.** So, **larga (wide)** becomes **larghe.**

See below for our combined table of irregular nouns and adjectives:

Singular to Plural Irregular Nouns and Adjectives				
masculine singular	go	goes to	ghi	masculine plural
feminine singular	ga	goes to	ghe	feminine plural

albergo	(hotel)	becomes	alberghi
lago	(lake)	becomes	laghi
lungo	(long)	becomes	lunghi
larga	(wide)	becomes	larghe

Of course, there is an exception to the rule we have just learned for words with the **–go** and **–ga** endings! This exception involves the professions, and is important to note here, since our focus is on conversing with people. Many nouns that describe the professions end in **–ologo,** and correspond to the English **–ist** ending. For these words, the **–o** ending follows the original rule and changes to an **-i,** and *the pronunciation of the ending changes* as well. The list below gives a few examples:

biologo	(biologist)	becomes	biologi
geologo	(geologist)	becomes	geologi
psicologo	(psychiatrist)	becomes	psicologi
radiologo	(radiologist)	becomes	radiologi

4(G)13



Train Schedule for Tracks 1-3, Milano Centrale

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Regular Verbs that End in –care/-gare

Here is a list of verbs that you should already know how to conjugate – **cercare, dimenticare, pagare,** and **toccare.** They all end in **-are,** which we drop to form the stem for the verb, to which we then add on the **–are** endings that we have been practicing. Right?

Well, watch what happens when we follow this procedure with **dimenticare.** In the second person, we would end up with **"tu dimentici"** and lose the original "hard c" sound of the infinitive, since the Italian **ci** combination gives us the softer "ch" sound (as in the word "cheese"). So, what is a good solution? Simply add the letter **h** to the root, which creates a new stem. The result will be **tu dimentichi,** and we retain the "hard c" sound of the infinitive form of the verb.

The same goes for the **tu** form of the verbs that end in **–gare.** In order to maintain the "hard g" as in "good," and not change it into a softer "j" sound like "jet," we must add the letter **h** to the root to get a **ghi** combination. For the verb **pagare,** then, the result would be **tu paghi.**

The **noi** form of these verbs, which has an ending that begins with the letter **i,** will also change its root in the same manner, for the same reasons given above, as in **noi dimentichiamo** and **noi paghiamo.**

The take home lesson? Stay true to the sound of the infinitive verb when you are speaking when using the **tu** and **noi** forms for these verbs. The written word will then follow.

The irregular stems are colored **brown** in the table below. The endings are regular, but are highlighted in **red** to emphasize the new sound the ending will have as a result of the root change. Notice how these sound changes are stressed in the **noi** form!

	Cercare (to look for)	Dimenticare (to forget)	Pagare (to pay)	Toccare (to touch)
io	cerco	dimentico	pago	tocco
tu	cerchi	dimentichi	paghi	tocchi
Lei/lei/lui	cerca	dimentica	paga	tocca
noi	cerchiamo	dimentichiamo	paghiamo	tocchiamo
voi	cercate	dimenticate	pagate	toccate
loro	cercano	dimenticano	pagano	toccano

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Irregular Verb **Volere**

Volere is an irregular verb that ends in **-ere**, which makes it a second conjugation verb. However, it is also an irregular verb, and the stem will change for all forms except the **voi** form. As you can imagine, this is a very important verb to know in order to communicate what your needs are while in Italy, and you will find the **io** and **tu** forms are very important to commit to memory. The first and second person conjugations are so important that we have already used them in the dialogues and "Important Phrases" sections.

Volere – to want		
io	voglio	I want
tu	vuoi	you (familiar) want
Lei lei/lui	vuole	you (polite) want she/he wants
noi	vogliamo	we want
voi	volete	you all want
loro	vogliono	they want

The conditional form of **volere** is also very useful, as it is a more polite way to ask for something at a store or restaurant. The **io** conditional form of **volere, vorrei,** means, **"I would like,"** instead of the more demanding, **"I want."** We will not cover the full conditional conjugation of **volere** until Unit 3. For now, just remember the **io** form of **volere,** which will be the most useful.

Volere – to want – Conditional Tense		
io	vorrei	I would like
tu	*******	you (familiar) would like
Lei lei/lui	******	you (polite) would like she/he would like
noi	******	we would like
voi	*******	you all would like
loro	*******	they would like

4(V)18

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point – Expressing a Need with **Volere** and **Desiderare**

So, now we know how to tell someone what we want. Or do we? After "I want," we often need to add another verb to express *what* we want to do – to go, to return, to buy, etc.

So, first conjugate the verb **volere** into **voglio** or **vorrei**. Then simply *add the infinitive form of the action verb directly after* the conjugated form of **volere**. This is the same as we would do in English! The verb **volere** is known as a helping verb for the way that it modifies, or adds to, the meaning of the main verb in the sentence.

Notice that the subject pronoun **io** is not usually included in the Italian example sentences that use helping verbs below.

Voglio andare in Italia.	(I) want to go to Italy.
Voglio tornare lunedì.	(I) want to return Monday.
Vorrei comprare un biglietto.	(I) would like to buy a ticket.

Notice also from the dialogue from this chapter that the **-are** verb **desiderare** is used to express a want/need in a situation when a service is being provided. Directly after the clerk at the ticket counter says, **"Buon giorno,"** she asks, **"Dove desidera andare?"** as a way of inviting Caterina to purchase a ticket. **Desidera** is now the helping verb and is conjugated into its "polite you" form, while **andare** follows in the infinitive.

Caterina answers questions in the dialogue with both **vorrei** and **desidero**. These words are the **io** forms of **volere** and **desiderare** and are interchangeable in most situations. Parts of the dialogue from this chapter have been reprinted below as an example of how these words might be used.

Rosa:	Ciao. Dove desidera andare? Hello. Where (do) you (pol.) want to go?
Caterina:	Vorrei andare a Milano. (I) would like to go to Milan
Rosa:	Prima o seconda classe? First or second class?
Caterina:	Desidero la prima classe, diretto, per Milano, per favore. (I) want first class, direct, for Milan, please.

4(V)19

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 4

Infinitive Forms	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	o	*	*	****
tu	i	*	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	a	*	*	****
noi	iamo	****	****	****
voi	ate	***	***	***
loro	ano	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Avere (to have)
io	sono	ho
tu	sei	hai
Lei/lei/lui	è	ha
noi	siamo	abbiamo
voi	siete	avete
loro	sono	hanno

Irregular Verbs	Andare (to go)	Volere (to want)	Sapere (*******)	Conoscere (*******)
io	vado	voglio	**	******
tu	vai	vuoi	***	*******
Lei/lei/lui	va	vuole	**	*******
noi	andiamo	vogliamo	********	**********
voi	andate	volete	******	*********
loro	vanno	vogliono	*****	**********

4(V)20

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions – "Che cosa?"

The interrogative expression **"What?"** in Italian has several forms, all of which are interchangeable. The word **cosa** can mean both **what** and **thing**. Here is a list of the various expressions. Notice how **cosa** and **è** are combined when written to make, **"Cos'è?"** in order to say, **"What is?"**

Che?	What?
Che cosa?	What?
Cosa?	What?
Che è?	What is?
Cos'è...?	What is...?

There are many, many simple and commonly used expressions that use **che** or **che cosa**. Here are some of the most helpful:

Che fai?	What are you doing?
Che cosa fai?	What are you doing?
Cosa c'è?	What's going on?/What's up?
Che cosa c'è ?	What's going on?
Cosa succede?	What is happening?
Cosa successo?	What happened?
Che dire?	What should one say?
Che si dice?	What does he/she say?
A che cosa pensi?	What are you (fam.) thinking of?
Che fare?	What should one do?
Che cosa bisogna fare?	What does one need to do?

4(IE)7



Metro Stop, Piazza Repubblica, Milan



Metro, Underground Track, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Telling Time

In order to ask and tell the time, we will need to know several expressions, along with how to say the numbers from one to 24 that we have been practicing in Italian.

"What time is it?" translates both to the singular and plural in Italian, as:
"Che ora è?" or **"Che ore sono?"** **(lit.) What hour is (it)?/What hours are (they)?**

To understand how to answer this question, first choose the appropriate singular or plural Italian word for the number of hours there are/time it is: **ora (hour)** or **ore (hours)**. Then add the feminine definite article that applies for each: **la** or **le**. So, for one o'clock, the answer will be in the singular and refer to **l'ora** and for two o'clock through midnight, the answer will be in the plural, and refer to **le ore**. There is no specific translation for the English phrase "o'clock" in Italian, although the phrase **"in punto"** is occasionally used to mean **"on the dot"** if one wants to emphasize that the exact time is being given.

In the following two examples below, the subjects **l'ora** and **le ore** have been included, along with the phrase **in punto** to make Italian sentences with a structure similar to English. However, these examples would never be used in Italy; the subject is always left out in Italian and these sentences are for reference only.

(L'ora) è l'una (in punto).	(The hour) is (at) the one (on the dot).
(Le ore) sono le due (in punto).	(The hours) are (at) the two (on the dot).

In practice, the expressions used to describe the time in Italian are much shorter than those given above, and we are left with the following true Italian phrases for one o'clock to twelve o'clock noon, as below:

È l'una.	(It is)	one.
Sono le due.	(They are)	two.
Sono le tre.	(They are)	three.
Sono le quattro.	(They are)	four.
Sono le cinque.	(They are)	five.
Sono le sei.	(They are)	six.
Sono le sette.	(They are)	seven.
Sono le otto.	(They are)	eight.
Sono le nove.	(They are)	nine.
Sono le dieci.	(They are)	ten.
Sono le undici.	(They are)	eleven.
Sono le dodici.	(They are)	twelve.

4(N)7

Numbers - Telling Time (cont'd)

Other expressions are also needed to describe the special hours of midnight and noon, as well as the times that are 15, 30 and 45 minutes after the hour.

la mezzanotte	midnight	È mezzanotte.	It is midnight.
il mezzogiorno	noon	È mezzogiorno.	It is noon.

un quarto	a quarter (15 minutes)
mezzo	a half (30 minutes)
tre quarti	three quarters (45 minutes)

So, with our knowledge of how to state the time with Italian numbers, along with the special phrases above, we are on our way to expressing ourselves like a native!

Here are a few examples. Note that the times are written the Italian way, with a comma instead of a colon between the hours and minutes. Remember that **"e"** written without the accent is the conjugation **and** in Italian.

12,00 (AM)	È mezzanotte.	It is midnight.
1,15	È l'una e un quarto.	It is one fifteen (AM).
2,30	Sono le due e mezzo.	It is two thirty (AM).
3,45	Sono le tre e tre quarti.	It is three forty five (AM).

If desired, in order to emphasize the time of day, as in **morning, afternoon, evening,** or **night,** you can add the following expressions after stating the numerical time: **di mattina, di pomeriggio, di sera,** or **di notte.**

1,00 (AM)	È l'una di mattina.	It is one in the morning.
1,00 (PM)	È l'una di pomeriggio.	It is one in the afternoon.
6,00 (PM)	Sono le sei di sera.	It is six in the evening.
10,00 (PM)	Sono le dieci di notte.	It is ten at night.

For group practice, it may be helpful to pass a cardboard clock around the table and set different times on the hour, 15, 30 and 45 minutes past the hour. Ask, each other, **"Che ora è?"** or, **"Che ore sono?"**

4(N)8

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 – Transportation

Chapter 5 – On the Train to Milan

Dialogue

Caterina has validated her ticket and boarded the train that will take her to Stazione Centrale in Milan. She has an assigned seat in the first class car, and introduces herelf politely to a young woman about her age, **Susanna (Susan),** who will be sitting next to her. The two have a pleasant, informal conversation as they look out their window into the passing Italian countryside, until **the ticket taker (il controllore)** interrupts them near the end of their journey. Caterina is surprised to learn that cornfields are as abundant outside Milan as they are in her home state of Illinois.

During Caterina and Susanna's conversation, we start to use descriptive sentences, and also to learn how to ask a question in Italian if we don't understand what is being said initially. Look for the verbs **sapere** and **conoscere,** which both mean **to know,** but are used differently. Two additional verbs that have a similar meaning, **guardare (to look at)** and **vedere (to see)** also come up in their conversation. The possessive adjectives **mio** and **mia** are introduced for family members. Finally, we encounter the present and future tenses of the common (and in Italy very important) irregular **-are** verb **mangiare (to eat)**. Don't worry about the future tense for now; just recognize this verb from its stem and also look up the reason for the slightly irregular spelling of **mangiare** in the present tense later in this chapter.

Caterina:	Mi scusi. È occupato? Excuse me. Is (this seat) taken?
Susanna:	No, questo posto è libero. Prego… No, this seat is free. If you please… (as in go right ahead…)
	Ciao. Mi chiamo Susanna. Come ti chiami? Hi. My name is Susan. What is your (fam.) name?
Caterina:	Mi chiamo Caterina. Sono americana. My name is Kathy. (I) am American.
Susanna:	Lo sapevo! Io vado a Milano. Anche tu? I knew it! I (am) go(ing) to Milan. Are you also?

5(Vo)19

Unit 1 – Transportation

Chapter 5 – On the Train to Milan

Dialogue (cont'd – 2)

Caterina: Si, io vado a trovare* mio cugino Pietro che abita a Milano.
È il primo viaggio in treno per me. Tu prendi spesso il treno?

Yes, (I) am go(ing) to visit my cousin Peter who lives in Milan.
(It) is the first train trip for me. (Do) you (fam.) take the train often?

Susanna: No, solo d'estate. Abito a Milano, e la città è molto calda in luglio.
In campagna è meglio.

No, only in the summer. (I) live in Milan, and the city is very hot in July.
In the country, (it) is better.

(Le due ragazze guardano fuori della finestra.)
(The two girls look out of the window.)

Caterina: Si, oggi è bello. Il cielo è blu, e guarda i fiori gialli e rossi!
Ma, che cos'è quello?

Yes, today is beautiful. The sky is blue, and look at the flowers yellow and red! But, what is that?

Susanna: È granturco.
(It) is the corn.

Caterina: Che? Che significa "granturco"?
What? What is the meaning (of) "granturco"?

Susanna: Granturco – significa pianta di mais.
Corn – (it) means (the) corn plant.

Caterina: Oh, in America abbiamo il granturco nelle fattorie fuori Chicago.
Ma, ora io so che anche voi avete il granturco in Italia.

Oh, in America we have (the) corn in the farms outside of Chicago.
But, now I know (that) also you all have (the) corn in Italy.

*Itialians use the phrase **"andare a trovare,"** to mean, **"to go to visit,"** or **"to go to see someone"** when they are visiting a person. There is also the verb **visitare,** which is usually used when visiting a place. See Unit 2 for more details! 5(Vo)20

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 – Transportation

Chapter 5 – On the Train to Milan

Dialogue (cont'd – 3)

Susanna: Ma, certo! Non mangi mai la polenta? È molto buona.
But certainly! Have (you fam.) never eaten (the) polenta? (It) is very good.

Caterina: No, non mangio la polenta.
No, (I) don't eat (the) polenta.

Susanna: Forse tu mangerai* la polenta in casa di Pietro. Tu conosci altre persone a Milano?

Perhaps you (fam.) will eat polenta at the house of Peter. (Do) you (fam.) know other people in Milan?

Caterina: Io conosco mio zio, Salvatore, e mia zia, Rosa.
I know my uncle, Salvatore, and my aunt, Rose.

Susanna: Allora... ecco il controllore.
So, then... here is the ticket taker.

Il controllore: Posso vedere i biglietti, signorine, per favore?
May (I) see the tickets, young ladies, please?

(Lui guarda i biglietti.)
(He looks at the tickets.)

Il controllore: Tutte e due a Milano. È la prossima fermata.
Attenzione quando scendete dal treno!

Both to Milan. (It) is the next stop.
Pay attention when (you all) get off of the train!

Susanna e Caterina: Si, grazie.
Yes, thank you.

*We will encounter the future tense conjugation of **mangiare** in full in Chapter 15. 5(Vo)21

Vocabulary - In the Country

la compagna	countryside; country
la fattoria/le fattorie	farm
il paese	village/town
il confine	border/boundary
l'albero	tree
il legno	wood (made of)
i boschi	woods (many trees)
la collina	hill
la montagna	mountain
la valle	valley
il pascolo	pasture
l'erba	grass
il recinto	fence
il ponte	bridge
la galleria	tunnel
il fiume	river
la foglia	leaf
il fiore	flower
la pietra	stone
il masso	rock
il ciottolo	pebble
la cascata	waterfall
il cielo	sky/the heavens
il sole	sun
il vento	wind
il campo	field
il grano	wheat
il granturco/il mais	corn plant/corn
il fango	mud
il granaio	barn
il cavallo	horse
il maiale/il porco	pig
la mucca/la vacca	cow
il toro	bull
la pecora	sheep
la capra	goat

il pollaio	hen house
il pollo	chicken
la gallina	hen
il gallo	rooster
l'uccello	bird
il coniglio	rabbit
la farfalla	butterfly
il gatto	cat
il cane	dog
la persona	the person
le persone	the people
mangiare	to eat
significare	to mean
guardare	to look at
vedere	to see
sapere	to know
conoscere	to know, be acquainted with
salire*	step up/go up/climb/mount
scendere+	step down/get off/ get down

*+These verbs must be followed by **in, su,** or **dal,** unless using the stairs **(le scale).**
Salire sul treno/sull'autobus/in macchina; scendere dal treno/dall' autobus/dalla macchina.

5(Vo)22

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Asking for Assistance

While visiting an unfamiliar city, it may be necessary to ask a stranger for help. It is customary to begin the conversation with **"mi scusi"** for **"excuse me"** (polite command).

An easy way to then politely phrase any question you have is to use the phrase, **"Mi può,"** which means **"Could you (polite)... me."** Then, simply *add the infinitive verb for what you need after this Italian phrase – there is no need to conjugate using this method!*. If we add **dire** to the phrase, for instance, we get, **"Mi può dire..."** for **"Could you (polite) tell me..."**

The polite form of the verb **sapere (to know a fact), sa,** can also be used in many situations to ask if someone knows the information you need with the phrase, **"Lei sa..."** for **"Do (you polite) know..."**

Mi scusi...	Excuse me (pol. command)...
Mi può...?	Could you (pol.)... me?
Lei sa...?	(Do) you (pol.) know...?

You can put together many sentences asking the location of a place as follows:

Mi, scusi, mi può dire dov'è...	Excuse me, could (you pol.) tell me where is...
Mi scusi, Lei sa dov'è...	Excuse me, (do) you (pol.) know where is...
...l'albergo?	...the hotel?
...il ristorante?	...the restaurant?
...la metro/metropolitana?	...the subway?
...la fermata dell'autobus?	...the bus stop?
...la stazione dei treni?	...the train station?
...la banca?	...the bank?
...l'ufficio postale?	...the post office?
...il museo?	...the museum?

Use a similar format to ask questions about schedules:

Mi scusi, mi può dire quando...	Excuse me, could you (pol.) tell me when...
Mi scusi, Lei sa quando...	Excuse me, (do) you (pol.) know when...
...arriva il treno?	...the train arrives (lit. arrives the train)?
...arriva l'autobus?	...the bus arrives?
...parte il treno?	...the train leaves (lit. leaves the train)?
...parte l'autobus?	...the bus leaves?
...apre il museo?	...the museum opens (lit. opens the museum)?
...chiude il museo?	...the museum closes?

If the answer to these questions involves a particular street, the answer you will hear will use the phrase **in... via,** for the English **on... street.**

La banca è in via Verde.	The bank is on Green Street.	5(IP)15

Cultural Note - Trenitalia and Online Ticketing

The future of train travel is here in Italy today, under the old Trenitalia Ferrovie dello Stato rail system, to which has been added a new, high speed network made up of a fleet of beautiful Freccia (arrow) trains. The Frecciarossa (red arrow) trains link the major cities of Naples, Rome, Florence, Milan, Turin, and Venice and travel up to 175 miles per hour across the country. It is now possible to travel from Milan or Venice to Rome in about 3 hours. This Italian network is linked to major European cities outside of Italy as well, and can be an efficient way to extend travel plans to neighboring countries, with restaurant cars and sleeper cars available for longer journeys. These cars are even equipped with WiFi! The Frecciargento (silver arrow) and Frecciabianca (white arrow) trains are part of this new family of trains and link smaller cities and towns. For a slightly higher fee, they provide a more comfortable ride than the older trains and make fewer stops. Ask about the availability of these trains when purchasing a ticket at the station. Or, go to the official Trenitalia site, www.trenitalia.com and click on one of the three silver tabs in the upper right hand corner of the home page for the Freccia train of your choice

Italo is a privately owned company that also offers high speed passenger train service. Italo offers a club membership for frequent travelers, with private waiting rooms at the train stations and special cars with reclining leather seats, personal TVs, WiFi, and meal service. Look for the bright red automatic ticket machines, or purchase tickets at their ticket offices in the train station. For more information or to purchase tickets on line, go to www.italotreno.it.

Read all about this new network and learn about traveling throughout Italy on the different classes of trains offered by Trenitalia and Italo on the website www.seat61.com. Click on the link for Italy and search for "A beginner's guide to train travel in Italy" to see pictures of each type of train and learn more about the accommodations that are offered.

All of the high speed trains require a reservation (prenotazione), and the ticket issued will have an assigned car (carrozza) and seat (posto) for each passenger. Look for the car number on the side of the train, or ask the conductor, who will come out of the office to the platform when the train enters the station prior to departure for the next stop. Tickets can be purchased online in most cases, starting 60 days prior to departure, and in some cases up to 90 days. These online tickets may be discounted up to 60% off the price paid at the train station, depending on how far in advance they are purchased. Beware, though – the time-tables change in mid June and mid December each year, so be sure to check them again before departing if you have bought tickets in advance. The Trenitalia site accepts Italian credit cards, but may have difficulty processing European and American cards (as of January 2011). Also, the site times out, so you need to be quick, and may have difficulty purchasing more than one ticket at a time. An alternative site, all in English, is www.raileurope.com. And, remember, you will need a valid personal ID in order to travel between European cities along with your ticket. Or, if you choose the ticketless travel (within Italy only), you will need the registration number. See the next page for a list of internet terms in Italian if you would like to try your hand at the Trenitalia or Italo websites! 5(IP)16

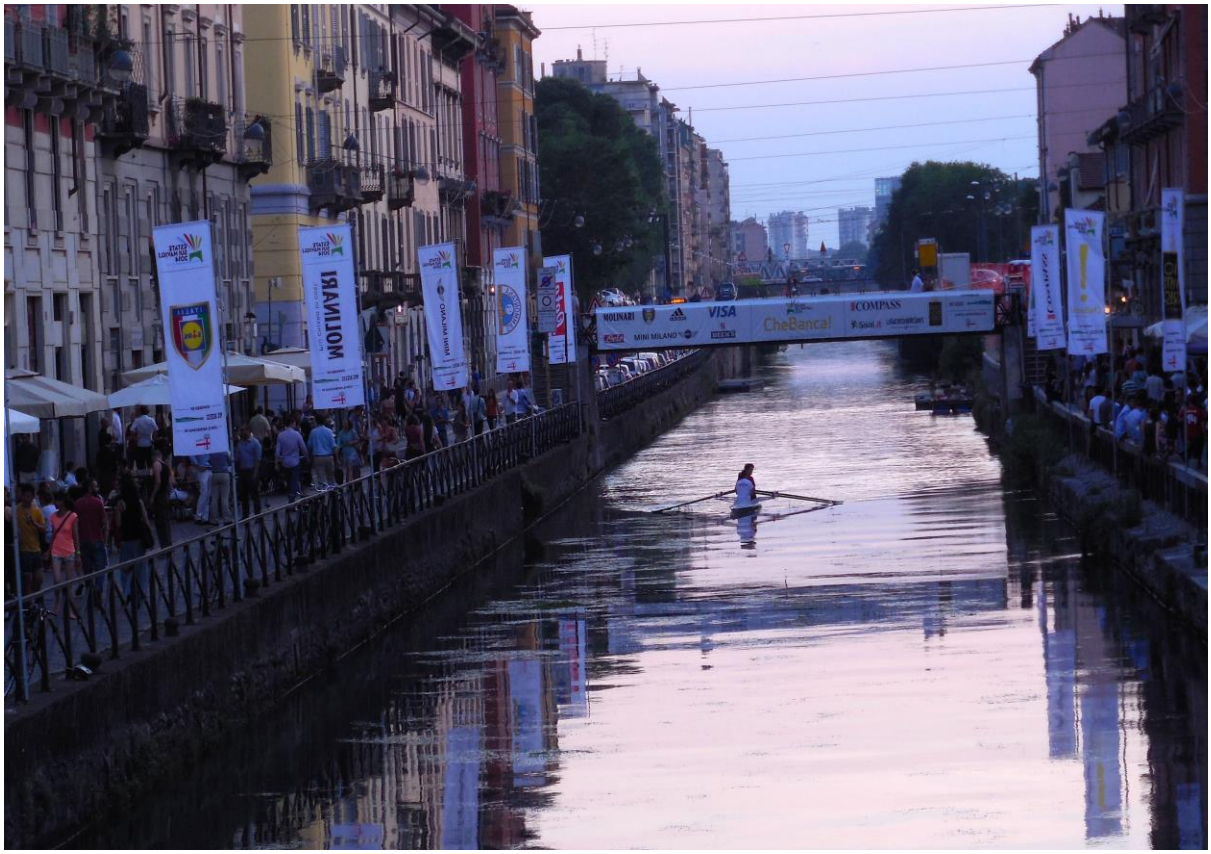
 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - **Trenitalia** and Online Ticketing (cont'd)

andare sull'internet	to go on internet/online
on-line/link	online/link
il browser	browser
il WiFi	WiFi
navigare sull' internet	sail/surf the internet
il sito (web)	web site
entrare	to enter (a site)
l'indirizzo web	web site address
l'indirizzo email	email address
la posta elettronica/email	email
la casella di posta elettronica	email box
controllare la email	check email
inviare la email	to send email
confermare e-mail	to confirm email (address)
attaccare	to attach (to an email)
copiare	to copy
incollare	to paste
cliccare su	to click on
cliccare qui	to click here
log in/log-out	log in/log out
la password	the password
il suggerimento	hint (for user id)
utilizzo	utilize
l'utente/utenza	user/use
registrazione utente	register user
User I.D. gia in uso!	User id already in use!
attivare la funzione	activate the function
accettare cookies	accept cookies
procedere	to proceed/to continue
avanti	go forward (a web page)
indietro	go back (a web page)
acquisti sicuri	secure shopping
acquisto	purchase
prezzo	price
tariffa intera	full fare/full price
ridotta	discount/off-peak price
ordina per	order by (as a list)
scaricare	to download
il modulo	the form
modifcare	to edit
i campi	the fields (to fill in electronically)

Dichiarazione di consenso -	Declaration of consent
FAQ/domande frequenti -	frequently asked questions
contrassegnati -	marked with an asterisk
digitare	to type in
obbligatori	mandatory
stampante	printer
stampare	to print
annullare	to cancel
cancellare	to cancel
autorizzare	to authorize/consent
provvedere	to provide

5(IP)17



Porta Ticenese Canal at Sunset, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Possessive Adjectives for Family (Singular)

Possessive adjectives allow us to describe family relationships and ownership of things. As we have seen, Italian adjectives change in gender and number to match the noun they modify. So, the endings of the possessive adjectives will have to change as well, and this change will depend on *what* is being possessed, rather than *who* is doing the possessing. In general, the possessive adjectives are placed *before* the person or thing they modify, similar to English. We will only practice the singular forms used for family members first. In this situation, the masculine possessive adjectives end in **-o** and the feminine possessive adjectives end in **-a,** except for the third person plural form, **loro.****

Singular Possessive Adjectives for Family	
mio/mia	my
tuo/tua	your (familiar) singular
suo/sua*	your (polite)* singular/his/her/its
nostro/nostra	our
vostro/vostra	your (familiar) plural
il loro*/la loro*	their

Let's see how this works from our dialogue. When Caterina refers to Pietro, since the noun for **cousin, cugino,** is masculine, she says, **"mio cugino."** When she refers to her uncle, she says, **"mio zio Salvatore."** Only for **zia Rosa** does Caterina use the feminine **"mia zia Rosa."** Even though Caterina is herself feminine, we disregard this fact! Instead, the Italian possessive adjective agrees with the noun that it modifies, and not the the person who is doing the possessing! Finally, by convention, when referring to **"my family,"** use the definite article, so the complete phrase will be **"la mia famiglia."** The examples below show the various uses of **mio/mia** for the family.

La Mia Famiglia – My Family				
(la) mia mamma+	my mom		(il) mio papà+	my dad
mia sorella	my sister		mio fratello	my brother
mia nonna	my grandmother		mio nonno	my grandfather
mia zia	my aunt		mio zio	my uncle
mia figlia	my daughter		mio figlio	my son
mia cugina	my female cousin		mio cugino	my male cousin

****Loro** is different from the other possessive adjectives. **Loro** is invariable (will not change its ending) and therefore always needs a definite article preceding it that corresponds to the gender and number of the noun being modified.

***When writing the "polite your," simply capitalize, as in: **"Suo padre"** or **"Sua madre."**

++Exceptions to the rule are **la mamma** and **il papà,** but now sometimes **la** and **il** are omitted!

Grammar Note - Possessive **di** vs. Possessive Suffix

In Italian, the word **di** is used to expresses possession, and in this situation, **di** means **of**. We can describe possession in English in a similar manner, for example, with the following sentence: **"This is the car of Peter."** To the American ear, though, this sounds formal and too wordy. We have the option of expressing this thought with an ('s) tacked onto the name of the person doing the possessing (known as a possessive suffix), as in **"Peter's."** It is much shorter and to the point to say, **"This is Peter's car."** But, in Italian, if we want to use someone's name, rather than "his" or "hers" (forms of **suo**), to describe possession, we have only the very first sentence structure: **"Questa è la macchina di Pietro,"** which literally means, **"This is the car of Peter."**

Grammar Note - More Uses for **di**

1. In order to express authorship of a work, Italians use **di,** which corresponds to the English word **by**.

8 ½ è un film di Frederico Fellini.	8 ½ is a film by Fredrico Fellini.

2. In order to express what something is **made of,** Italians use **di**.

La sedia di legno.	The chair (is made) of wood.

3. In order to relate that a certain type of subject matter is being **talked about,** Italians use **di**.

Caterina parla di viaggi, non di politica.	Kathy talks about traveling, not about politics.
Io parlo di viaggi, non di politica.	(I) am talking about traveling, not politics.

4. Finally, to mention age in a general description of someone, use **di**.

Lei è una singora di ottantadue anni.	She is a lady of 82 years.

5(G)16

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Regular Verbs that End in –ciare/-giare

Here is a list of verbs that you should already know how to conjugate – **abbracciare, baciare, cominciare, lasciare, mangiare,** and **viaggiare.** They all end in **-are,** which we drop to form the stem for the verb, to which we then add on the **–are** endings that we have been practicing. Right?

Well, watch what happens when we follow this procedure with **mangiare.** In the second person, we would end up with **"tu mangii."** The sound of the word would stay true to the infinitive form, but when spelled, the ending would have two of the letter **-i.** We would have the same problem with the **noi** form, and end up with **"mangiiamo."**

The take home lesson? Simply drop the extra **i** from the stem for the **tu** and **noi** forms of these **–ciare** and **–giare** verbs when writing, so the written forms will be **tu mangi** and **noi mangiamo.** When speaking, the sound of the ending for each conjugation is identical to what the regular form would be in each case!

The irregular stems are given in **brown** with their regular endings highlighted in **red** in the table below for the **tu** and **noi** forms of the most common **–ciare** and **–giare** verbs. Notice how the syllable to stress for these verbs does not vary from our usual pattern with verbs in the present tense!

	Abbracciare (to hug/ to embrace)	Baciare (to kiss)	Cominciare (to begin)	Lasciare (to leave (alone))	Mangiare (to eat)	Viaggiare (to travel)
io	abbraccio	bacio	comincio	lascio	mangio	viaggio
tu	abbracci	baci	cominci	lasci	mangi	viaggi
Lei/lei/lui	abbraccia	bacia	comincia	lascia	mangia	viaggia
noi	abbracciamo	baciamo	cominciamo	lasciamo	mangiamo	viaggiamo
voi	abbracciate	baciate	cominciate	lasciate	mangiate	viaggiate
loro	abbracciano	baciano	cominciano	lasciano	mangiano	viaggiano

5(V)21

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Regular Verbs that End in –iare

There are many commonly used Italian verbs that end in **–iare** that have slightly irregular spellings. The **tu** and **noi** forms will be affected, and the final spelling will depend on slight differences in how the endings are stressed when each conjugated word is spoken.

Note that there are two different patterns. Most **–iare** verbs will follow the first model, which drops the additional **i** from the stem for the **tu** and **noi** forms prior to adding the regular ending, as with **cambiare**. Two other common verbs, **inviare** and **odiare**, will keep the additional **i** in the stem in the **tu** form, which will reflect the additional stress given to the last syllable when the **tu** forms of these vebs are pronouced.

	Model Verb #1 - Last Syllable Not Stressed for the Tu Form				
	Cambiare (to change)	Iniziare (to begin)	Ringraziare (to thank)	Studiare (to study)	Tagliare (to cut)
io	cambio	inizio	ringrazio	studio	taglio
tu	cambi	inizi	ringrazi	studi	tagli
Lei/lei/lui	cambia	inizia	ringrazia	studia	taglia
noi	cambiamo	iniziamo	ringraziamo	studiamo	tagliamo
voi	cambiate	iniziate	ringraziate	studiate	tagliate
loro	cambiano	iniziano	ringraziano	studiano	tagliano

Model Verb #2 –Last Syllable Stressed for the Tu Form		
	Inviare (to invite)	Odiare (to hate)
io	invio	odio
tu	invii	odii
Lei/lei/lui	invia	odia
noi	inviamo	odiamo
voi	inviate	odiate
loro	inviano	odiano

5(V)22

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Regular -ere Verbs

Italian verbs are categorized into three main types, which are called infinitive forms or conjugations, as we have seen. In Italian, each infinitive form has a different ending. So far, we have been working mostly with infinitive verbs that have an **–are** ending, which are the first conjugation verbs. There are more Italian verbs of the **–are** type than any other, so we have already expanded our vocabulary significantly by just knowing how to conjugate this type of verb.

Infinitive verbs with an **-ere** ending are second conjugation verbs, and are also very important to know. When you change the endings to reflect the speaker for the **–ere** verbs, you will find that the endings used are identical to the **–are** verb endings in the **io (I), tu (you familiar),** and **noi (we)** forms. So, you already know the most important conversational forms of these verbs! To form the present tense of the second conjugation **–ere** verbs, just drop **-ere** and add the appropriate ending to the stem that remains.

********* Vedere - to see *********

The table below shows the conjugation of **vedere,** a regular **–ere** verb. First, drop the ending **–ere** and you are left with the stem **ved.** Then add the correct ending to reflect the speaker, as follows: **o, i, e, iamo, ete, ono.** You will get the following new words, as given in the second column of the table. The endings have been listed in the third column, with the endings that differ from the first conjugation in **red.** The syllable to stress for the **–ere** verbs is underlined, and follows the usual rules for the present tense.

When you learn the meaning of a new **–ere** verb, form the stem and then conjugate it to reflect the speaker. Then say it out loud, listening to how the new word sounds. Focus on the endings you already know from the **–are** verbs – the **io, tu,** and **noi** forms – and you will be speaking Italian in no time!

Vedere – to see			
io	ved<u>e</u>o	o	I see*
tu	ved<u>e</u>i	i	you (familiar) see
Lei lei/lui	ved<u>e</u>e	e	you (polite) see she/he sees
noi	ved<u>e</u>iamo	iamo	we see
voi	ved<u>e</u>ete	ete	you all see
loro	ved<u>e</u>ono	ono	they see

*Note this simple present tense in Italian can be translated four ways:
io vedo is equivalent to the English **I see, I do see, I am seeing, I am going to see.**

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
More Regular **-ere** Verbs

Here are some important regular **-ere** verbs. Practice the different conjugated forms of each verb to get used to how the words sound with their different endings, focusing on the "I," "you familiar," and "we" forms. Drop **-ere** and add: **o, i, e, iamo, ete, ono.**

accadere	to happen	piangere	to cry
accendere	to turn on	premere	to press
ammettere	to admit	prendere	to take
cadere	to fall	ricevere	to receive
chiedere	to ask	ridere	to laugh
chiudere	to close	ripetere	to repeat
condividere**	to divide/share	rispondere	to answer
conoscere	to know	rivedere	to see again
correre	to run	rompere	to break
credere	to believe	scadere	to expire
crescere	to grow	scendere da+	to go down/get off/get out
decidere	to decide	scrivere	to write
dividere**	to divide/share	smettere di	to stop/to stop doing something
friggere	to fry	sorridere	to smile
godere	to enjoy	spendere	to spend
includere	to include	spingere	to push
leggere	to read	stringere*	to grip/hold/tighten
mettere	to put/place	succedere	to happen
muovere	to move	uccidere	to kill
nascere	to be born	vedere	to see
nascondere	to hide	vendere	to sell
perdere	to lose/miss	vincere	to win
permettere	to permit	vivere	to live

The following verbs that end in **–cere** have irregular spelling for the **io** and **loro** forms, and the last three also for the **noi** form, to be covered in detail in later chapters:

cuocere	to cook
dispiacere	to be sorry/regret/mind
piacere	to like
spiacere	to be sorry

****Condividere** is used when something is shared together with someone else, such as when food is shared at the table; otherwise, use **dividere.**

+Scendere must be followed by a preposition unless referring to **le scale (the stairs).**

+Scendere+dal treno/dall'autobus/dalla macchina.

***"Stringere la mano a"** means **"to shake hands with."** 5(V)24

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Irregular **-ere** Verbs **Sapere** and **Conoscere**

Sapere is an irregular verb that ends in **-ere.** It means **to know.** Think about how many times each day we say, "I know," or, "you know," or, "Do you know?" In Italy, these expressions are also used frequently. Since **sapere** is irregular, the root will be different from the infinitive verb for all forms except the **voi** form. Interestingly, the root for the **noi** form differs by only a single letter from the regular root – with the addition of a second letter **p.** As usual, try to remember the most commonly used forms.

Sapere – to know (a fact)		
io	so	I know
tu	sai	you (familiar) know
Lei lei/lui	sa	you (polite) know she/he knows
noi	sappiamo	we know
voi	sapete	you all know
loro	sanno	they know

Conoscere is a regular **-ere** verb. This verb also means **to know,** but is used differently, more along the lines of **to become acquainted with a person or a place.** The regular conjugation will be given here for completeness. Notice that the pronunciation of the ending changes, with a "hard c" sound for the **io** and **loro** forms due to the endings of **-sco/-scono,** and the "sh" sound for the forms that have the **-sci** or **-sce** combination.

Conoscere – to know (to be acquainted with)		
io	conosco	I know
tu	conosci	you (familiar) know
Lei lei/lui	conosce	you (polite) know she/he knows
noi	conosciamo	we know
voi	conoscete	you all know
loro	conoscono	they know

As an aside: Later, in Chapter 7, we will learn how to conjugate the **-ire** verb **capire,** which means **to understand (capisco, capisci, capisce, capiamo, capite, capiscono).** Back in the 70's, a common phrase among Italian-Americans in New York used between family members and friends was, **"Capisci?"** ("ka-peesh") meaning, **"Do you get it?"** Don't confuse the different forms of **capire** with the conjugations of **conoscere.** 5(V)25

Grammar Point - When to Use **Sapere** vs. **Conoscere**

Technically, both **sapere** and **conoscere** can be translated as **to know,** although they are used in different situations.

1. **Sapere** is used to indicate **knowledge of something**, such as **a fact**. For instance, if we tell someone that we know a language very well we are stating a fact and use **sapere.** Notice how the definite article **(the) (l')** is used after the verb **sapere** in this case.

Io so l'italiano molto bene.
I know (the) Italian language very well.

2. **Sapere** is used to describe **knowlege of something tangible** that we can see or feel. In our dialogue, Caterina and Susanna describe what they do (and do not) know about the corn that they can see growing in northern Italy using the verb **sapere.** In order to say specifically, **"I know that,"** in Italian, Caterina includes **che,** which means **that,** in her sentence. The word **che** cannot be omitted in these types of sentences, as we often do in English. Here are two examples that use **sapere** to describe something that we can see.

"Ma ora so che anche voi avete il granturco in Italia."
"But now (I) know that you all have (the) corn in Italy."

Io so che il cielo è blu.
I know that the sky is blue.

3. **Sapere** is used to describe **the ability to do something**. Notice in the translations below that the English phrase "how to" is not necessary in Italian. Instead, and an infinitive verb follows directly after **"io so."**

Io so guidare la macchina. I know (how to) drive a car.

4. **Sapere** is also used when asking questions. If asking directions from a stranger, it is customary to begin with, **"Mi scusi,"** or just, **"Scusi,"** for the polite (command) form of **"Excuse me."** Then follow with the polite, **"Lei sa..."**.

Mi scusi; Lei sa quando arriva il treno?
Excuse me; (do) (you pol.) know when arrives the train?
(English: Do you know when the train arrives?)

Mi scusi; Lei sa dov'è il binario tre?
Excuse me; (do) (you pol.) know where is (the) track three?
(English: Do you know where track three is?) 5(V)26

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - When to Use **Sapere** vs. **Conoscere** (cont'd)

5. **Conoscere** means **to know,** as in **to be acquainted with a person or a place.** In our dialogue, when Susanna asks Caterina if she knows any people other than her cousin in Italy, they both use the verb **conoscere.**

Susanna:	Tu conosci altre persone a Milano? (Do) you know (any) other people in Milan?
Caterina:	Si, io conosco mio zio Salvatore e mia zia Rosa. Yes, I know my Uncle Salvatore and my Aunt Rose.

Here are some additional examples of when to use **conoscere:**

Io conosco Julia, la nonna di Paolo.
I know Julia, Paul's grandmother. (lit. the grandmother of Paul)

Io conosco Milano molto bene.
I know Milan very well.

6. **Conoscere** is also used in reference to meeting/getting to know someone for the first time.

Caterina vuole conoscere suo cugino Pietro.
Kathy wants to meet/get to know her cousin Peter.

5(V)27

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 5

Infinitive Forms	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	o	o	*	****
tu	i	i	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	a	e	*	****
noi	iamo	iamo	****	****
voi	ate	ete	***	***
loro	ano	ono	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Avere (to have)
io	sono	ho
tu	sei	hai
Lei/lei/lui	è	ha
noi	siamo	abbiamo
voi	siete	avete
loro	sono	hanno

Irregular Verbs	Andare (to go)	Volere (to want)	Sapere (to know)	Conoscere (to know)
io	vado	voglio	so	conosco
tu	vai	vuoi	sai	conosci
Lei/lei/lui	va	vuole	sa	conosce
noi	andiamo	vogliamo	sappiamo	conosciamo
voi	andate	volete	sapete	conoscete
loro	vanno	vogliono	sanno	conoscono

5(V)28

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - **Sapere** and **Conoscere**

Here are some common expressions that use **conoscere** and **sapere**. Notice that the Italian word **lo** means **it**. **Ben** is simply **bene**, with the final letter **e** dropped. As usual, just remember each phrase, rather than the meaning of each individual word.

Sapevo is the imperfect past tense and **sappia** is the subjunctive form of the verb **sapere**. Don't worry about these verb forms for now; just try to remember these useful phrases at the end of the list. Hopefully, you will be using the last phrase, **"Lo sapevo!"** frequently as you become more and more comfortable with Italian!

Conosco (somebody) di nome.	I know (somebody) by name.
Conosco (somebody) di vista.	I know (somebody) by face.
Conosco (something/somebody) come…	I know (something/somebody) as…
So (something) a memoria.	I know (something) by heart.
Chi si sa?	Who knows?
Come ben sai.	As you well know.
Si sa che…	Everyone knows that…
Non ne sa niente.	He/she knows nothing about it.
Lo so.	I know (it).
Non lo so.	I don't know (it).
Che io sappia.	As far as I know.
Lo sapevo!	I knew it!

5(IE)9



Milan
Duomo at Sunset

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - More Telling Time

We are almost ready to say exactly what time it is in Italian! We can simply use our knowledge of numbers from one through 60 and add the correct number of minutes to the hour. The hours and minutes are linked using the word **e** for **and**. Notice again the Italian use of the comma instead of a colon when writing the time with numbers:

1,12	È l'una e dodici.	It is 1:12 / twelve minutes after one.
2,23	Sono le due e ventitre.	It is 2:23 / twenty-three minutes after two.

It should also be noted that Italians use the 24 hour, or military system, for official timetables, such as bus, train, or airline schedules, as well as for museum hours and theater times. So, for morning hours, the numbers one through 12 are used as usual; after 12 noon, add twelve to each hour until you reach 24 hours. For example, **1 PM** is **le tredici, 2 PM** is **le quattordici,** and so on. It is not necessary to add "AM" or "PM" to the stated time with the 24 hour clock. Here are some examples using the 24 hour clock.

1,12	È l'una e dodici.	It is 1:12 hours / 1:12 AM.
2,23	Sono le due e ventitre.	It is 2:23 hours / 2:23 AM.
17,25	Sono le diciasette e venticinque.	It is 17:25 hours / 5:25 PM.
20,38	Sono le venti e trentotto.	It is 20:38 hours / 10:38 PM.

Now, here is a quick trick to use for times after 45 minutes past the hour: go *ahead* one hour and subtract from there to get to the correct time. In both English and in Italian, it is helpful to the listener to know that we are closer to the next hour than we are to the last. It also allows us to use smaller numbers, which are easier to remember in Italian. Just use the word **meno** for **less than** to connect the hour and the time:

9,50 AM	Sono le dieci meno dieci.	It is 10 minutes to 10 (AM). (lit. It is 10 hours minus 10 min.)
1,55 AM	Sono le due meno cinque.	It is 5 minutes to 2 (AM). (lit. It is 2 hours minus 5 min.)
7,45 PM	Sono le otto meno quindici.	It is 15 minutes to 8 (PM). (lit. It is 8 hours minus 15 min.)

Have fun passing around a clock, and ask each other what time it is, using either the 12 or 24 hour system. Give the answer in exact numbers this time!

5(N)9

Numbers - More Telling Time (cont'd)

Often when traveling we will have to ask specifically what time our transportation will be leaving, or what time an event will be starting. Here are some examples of questions you may need to ask. Remember, there is no insertion of the word "does" in Italian when asking a question, the way we do in English.

A che ora...?	(At) what time (does)...?
A che ora arriva l'aeroplano?	At what time (does) the airplane arrive? (lit. At what hour arrives the airplane?)
A che ora parte il treno?	At what time (does) the train leave?
A che ora comincia* il viaggio?	At what time (does) the trip start?
A che ora inizia* il film?	At what time (does) the film begin?
A che ora finisce il film?	At what time (does) the movie end?
A che ora apre il museo?	At what time (does) the museum open?
A che ora chiude il museo?	At what time (does) the museum close?

When the question is asked in this way, the response will be a little bit different from what we have previously learned. The answer will also use the word **at**, which is the word **"a"** in Italian. We can mention our special times of day if they apply, such as **"a mezzogiorno"** or **"a mezzanotte."** Otherwise, the word **a** will be combined with the definite article **(the) (l'** or **le)**. The Italian definite article **l'** is combined with **a** to make **all'** before the word **una** for the phrase **"all'una,"** which means **"at one."** For all numbers greater than one, use **a** with the definite article **le** to make **alle (alle due – ventiquattro) (at two through 24)**.

A mezzogiorno.	At noon.
A mezzanotte.	At midnight.
All'una.	At one o'clock.
Alle sette.	At seven o'clock.
All'una e cinque.	At 1:05 AM.
Alle sette e mezzo.	At 7:30 AM.

***Cominciare** and **iniziare** are interchangeable in Italian, although you may want to use **iniziare** to emphasize the importance of the starting time, or the **initiation of** an event. **Iniziare** tends to be used today by younger Italians, and **cominciare** by older Italians. 5(N)10

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 1 - Transportation

Chapter 6 – Driving with Pietro

Dialogue

After her long journey, Caterina is met by her cousin Pietro at the train station in Milan. Pietro takes her on a quick drive through the streets of Milan and home to his apartment where his wife, son, and grandmother are waiting for them.

Watch for the many ways Italians make use of the word **bello**, which can take on the meaning of **beautiful, nice, good,** and **wonderful**. And, although most Italian adjectives are placed after the verb, there are many useful adjectives that often come before, which will be included in this dialogue and later in the grammar section. Notice the use of the verb **stare (to stay,** meaning "to be"**)** in the familiar greeting between Pietro and Caterina. **Stare** is also used to form the present progressive verb form (in English, the **–ing** form), which emphasizes an action taking place at the time of the conversation.

Pietro:	Ciao, Caterina! Come stai? Hi, Kathy! How are you (fam.)?
Caterina:	Sto bene. E tu? (I) am fine. And you?
Pietro:	Sto benissimo! È meraviglioso che tu sei qui, a Milano. Sei stanca? (I) am very well! (It) is marvelous that you (fam.) are here, in Milan. Are you tired?
Caterina:	No, non sono molto stanca. Sono molto felice e emozionata. No, (I) am not very tired. (I) am very happy and excited.
Pietro:	Anch'io sono molto contento. Mia moglie, Francesca, e nonna sono a casa. Stanno preparando una bella cena per stasera. Also I am very happy. My wife, Francesca, and grandma are at home. (They) are preparing a wonderful dinner for tonight.
Caterina:	E il piccolo Michele, come sta? And (the) little Michael, how is (he)?
Pietro:	Sta molto bene. Ha due anni. (He) is very well. (He) is 2 years old. (lit. He has 2 years.) 6(Vo)23

Unit 1 - Transportation
Chapter 6 – Driving with Pietro
Dialogue (cont'd)

Caterina: È un bambino molto bello.
(He) is a very beautiful baby.

Pietro: Si, e anche un bravo bimbo. Allora, andiamo a casa!
La mia macchina è nel parcheggio di fuori.

Yes. And also a good baby. Now, let's go home!
My car is in the parking lot outside.

(Mentre Pietro sta guidando...)
(While Peter is driving...)
Caterina: Che grandi palazzi a Milano! E tante persone!
Le strade sono piene di macchine.

What big buildings in Milan! And so many people!
The streets are full of cars.

Pietro: Si. Sono le sei di sera. È l'ora di punta.
C'è molto traffico, specialmente in via Vittor Pisani.

Yes. (It) is six in the evening. (It) is the rush hour.
There is a lot of traffic, especially on Vittor Pisani Street.

Caterina: Ah, ecco una grande piazza. E un bel parco!
Ah, here is a big piazza. And a beautiful park!

Pietro: Quella è Piazza della Repubblica. Ora, giriamo a sinistra,
andiamo sempre dritto per dieci minuti, e via Melzo non è lontana.

That is the Piazza of the Republic. Now (we) turn left, go
straight ahead for 10 minutes, and Melzo street is not far.

(Dopo dieci minuti:)
(After ten minutes:)
Pietro: Siamo a casa mia. Via Melzo dodici. Benvenuta!
(We) are at my house, 12 Melzo Street. Welcome (to you female)!

Caterina: Tante grazie! Ora comincia la mia vacanza!
Thank you very much! Now my vacation begins! 6(Vo)24

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Driving in the City and on the Highway

l'automobilista	driver
il traffico	traffic
il semaforo	traffic light
il cartello (stradale)	(road) sign
la strada	road
la via	road, street, way
l'angolo	corner
l'incrocio	intersection
l'area pedonale	pedestrian zone
l'autostrada	superhighway
la tangenziale	peripheral road/bypass
l'entrata	(highway) entrance
l'uscita	(highway) exit
il limite di velocità	speed limit
la corsia	lane
il sorpasso	overtake/pass
la corsia di sorpasso	passing lane
la corsia di emergenza	emergency lane/shoulder
la corsia a scorrimento veloce	express lane
l'autogrill	rest stop with food
la direzione	direction
la svolta	turn
a destra	to the right
a sinistra	to the left
diritto	straight ahead
andare avanti	drive ahead
l'ingorgo	traffic jam
il blocco	blockade
vicino(a)	near/close by
più vicino	nearer/closer
il più vicino	the closest
il vicino/la vicina (di casa)	neighbor
lontano(a)	far away

il paese	town, village
il vicinato	neighborhood
la città	city
il centro	downtown
il palazzo	large building (inhabited)
l'edificio	large building (exterior)
la piazza	the town square
la persona*	person (fem./masc. sing.)
le persone*	people (fem./masc. plur.)
la gente+	people/folks (fem. sing./plur.)
lo scontro	collision
l'incidente	accident
accidenti!	darn!/damn!
vietato	forbidden/blocked
il vicolo	narrow street/alley
la calle	Venetian for narrow street
il ponte	bridge
pieno di	full of
la deviazione	detour
il senso unico	one-way street
il senso vietato	forbidden street
il marciapiede	sidewalk

preparare	to prepare/get ready
stare	to stay/to be
svoltare	to turn
cominciare	to begin
guidare	to drive
vietare	to forbid/to ban
	to obstruct/to block

*+These are collective nouns, or nouns that refer to groups, and they follow slightly different rules from the regular singular and plural nouns:
*For **persona,** there is both a singular and plural form. But, the noun remains feminine, even though it refers to a group ofpeople that may be all male or include men. Both the definite article and ending change, from singular to plural: **la persona** to **le persone.**
+For **gente,** there is only one form, **la gente,** which is feminine singular and used in all situations.

6(Vo)25

Vocabulary - Parking, Rental Car and General Car Terms

il parcheggio	parking lot/parking space
il disco orario	parking disc/timer
porta via	tow away
il carro attrezzi	tow truck
in doppia fila	double parked
il carrabile	driveway
il passo	pass/gap/step/stride
passo carrabile	no parking driveway
divieto di sosta	no parking/forbidden stopping
divieto di accesso	no access/no trespassing/forbidden entry
l'autonoleggio	car rental (place)
l'auto a noleggio	car rental (place)
la macchina a noleggio	rental car
la chiave (dell'auto)	keys to/for/of the the car

caricare	to charge
controllare	to check
fare	to make/do
noleggiare	to rent a car
parcheggiare	to park
passare	to pass by
agguistare	to fix/repair
riparare	fix/repair
salire in macchina	get into the car
scendere dalla macchina	get out of the car

la porta	car door
la targa	license plate
l'acciaio	steel
il volante	steering wheel
il clacson	horn
i freni	brakes
gli anabbaglianti	low beam lights
i fari	headlights
la ruota	wheel
lo pneumatico	tire
la gomma	tire
la routa di scorta	spare tire
il cambio	shift
avanti	foward
indietro	reverse/back
il cambio automatico	automatic shift
il cambio manuale	manual shift
la batteria	the battery
il serbatoio della benzina	gas tank
la benzina	gasoline
il gasolio	diesel oil
il pieno	full
Può fare il pieno?	Could you fill it up please?
Il pieno, per favore!	Fill it up, please!

la stazione di servizio	gas/service station
Può...?	Could you (pol.)...
Può caricare la batteria?	charge the battery?
Può controllare l'olio?	check the oil?
Può controllare l'acqua?	check the water?
Può controllare le gomme?	check the tires?
Può cambiare la gomma?	change the tire?
Può agguistare la goma terra?	fix the flat tire?
Può riparare la goma terra?	fix the flat tire?

6(Vo)26

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Renting a Car/Take me?/Get in!

Some useful terms if you would like to rent a car in Italy:

Quanto costa?	How much does it cost?
Quanto costa al giorno?	What does it cost for the day?
Quanto costa per una settimana?	What does it cost for a week?
Che modelli avete?	What models do you have?
Mi mostri, per favore.	Show me, please. (pol. command)
È tutto compreso?	Is everything included?
È compresa l'assicurazione?	Is the insurance included?
È compresa la benzina?	Is the gas included?
C'è l'imposta IVA?^	Is there a value added tax?^

Or, if you would like a ride from a taxi or help from a friend to get somewhere:

Mi può chiamare un tassì, per favore.	Could you (pol.) call me a taxi, please?
Mi può portare…	Could you (pol.) take me? (as in drive me…)
Vorrei prendere il treno.	I want to take the train.
C'è una stazione della metro vicino?	Is there a subway station/stop near-by?
C'è una fermata dell'autobus vicino?	Is there a bus stop near-by?
Dammi le chiavi (della macchina)!	Give me the (car) keys! (fam. command).

Note that different prepositions are used for cars vs. other forms of transportation when *getting in*, and how the prepositions **su (on)** and **da (from/out of)** are combined with the different forms of **the (il, l', or la)**. The combined prepositions are given in red.

Salgo* in macchina.	I get into the car.
Salgo su…	I get on/I board/I go aboard…

Salgo… sull'autobus, sul treno, sulla motocicletta, sulla bicicletta, sull'areo.
I get onto… the bus, the train, the motorcycle, the bicycle, the airplane.

Scendo dal…	I go down/I get down/I get off or out of…

Scendo dalla macchina.	I get out of the car.

Scendo… dall'autobus, dal treno, dalla motocicletta, dalla bicicletta, dall'areo.
I get off of… the bus, the train, the motorcycle, the bicycle, the airplane.

Sali in macchina! +	Get into the car! (fam. command)
Scendi dalla macchina! +	Get out of the car! (fam. command)

^In Italian, **imposta sul valore aggiunto = IVA = value added tax = VAT**
***From the irregular **-ire** verb **salire** (see Chapter 7). / ****From **la metropolitana**.
+See Chapter 9 for command forms. 6(IP)19

Cultural Note - Renting a Car and Driving in Italy

The Italian railroad system is the most efficient way to travel throughout Italy, especially for the tourist with a limited period of time to spend. But, for those for whom driving the **autostrada** in a Ferrari has always been a dream (see www.red-travel.com) ,or for those who have enough time to spend to really get to know the countryside (www.italylogue.com/agriturismo), here are a few tips about what is needed to rent a car and drive in Italy.

A quick search of the internet for "rent a car in Italy," yields many companies that promise quick and easy deals. Auto Europe is not a car rental company, but a car broker that allows the traveler to book online, and offers several additional services (www.autoeurope.com). They are recommended by Slow Travel Italy, which can also be found on the internet at www.slowtravel-italy.com. Here are some of the benefits that Auto Europe can provide for the renter: competitive pricing, a list of what is included for the price, pick-up and drop-off at different locations within Italy at no extra charge, and a 24/7 customer service line that will help the traveler handle any issues encountered on the road or with the local rental company. Note that commonly included fees when renting a car in Italy include: taxes, a surcharge for picking up the car at the airport, and possibly a daily road tax. Insurance is necessary to drive in Italy, and can significantly increase the price of the rental when obtained through the rental company, so it is worthwhile to check if you can get cheaper insurance through a credit card company.

Picking up a rental car at the airport can be difficult at peak travel times due to long lines, and also on off-hours, when parts of the airport may be closed. In addition, many Italian hotels, especially if located centrally within a city, do not have parking available for their guests. There are tolls on most Italian freeways, and gas is expensive in Italy. It may be easier to take the train to your initial destination and pick up the car the next day, or when you are leaving for the next city on your trip – again, public transportation in most cities is excellent. The city streets in Italy are narrow, so remember that a smaller car is probably better than a larger car, as long as luggage and family will fit!

Here is a check-list of things to find out before leaving the rental office: (1) does the car take **unleaded gas (benzina)** or **diesel (gasolio)**; (2) how to put the car in reverse; (3) how to lock/unlock doors and windows; (4) is a reflective vest and other equipment required by law in case of an accident provided (in the trunk); (5) is a GPS or map of the town where you will be driving available; (6) can you get a parking disc for the car?

6(IP)20

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Renting a Car and Driving in Italy (cont'd)

In order to rent a car and legally drive in Italy, some additional paperwork will need to be completed. Before leaving, call AAA to obtain an International Driving Permit (IDP), which is an official translation of a US driver's license. Both the IDP and driver's license should be presented at the time of rental, along with proof of insurance.

Once out in your new vehicle, keep in mind that seat belts must be worn at all times, and when driving on highways headlights must often be kept on during the day as well as at night (signs are posted which say, **"In autostrada anabbaglianti sempre accessi"**). Speed limits vary according to the type of road in Italy. For the **autostrada,** maximum speed is 130-140 km/h, and the left lane is only used for passing, while through traffic uses the right lanes. Beware those drivers who try to cheat this rule by straddling the lanes. It is not advised to copy this technique!

Maximum speed on the main highways is 110 km/h and in the towns 50 km/h. Maximum speeds automatically decrease 10-20 km/h in rain and fog. The signs denoting maximum speed are round, with a red perimeter and black numbers in the center. If there is a temporary decrease in the speed limit, such as when passing through a town, a new speed limit sign will be posted. When the restriction ends, the same sign will reappear with a diagonal slash through it.

When driving into a town, a sign with the town's name will appear and when leaving, the same sign with a diagonal slash through the town's name will be posted. Stop signs are the same shape and color as in the US, and even say the word "stop" in English. However, they are treated by Italian drivers as flashing yellow – if they can, drivers often keep going! Keep in mind that (technically) there is no "right on red" in Italy. Also, beware of the upside down triangle with a red perimeter, the **dare la precedenza** sign, which is found before intersections or roundabouts – you must **give way to all other vehicles.** A round sign with a red perimeter and white center means the area is restricted to vehicles, and a similar sign with a white bar means **no entry.** A complete list of signs can be found online at www.slowtravel-italy.com.

And, finally, a word about parking. Parking signs are blue and paid parking spaces are outlined in blue. Find the parking machine near by, pay with cash or credit for the allotted number of hours, and put the ticket on your dashboard (as in many US cities today). White spaces are usually free parking, but then the **disco orario,** a small **cardboard clock,** needs to be placed on your dashboard and set to **the time you arrived at the space – ora di arrivo.** The posted sign will tell you how long you may remain. In some cities, however, the white lines may be reserved for residents, so beware. Also, **do not park in front of driveways**, where you may see a **passo carrabile** sign, or block any type of side street, or double park, despite what you may see the Italians do!

6(IP)21



Traffic signs on a road in Pescocanale
overlooking the town of Capistrello
Abruzzo Region

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Possessive Adjectives Things and Plural Forms for the Family

We have already been introduced to the possessive adjectives and learned how to use them when describing family relationships. However, there is a slight modification that needs to be made when describing ownership of things. The definite article **(il, la, i, or le)** must be added *before* the possessive adjective and both will match the gender and number of the noun that is being modified. Remember, in Italian, we do not think about *who* is doing the possessing, but about *what is being possessed!*

Singular and Plural Possessive Adjectives

Singular		Plural
il mio/la mia	my	i miei/le mie
il tuo/la tua	your (familiar) singular	i tuoi/le tue
ilsuo*/la sua*	your (polite)* singular his, her, its	i suoi*/le sue*
il nostro/la nostra	our	i nostri/le nostre
il vostro/la vostra	your (familiar) plural	i vostri/le vostre
il loro/la loro	their	i loro*/le loro*

****For "polite your", simply capitalize, as in, "il Suo amico" or "la Sua amica."**

Remember that **loro** is invariable and so must always take a definite article. Looking back at our dialogue in this chapter, we can see how the possessive adjectives are used in different situations. When Pietro refers to his car, he says, **"la mia macchina;"** the car is a thing, and to show possession Pietro uses the definite article **la** with the possessive adjective **mia** to match the feminine singular word **macchina.**

Now, as if things weren't quite complicated enough already, it should be noted that the definite article can be omitted if the speaker wants to emphasize ownership of a particular thing when using the verb **essere.** If Peter wanted to stress his ownership of a car, for instance, he would simply say, **"È mia,"** for, "**(It) is mine,"** and omit the definite article **la** and the word **macchina.** In English, we use **mine** instead of **my, ours** instead of **our** and **yours** instead of **your** after the verb "to be" in a similar way. This is called the stressed form of the possessive adjective.

Finally, the expression **"a casa mia,"** with the possessive adjective placed alone, *after* the noun, is idiomatic and means **"at/to my house."** The other possessive forms can be used as well with this phrase, as in **"a casa tua" (at your house)** or **"a casa sua" (at his/her house).** And, it can always be, **"colpa mia,"** or **"my fault."** 6(G)17

Grammar Note - Possessive Adjectives
Things and Plural Forms for the Family (cont'd)

Now for a summary of rules to be used with family members. You remember Caterina's frequent use of **mio cugino,** for **my cousin,** from our dialogues. However, when speaking of *more than one* family member, the definite article must be used, as in **i miei cugini,** for **my cousins**. And, if using an *adjective to describe family members*, the definite article is also used, as in, **"Caterina è la mia cara cugina,"** for, **"Kathy is my dear cousin."**

Always use **il mio fidanzato** or **la mia fidanzata** for a **boyfriend/fiancé** or **girlfriend/fiancée**, who are not yet part of the family! This also applies to **la mia ex moglie** and **il mio ex marito, my ex-wife** and **my ex-husband**. Finally, if a **cat** or a **dog** is a part of your family in America, when referring to them in Italian, use the definite article, as in **il mio gato** or **il mio cane.** The endings of the nouns that refer to animals do not need to be changed to match their gender. But, if it is important to emphasize that you have a female animal, say, **"la mia gata" (female cat)** or **"la mia cagna" (female dog)**.

Singular and Plural Possessive Adjectives for Family		
mio/mia	my	i miei/le mie
tuo/tua	your (familiar) singular	i tuoi/le tue
suo/sua	your (polite) singular/his/her/its	i suoi/le sue
nostro/nostra	our	i nostri/le nostre
vostro/vostra	your (familiar) plural	i vostri/levostre
il loro/la loro	their	i loro/le loro

La Mia Famiglia Femminile – Female Members of My Family		
mia madre	my mother	
(la) mia mamma	my mom	
mia sorella	my sister(s)	le mie sorelle
mia nonna	my grandmother(s)	le mie nonne
mia zia	my aunt(s)	le mie zie
mia figlia	my daughter(s)	le mie figlie
mia cugina	my female cousin(s)	le mie cugine

La Mia Famiglia Maschile – Male Members of My Family		
mio padre	my father	
(il) mio papà	my dad	
mio fratello	my brother(s)	i miei fratelli
mio nonno	my grandfather(s)	i miei nonni
mio zio	my uncle(s)	i miei zii
mio figlio	my son(s)	i miei figli
mio cugino	my cousin(s)	i miei cugini

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Adjectives that Precede Nouns

We have already discussed how adjectives of nationality and color commonly follow the nouns they modify. Most other Italian adjectives will follow the noun as well. When using the adverb **molto (very)** to modify an adjective, the adjective *must* come *after* the noun. For example:

l'edificio molto grande the very big building

However, we have also been using adjectives in our dialogues that precede nouns, such as the possessive adjectives. **Buono, bello,** and other adjectives, such as those of size, or personal characteristics of good/bad, young/old, pretty/ugly. as well as terms of endearment *usually precede* the noun.

See the table below for a summary of the most important of these adjectives, with their definitions and their different forms for gender and number aggreement.

Adjectives that Commonly Precede Nouns

		Singular Forms	Plural Forms
grande	big, large	grande	grandi
piccolo	small	piccolo/piccola	piccoli/piccole
stesso	same	stesso/stessa	stessi/stesse
buono*	good, talented	buon/buono/buona/buon'	buoni/buone
bravo	bad, mean	bravo/brava	bravi/brave
cattivo		cattivo/cattiva	cattivi/cattive
giovane	young	giovane	giovani
anziano	elderly	anziano/anziana	anziani/anziane
nuovo	new	nuovo/nuova	nuovi/nuove
vecchio	old	vecchio/vecchia	vecchi/vecchie
caro	dear/expensive	caro/cara	cari/care
vero	true	vero/vera	veri/vere
bello*	beautiful, handsome	bel/bello/bella/bell'	bei/begli/belle
brutto	ugly	brutto/brutta	brutti/brutte

*Remember that the endings for **buono** and **bello** when placed *after* the noun will follow the usual rules for gender and number endings: **(o,a) (i,e)!** 6(G)19

Grammar Note - Adjectives that Precede Nouns (cont'd)

So, how can we use this list of adjectives that *usually* precede nouns? Well, in some cases placing an adjective before a noun (especially an adjective that describes a person) gives a somewhat poetic meaning, while placing that same adjective after that same noun renders a more literal meaning.

In the case of **vecchio,** for instance, **"un amico vecchio"** is a **friend who is old,** while **"un vecchio amico"** refers to **"an old friend,"** or someone who has been a friend for a long time. You will no doubt recognize *our* old friends **buono** and **bello** in this list! Much time has been devoted in Chapters 1 and 2 to discussing the different forms of **buono** and **bello** that must be used when these adjectives precede the noun. All the other adjectives listed follow the usual rules for gender and number agreement with the noun for their endings.

un amico vecchio	a friend who is old
un vecchio amico	a long-time friend
un pilota buono	a pilot who is good
un buon pilota	a good (talented) pilot
un uomo cattivo	a man who is bad (not helpful/not nice)
un cattivo uomo	a mean man
una macchina nuova	a (brand) new car
una nuova macchina	a different car
Michele è diventato grande.	Michael has grown up. (lit. become big)
Pietro è un grande uomo.	Peter is a great man.

6(G)20

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Forming Sentences with **Essere** and the Adjective **Bravo**

Now we are ready to start making more complex sentences using some of the adjectives we have just learned. Here are some sample sentences using the adjective **bravo.** Remember to change the ending of the adjective to reflect the gender and number of the noun it modifies; both will, of course, reflect back to the subject when using the verb **to be, essere.** If both a male and a female are referred to at the same time, the male plural ending will apply. See below:

Caterina è una brava ragazza.	Kathy is a good/talented girl.
Pietro è un bravo ragazzo.	Peter is a good/talented boy.
Caterina e Francesca sono brave ragazze.	Kathy and Frances are good girls.
Pietro e Michele sono bravi ragazzi.	Peter and Michael are good boys.
Caterina e Pietro sono bravi ragazzi.	Kathy and Peter are good young people.

Now, what do we do if the noun after the verb **to be (essere)** is omitted from the adjective/noun combination? Simply use the adjective alone at the end of the sentence, but remember to change the ending to reflect the gender and number of the subject.

Caterina è brava.	Kathy is good/talented.
Pietro è bravo.	Peter is good/talented.
Caterina e Francesca sono brave.	Kathy and Frances are good.
Pietro e Michele sono bravi.	Peter and Michael are good.
Caterina e Pietro sono bravi.	Kathy and Peter are good.

One last word on the use of **bravo.** If you shout, **"Bravo!"** in a theater, this is for a male performer. Shout, **"Brava!"** for a female performer. **"Bravi!"** is correct for the entire cast, but for some reason is less frequently used than **"Bravo!"**

6(G)21

Grammar Note - Adverbs and Adjectives Expressing Quantity

Adverbs, words that modify an adjective or a verb, including those which express quantity, are invariable. Adverbs are always placed *after* the verb, the way we do in English! We have been using these words throughout our dialogues, and they are probably some of the most easily recognized Italian words by non-Italian speakers. Here is a list of a few adverbs of quantity along with some examples of their use:

Adverbs of Quantity	
poco	not very/a little
molto	very
tanto	very/so
troppo	too much

Caterina parla italiano un poco.	Kathy speaks Italian a little.
Milano è una città molto bella.	Milan is a city very beautiful.
Pietro è tanto bravo.	Pietro is so talented.
Caterina parla troppo.	Kathy talks too much.

By simply dropping the final vowel and adding **–issimo** to the end of an adverb, you can express the English meaning of **extremely** or **really**, for something that is so special the word **molto** simply won't do!

molto bene and benissimo	very well and extremely/really well
molto bello and bellissimo	very beautiful/very nice and really beautiful/really nice

These adverbs of quantity can also be used as adjectives to modify a noun. In this case, they come *before* the noun, and therefore must change to reflect gender and number of the noun they modify.

Adverbs of Quantity Before Nouns			
		Singular Forms	Plural Forms
poco	little, a few	poco/poca	pochi/poche
molto	much, a lot of, many	molto/molta	molti/molte
tanto	so much, so many	tanto/tanta	tanti/tante
troppo	too much; too many	troppo/troppa	troppi/troppe

Milano ha pochi alberi.	Milan has few trees.
Milano ha molte strade.	Milan has many streets.
Milano ha molti palazzi.	Milan has many buildings.
Milano ha tante macchine.	Milan has so many cars.
Milano ha troppa gente.	Milan has too many people

6(G)22

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Regular Verbs that End in –cere/-gere

Here is a list of verbs that you should already know how to conjugate – **cuocere, leggere, spingere,** and **vincere.** They are all second conjugation verbs, as they end in **–ere.** You will notice, though, that, due to the **–cere** and **–gere** endings of the infinitive forms of these particular verbs, we will run into a problem with pronunciation when we add our regular **–ere** endings to the stems for the **io** and **loro** forms.

For the **io** form of the verb **cuocere (to cook),** if we simply drop the **–ere,** from the infinitive form and then add an **–o** ending as usual, we will end up with **"io cuoco."** The Italian **"co"** combination renders a "hard c" sound (like "cat") rather than the softer, "ch" sound (like "cheese") of the original **"ce"** combination. In order to resolve this problem, the letter **i** is added to the root to make **io cuocio** and preserve the original "ch" sound. The same is done for the **loro** form of this verb, for the same reason, to make **loro cuocinono.**

For the verb **leggere (to read),** the regular conjugation in the first person is **io leggo.** The softer "j" sound (like "jet") from the Italian **ge** combination of the infinitive verb **leggere** is lost, and the sound is now a "hard g," (like "good"). But, no spelling change is required! *Instead, the pronunciation will change!* Notice that the "j" sound is preserved naturally with **tu leggi, lei legge, noi leggiamo,** and **voi leggete,** but is again lost with **loro leggono**.

The verbs **spingere (to push)** and **vincere (to win)** also undergo a pronunciation change rather than a spelling change for the **io** and **loro** forms. These verbs are conjugated regularly. Use the table below to practice saying the different forms of these verbs out loud, until they sound natural to your ear!

	Cuocere (to heat up food)	Leggere (to read)	Spingere (to push)	Vincere (to win)
io	cuocio	leggo	spingo	vinco
tu	cuoci	leggi	spingi	vinci
Lei/lei/lui	cuoce	legge	spinge	vince
noi	cuociamo	leggiamo	spingiamo	vinciamo
voi	cuocete	leggete	spingete	vincete
loro	cuociono	leggono	spingono	vincono

6(V)29

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Irregular Verbs **Bere, Scegliere, Spegnere, Tenere** and **Togliere**

Bere, scegliere, spegnere tenere and **togliere** are irregular verbs that end in **-ere,** which makes them second conjugation verbs. However, the stem for all of these verbs will change, while the endings will be the same as for the regular **-ere** verbs.

All the irregular stems have been highlighted in **brown**. You may notice that the **noi** and **voi** forms tend to have regular stems (except for dropping an extra letter **i** for the **noi** forms of **scegliere** and **togliere**). Also, **togliere** follows the same irregular pattern as **scegliere**.

	Bere (to drink)	Scegliere (to choose)	Spengere (to turn off)
io	bevo	scelgo	spengo
tu	bevi	scelgi	spegni
Lei/lei/lui	beve	sceglie	spegne
noi	beviamo	scegliamo	spegniamo
voi	bevete	scegliete	spegnete
loro	bevono	scelgono	spengono

	Tenere (to keep to hold)	Togliere* (to remove to take away to take off to take out to pull out)
io	tengo	tolgo
tu	tieni	togli
Lei/lei/lui	tiene	toglie
noi	teniamo	togliamo
voi	tenete	togliete
loro	tengono	tolgono

***Do not confuse **togliere** with the irregular **-are** verb **tagliare,** which means **to cut,** and can be found in the list of the **-iare** verbs in Chapter 5. 6(V)30.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Irregular Verb **Stare**

Stare is an **–are** verb that has an irregular root in the **tu** and **loro** forms.

Stare – to stay/(to be)		
io	sto	I stay/(am)
tu	stai	you (familiar) stay/(are)
Lei lei/lui	sta	you (polite) stay/(are) she/he stays/(is)
noi	stiamo	we stay/(are)
voi	state	you all stay/(are)
loro	stanno	they stay/(are)

Stare is a very important verb in Italian, as it is used in many expressions of being. Although the direct translation is **to stay**, **stare** also takes on the meaning of **to be**, especially when it refers to one's health. In particular, **stare** is always used to describe if someone is feeling well **(bene)** or badly/sick **(male)**. Use **stare** to ask someone **to remain calm (calmo)**, **still (fermo)**, or **silent (zitto)**, changing the ending of each adjective to reflect *the gender of the person who is addressed*. **Stare** is also used with some expressions of movement, such as the English **stand up (in piedi)**, and also to convey the idea that someone is **"about to"** do something. Later, in Chapter 10, we will encounter **stare** again when describing how an article of clothing **stays** (meaning **looks**) on someone

.

Stare bene – to feel well/to look good on (clothing)		
io	sto bene	I am well
tu	stai bene	you (familiar) are well
Lei lei/lui	sta bene	you (polite) are well she/he are/is well
noi	stiamo bene	we are well
voi	state bene	you all are well
loro	stanno bene	they are well

stare male	to feel badly/be sick/to look badly on (clothing)
stare calmo(a)(i,e)	to be calm/to remain calm
stare fermo(a)(i,e)	to stay still/to keep still
stare zitto(a)(i,e)	to be silent/to be quiet
Stai zitto(a)(i,e)!	Be quiet!/Shut up! (command tu form)
stare attento(a)(i,e)	to be careful/watchful/to pay attention
stare in piedi	to stand up (lit. to be on your feet)
stare per	to be about to

6(V)31

Present Tense - Present Progressive Tense

The simple present tense is most often used in Italian to express an action that is currently happening. For instance, a simple **"Vado,"** meaning, **"I go,"** is commonly used to express the action of leaving, rather than the more complex English forms, **"I am going,"** or **"I do go."** This has been emphasized in the translations for our dialogues with the use of parenthesis for verb forms that do not directly correspond to each other.

However, occasionally the Italian speaker may want to emphasize that a particular action is *going on at the exact same time as the conversation* that is currently taking place. In that case, they would use the present progressive tense, or "-ing" tense, as we do so often in English. In Italian, this tense is expressed with the verb **stare** and the gerund of the action verb. This is easier than it may seem at first, since the gerunds are almost all regular for all three conjugations. Also, the second and third conjugations are identical!

Present Progressive Tense
Stare + Gerund of Action Verb

To form the gerund, just drop the **-are, -ere,** or **-ire** infinitive ending and add the following endings:

Forming the Gerund	
Verbs that end in -are	stem + ando
Verbs that end in -ere or -ire	stem + endo

Conjugate **stare** to reflect the speaker, add the gerund, and you have made a present progressive tense of the verb! Pietro uses the present progressive to emphasize to Caterina that, at the exact moment they are at the train station, his wife and grandmother are at home busily preparing the wonderful dinner for that evening when he says, **"Stanno preparando una bella cena per stasera."**

Here are all the forms of the present progressive tense using the verb **prepare**. Notice that the accent falls on the second to last syllable of the gerund.

Stare preparare – to be preparing			
io	sto	preparando	I am preparing
tu	stai	preparando	you (familiar) are preparing
Lei lei/lui	sta	preparando	you (polite) are preparing she/he is preparing
noi	stiamo	preparando	we are preparing
voi	state	preparando	you all are preparing
loro	stanno	preparando	they are preparing

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Present Progressive Tense (cont'd)

Here are the forms of the present progressive tense using the **-ere** verb **leggere**.

Stare leggere – to be reading			
io	sto	leggendo	I am reading
tu	stai	leggendo	you (familiar) are reading
Lei lei/lui	sta	leggendo	you (polite) are reading she/he is reading
noi	stiamo	leggendo	we are reading
voi	state	leggendo	you all are reading
loro	stanno	leggendo	they are reading

Bere is an important **–ere** verb that has an irregular stem for the gerund. In this case, the stem is changed to **bev** before adding **–endo**, so the complete gerund is **bevendo**. Since everyone likes to eat and drink in Italy – and frequently talks about their eating and drinking – here are all the conjugations for this verb with its irregular gerund!

Stare bere – to be drinking			
io	sto	bevendo	I am drinking
tu	stai	bevendo	you (familiar) are drinking
Lei lei/lui	sta	bevendo	you (polite) are drinking she/he is drinking
noi	stiamo	bevendo	we are drinking
voi	state	bevendo	you all are drinking
loro	stanno	bevendo	they are drinking

Finally, although we will not learn how to conjugate the **–ire** verbs in the simple present tense until the next chapter, here is the full conjugation of the **–ire** verb **dormire** in the present progressive tense; as we have seen, the method is exactly the same as for the way we conjugate the **–ere** verbs for the present progressive tense!

Stare dormire – to be sleeping			
io	sto	dormendo	I am sleeping
tu	stai	dormendo	you (familiar) are sleeping
Lei lei/lui	sta	dormendo	you (polite) are sleeping she/he is sleeping
noi	stiamo	dormendo	we are sleeping
voi	state	dormendo	you all are sleeping
loro	stanno	dormendo	they are sleeping

Grammar Point - To Be / To Live Revisited
Essere and **Stare; Abitare** and **Vivere**

So far, we have encountered several different words that express the idea of being and living; both **essere** and **stare** are used to express the idea of existence or the act of **being,** depending on the situation, as we have discussed in this chapter.

Both verbs **abitare** and **vivere** are translated as **to live.** There are subtle differences in the meaning and use of each, though. **Abitare** refers more to the act of dwelling or inhabiting a place, and is often used to describe the location of the home or town one lives in. For instance, **"Pietro abita in un grand apartamento,"** means, **"Peter lives in a big apartment."** **Vivere** refers to the abstract state of being that is **living.** So, when describing our existence, as singers often do in popular songs, **vivere** is the word chosen. **"Non voglio vivere senza te,"** means, **"I don't want to live without you."**

Grammar Point - **C'è** and **Ci sono** vs. **Ecco**

In the very first chapter, we learned that **ecco** is an expression that means both **here is** and **here are.** **Ecco** has been a very useful expression throughout our dialogues when Caterina is giving a document or payment to someone. Caterina is also uses **ecco** when pointing out something that she sees. In each instance, there is an object that is in plain sight.

Notice, however, that there is another common way to say "there is" from the dialogue in this chapter, when Pietro makes a general statement about the traffic: **"C'è molto traffico,"** which translates as, **"There is a lot of traffic."** **C'è** is the elided (contracted) form of **ci** and **è,** and means **there is.** **Ci sono** is the form of this phrase that means **there are.** These expressions can be used when speaking of the existence of something *whether it can be seen or not*.

Along these lines, if you ask someone in Italy how they feel, or how things are going for them, they may reply, **"Non c'è male,"** which is the equivalent of the English, **"Not too badly."** When you spend time in Italy, you will hear phrases that use **c'è** often, in many different situations, and we will continue to encounter them in the remainder of our text.

6(V)34

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 6

Infinitive Forms	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	o	o	*	****
tu	i	i	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	a	e	*	****
noi	iamo	iamo	****	****
voi	ate	ete	***	***
loro	ano	ono	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Avere (to have)
io	sono	ho
tu	sei	hai
Lei/lei/lui	è	ha
noi	siamo	abbiamo
voi	siete	avete
loro	sono	hanno

Irregular Verbs	Andare (to go)	Volere (to want)	Sapere (to know)	Conoscere (to know)
io	vado	voglio	so	conosco
tu	vai	vuoi	sai	conosci
Lei/lei/lui	va	vuole	sa	conosce
noi	andiamo	vogliamo	sappiamo	conosciamo
voi	andate	volete	sapete	conoscete
loro	vanno	vogliono	sanno	conoscono

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 6 (cont'd)

Auxiliary Verb Stare	Stare (to stay/(to be))
io	sto
tu	stai
Lei/lei/lui	sta
noi	stiamo
voi	state
loro	stanno

Uses for Auxiliary Verb Stare	Stare bene (to be well/ to look good on)		Stare male (to feel badly/ to look badly on)	
io	sto	+bene	sto	+male
tu	stai	+bene	stai	+male
Lei/lei/lui	sta	+bene	sta	+male
noi	stiamo	+bene	stiamo	+male
voi	state	+bene	state	+male
loro	stanno	+bene	stanno	+male

Present Progressive	Stare (to be)	-are gerund	-ere gerund	-ire gerund
io	sto	+ando	+endo	+endo
tu	stai	+ando	+endo	+endo
Lei/lei/lui	sta	+ando	+endo	+endo
noi	stiamo	+ando	+endo	+endo
voi	state	+ando	+endo	+endo
loro	stanno	+ando	+endo	+endo

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - Bene

Bene is an important adverb that denotes how one is feeling, and has the meaning of **well** or **fine**. In English, we often use the word "good" as an adverb. How many times have you asked someone, "How are you feeling?" and received the answer, "Good?" It is likely that anyone living in America today has heard "good" in response to this question many more times than the proper English adverbs "well" or "fine." In Italian, this is not the case, however, as **bene** is consistently used. **Bene** can also be used as the equivalent of **O.K.**, as we have already seen with the idiomatic expression **"Va bene."**

piuttosto bene	pretty good
abbastanza bene	pretty good/well enough/reasonably well
proprio bene	very (really) well
tutto bene	all right
tutto va bene	all is well
nota bene	note well/please note

An additional use of the word **bene** is found with the phrase, **"Ti voglio bene,"** which translates as, **"I wish you well,"** or **"I care for you."** In the past, Italians would also use this phrase to mean, **"I love you"** in a romantic way instead of the verb that means **to love, amare** (as anyone who watches older Italian movies can attest). Today, **"Ti voglio bene"** is still used for platonic forms of caring and loving among family members and close friends, while **amare** is reserved for romantic love. So, if someone special asks you, **"Mi vuoi bene?" "Do you care for me/love me?"** here are some replies:

Mi vuoi bene?	Do you care for me/love me?
Ti voglio bene.	I like you. (platonic)
Ti voglio bene.	I care for you. (platonic)
Ti voglio bene.	I love you. (romantic)
Ti amo.	I love you. (romantic)

Finally, some phrases for when you have fallen out of love:

Non ti voglio più bene.	I don't like/care for you anymore.
Non ti amo più.	I don't love you anymore.

6(IE)11



Pedestrian Area
(Area Pedonale)



Bus Stop/No Stopping



Parking Prohibited on the Piazza



Leave Passageway Free/No Parking



No Parking Driveway

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Expressions for Telling Time

The English word **time** can be translated into Italian as **ora**, as we have already learned, and also **tempo** or **volta**. Here are some useful expressions that use each of the Italian words that describe time.

Che ora è?	What time is it?
Non ho tempo.	I don't have time.
C'è ancora tempo.	There is still time.
Quanto tempo?	How long? (lit. How much time?)
qualche volta	sometimes
una volta in più	one more time
tre volte al giorno	three time a day
un paio d'ore	a couple of hours
minuto/minuti	minute/minutes
secondo/secondi	second/seconds
Aspetta un attimo!	Wait a second!
Un attimo!	Hold it!
Un momento!	Hold it!
fino all'una	until 1:00
fino a domani	until tomorrow
fino a stasera	until tonight
in anticipo (di ___minuti)	ahead of time (of ___minutes)
in ritardo (di ___minuti)	late (of ___ minutes)
tardi	late
in punto	sharp
l'ora di punta	rush hour
in orario/puntuale	on time
presto	early
È tardi.	(It) is late.
È presto.	(It) is early.

6(N)11





Pay to Park Meter by Piazza Republicca, Milan
(keypad, meter, and instructions)



Parking Signs Near Piazza La Scala, Milan



Rental Bicycles at the Metro Stop, Galleria Shopping Mall Piazza, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com



Unit 2
City Life





 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 7 – A Family Reunion
Dialogue

Caterina and Pietro arrive at Pietro's home in Milan just as his wife, **Francesca (Frances)** and their grandmother are setting the table for dinner. After a joyous reunion, they all sit down for Caterina's first meal in Italy, which includes **gli spaghetti** (the plural of **uno spaghetto).** To call the family to the table, Nonna announces, **"Gli spaghetti sono pronti!"**for, **"The spaghetti is ready!"** changing **pronto** into **pronti** to match the plural form of **spaghetti.**

Notice that in our dialogues both Pietro and Francesca use the feminine **–a** ending when they say, **"Benvenuta!"** to welcome Caterina, since Caterina is female. Also, keep looking for those possessive adjectives and the use of **di,** meaning **for,** to describe possession of objects in our dialogues. Finally, many Italian phrases are underlined in this dialogue that require the preposition **di** to link the first noun or verb in the phrase with an infinitive verb that follows. A list of the phrases that use **di** are found later in this chapter.

(Pietro e Caterina entrano.)
(Peter and Kathy enter.)

Pietro: Eccomi! Siamo qui!
Here I am! (We) are here!

Francesca: Caterina! Benvenuta a casa nostra. Sono veramente felice di vedere di nuovo la nostra cara cugina!

Kathy! Welcome to our home. (I) am truly happy to see our dear cousin once more!

Caterina: Ciao, Francesca! Grazie per la tua ospitalità. Anch'io sono molto contenta di vedere di nuovo la mia famiglia italiana.

Hi, Frances! Thank you for your hospitality. Also I am very happy to see my Italian family once more.

(Si abbracciano e si baciano.)
(They hug and kiss each other.)

Francesca: Pietro, prendi la valigia di Caterina e portala nella stanza da letto. La cena è quasi pronta.
Peter, take Kathy's suitcase and bring it (fam. command) to the bedroom. The dinner is almost ready.

7(Vo)27

Unit 2 - City Life
Chapter 7- A Family Reunion
Dialogue (cont'd)

(Nonna entra.)
(Nonna enters.)

Nonna: Caterina! Ti vedo! Che bella ragazza! Come tua madre!
Kathy! (I) see you! What (a) beautiful girl! Just like your mother!

Caterina: Bella nonna mia! È meraviglioso di vederti!
My beautiful grandma! (It) is wonderful to see you!

(Si abbracciano e si baciano.)
(They hug and kiss each other.)
(Michele entra; sta correndo.)
(Michael enters; (he) is running.)

Michele: Cugina Caterina! Cugina Caterina! Io sono Michele!
Cousin Cathy! Cousin Cathy! I am Michael!

Caterina: Si, lo so che tu sei Michele! Tu sei un bravo bimbo!
Ho un piccolo regalo per te dall'America!

Yes, (I) know that you are Michael! You are a good boy!
(I) have a small gift for you from America!

Michele: Che cosa? Che regalo?
What? What present?

Caterina: Una macchina rossa. *(La prende dalla sua borsa.)* Si chiama Chevy Camaro.
A red car. *((She) takes it from her purse.)* (It) is named Chevy Camaro.

Michele: Che bello! È come una Ferrari!
How beautiful! (It) is like a Ferrari!

(Tutti ridono.)
(Everyone laughs.)

Nonna: Ed ora, tutti a tavola a mangiare! Gli spaghetti sono pronti!
And now, everyone to the table to eat! The spaghetti is ready!

Caterina: Tante grazie, Nonna. Ho la fortuna di mangiare con la mia famiglia stasera. Sono sicura di ricordare questa serata per tutta la mia vita.

Thank you so, much, grandma. (I) am (so) fortunate to eat with my family tonight. (I) am sure to remember this evening for all (the rest of) my life. 7(Vo)28

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - At Home

In Italian, the word for **house** and **home** is the same – **casa.** This is a testament to the Italian family, which has always been the center of Italian life. Many grand villas dot the Italian countryside, often surrounded by tall cypress trees and terraced vineyards or olive groves. However, most Italians in the country live in attached stone dwellings that often date back hundreds of years, originally made to accommodate extended families, with interiors that have been renovated for modern living, of course! In the city, there are apartment buildings in classic Italian architectural styles that often stand beside new modern construction high rises. Wherever their home may be, though, an Italian still refers to their place most often as **casa mia,** or **my house**. Here are some vocabulary words to help you find your way around a typical Italian home.

la casa	house/home	la camera/la stanza	room
at home	a casa	la camera da letto	bedroom
la casa propria	a house of one's own	la sala	large room
la casa in affitto	a rented house	la sala da pranzo	dining room
l'appartamento	apartment/condominium	il soggiorno	living room
il condominio	condominium association	il salotto	formal living room
…su due piani	…duplex apartment	la cucina	kitchen
il monolocale	studio apartment	la stanza da bagno	bathroom
il bilocale	two room apartment	il gabinetto	bathroom
la terrazza	terrace	la toilette	public bathroom
il balcone/poggiolo	balcony	la cantina	cellar
il muro/la parete	wall	la soffitta	attic
il tetto	roof		
il soffitto	ceiling	abbracciarsi	to hug each other
il pavimento	floor	baciarsi	to kiss each other
la finestra	window	correre	to run
la persiana	shutter	entrare	to enter
il camino	chimney/fireplace	prendere	to take
il pianterreno	ground floor/first floor	ricordare	to remember
il primo piano	second floor (first floor above ground floor)		
l'ascensore	elevator		
le scale	stairs		
il corridoio	hallway		
la porta	door		
la maniglia	door handle		
il campanello	doorbell		
il garage	garage		
il giardino	garden/yard		
la cassetta delle lettere	mailbox		
il/la vincino(a)	neighbor		

7(Vo)29



Via Dante in the evening with View of the Duomo, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Coming and Going

Early on, in Chapter 2, we learned the full conjugation of the verb **andare,** which is an irregular verb that means **to go**. The verb that means **to go out, uscire,** and the verb that means **to come, venire,** are both also irregular. Remember from our first two chapters the phrase, **"Vengo dall' America,"** which means, **"I come from America"?** We will finally fully conjugate **venire**, along with **uscire,** later in this chapter.

Here are some simple phrases of coming and going that may be useful for the traveler. **"Vieni qua!"** for instance, which means, **"Come here!"** is a helpful phrase for the family trying to stay together. Also helpful to remember is **"Vengo io,"** a phrase used to emphasize one's intention to do something right away, as in, **"I AM (the one who is) coming (to take care of it)!"** Use this phrase when other people are in the room and you will go to answer the door. Notice the insertion of the preposition **a,** for **to,** *after* the conjugated forms of **andare** and **venire,** which is useful to keep the flow of conversation smooth. The phrases that use **a (to)** have been underlined in the list below.

Vado a scuola.	(I) go to school.
Vado a lavorare.	(I) go to work.
Tu vai a lavorare oggi?	(Do) you go to work today?
No, vado a fare la spesa.	No, (I) go to do the grocery shopping.
Esco presto stamattina.	(I) go out early this morning.
Esci alle otto oggi?	(Do) (you) go out at eight today?
Io vengo a casa.	I come home.
Vengo io!	I'm coming!
Vieni qua!	(You) Come here! (fam. command)
Michele, vieni qua!	Michael, come here! (fam. command)
Michele, vieni qua, subito!	Michael, come here, right away!
Non volgio andare a scuola.	(I) don't want to go to school.
Non voglio venire a casa presto.	(I) don't want to come home early.
Non voglio uscire stasera.	(I) don't want to go out tonight.
Non voglio uscire per cena stasera.	(I) don't want to go out for dinner tonight.
Non voglio uscire con Francesca.	(I) don't want to go out with Francesca.

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Italian Relatives

For generations, large, extended families that lived together in the same town were common in Italy. Although this is not always the case today in modern Italy, here is a long vocabulary list, so, hopefully, no one who comes to visit will feel left out! And, remember, to use either **andare a trovare** **(to go visit)** or **venire a trovare** **(to come visit)** when *visting a person*. Only when *visiting a place* is the verb **vistare** **(to visit)** used!

la famiglia	family	andare a trovare	to go to visit
i genitori	parents	venire a trovare	to come to visit
la madre	mother	la mamma/mami	mama/mom
il padre	father	il babbo/papà*/papi	daddy/dad/pop
il bambino	baby (boy)	il bimbo	little baby (boy)
la bambina	baby (girl)	la bimba	little baby (girl)
il figlio	son	il ragazzo	boy (>12 years)
la figlia	daughter	la ragazza	girl (>12 years)
i fratelli	siblings	il ragazzino	little boy (<12)
il fratello	brother	la ragazzina	little girl (<12)
la sorella	sister	il suocero	father-in-law
i parenti	relatives	la suocera	mother-in-law
il nonno	grandfather	i suoceri	parents-in-law
la nonna	grandmother	il cognato	brother-in-law
lo zio	uncle	la cognata	sister-in-law
la zia	aunt	il gemello	twin brother
il nipote	grandson/nephew	la gemella	twin sister
la nipote	granddaughter/niece	il genero	son-in-law
il cugino	(male) cousin	la nuora	daugher-in-law
la cugina	(female) cousin		
il fidanzato	fiancé/boyfriend	anziano(a)	old/aged/elderly
la fidanzata	fiancée/girlfriend	minore	younger
la coppia	couple	maggiore	older
le nozze	wedding		
lo sposo	groom	il piccirillo	little boy (Neopolitan)
la sposa	bride	la piccirilla	little girl (Neopolitan)
il marito	husband		
la moglie	wife	il picciriddu	little boy (Sicilian)
il vedovo	widower	la picciridda	little girl (Sicilian)
la vedova	widow	il picciottu	little boy (Sicilian)
il bisnonno	great grandfather	la picciotta	little girl (Sicilian)
la bisnonna	great grandmother		

***Il papa** means **the pope,** but **il papà,** with the accent on the last syllable, means **daddy** or **dad,** and **il mio papà** is **my daddy** or **my dad.** **7(IP)24**

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - More Adverbs of Quantity

Adverbs modify both verbs and adjectives. We have already studied several adverbs of quantity in Chapter 6. Here is a longer list of adverbs of quantity that it will be helpful to become familiar with. They are listed from the least quantity to the greatest quantity.

Remember, adverbs come *after* the verb they modify in Italian, as in English. But, in order to modify an adjective, place the adverb *before* the adjective and then place both adverb and adjective *after* the verb. In these situations, adverbs are invariable!

niente	nothing
poco	a little
un po' (di)	a little (bit of)……Use when pointing to or asking for a bit of something, especially food, or to refer to "a little knowledge" of a language.
abbastanza	enough (of)/rather, quite
abbastanza bene	pretty good/pretty well
abbastanza buono	good enough/rather good
abbastanza presto	soon enough/rather early
abbastanza grande	large enough/rather big
abbastanza piccolo	small enough/rather little
non abbastanza bravo	not good enough
parecchio	a lot (of)/a good deal of
molto/tanto	much/a lot……Italians will often repeat the adjective they would like to give emphasis to, instead of using **molto**. **"Pian piano"** means **"slowly"** or **"little by little,"** for instance. Another common expression for something one has a lot of is **"un sacco di,"** as in, **"un sacco di soldi,"** which means, **"a lot of money."**
troppo	too much……**Troppo** is usually used in the negative sense, as in an overwhelming amount of something, such as noise or traffic.

Grammar Note - Asking Questions in Italian

You may have noticed from our dialogues that we can make a question out of any Italian sentence simply by adding a question mark. When speaking, just make the tone of your voice rise at the end of the sentence. Or, we can move the subject to the end of the sentence to create a question in Italian.

Caterina è in casa? = Is Kathy at home?
È in casa Caterina? = Is Kathy at home?

Grammar Note - Interrogative Expression List

By now, we have learned several interrogative expressions necessary to ask a question: **where, what,** and **how much** – which correspond to, **dove, che/che cosa/cosa,** and **quanto.** We also need to add **perché** for **why, chi** for **who, quando** for **when,** and **come** for **how** to our list. These interrogative expressions are invariable, although note that **dove, che cosa, come,** and **quanto** when combined with **è (is)** are written with an apostrophe, as in:**"Dov'è?" "Che cos'è?"** and **"Com'è?"** for, **"Where is?" "What is?"** and **"How is?"**

Quale means **which, which one,** or **what,** and is used when there is a choice to be made between one thing or another. **Quale** follows the rules for adjectives that end in an **–e,** so the singular and plural forms are **quale** and **quali.** The **–e** at the end of **quale** is dropped before **è (is),** to make, **"Qual'è?"** meaning, **"Which is?"**

Interrogative Expressions				
Dove?	Where?		Dov'è?	Where is...?
			Dove sono?	Where are...?
Che?/Cosa?	What?		Cos'è	What is...?
Che cosa?	What?		Che cos'è ?	What is ...?
Quanto(a)?	How much?		Quant'è	How much is (it)...?
Quanti(e)	How many?		Quanti(e) sono	How many are (there)?
Perché	Why?			
Chi?	Who?			
Quando?	When?			
Come?	How?		Com'è?	How is?
			Come sono?	How are?
Quale/Quali	Which/What?		Qual'è?	Which is/What is?
			Quali sono?	Which are/What are?

7(G)24

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Cognates
Nouns Ending in **-tà,** and some **-ire** Verbs

By now, we have learned enough Italian that you probably have noticed how similar to English many Italian words are. This is because both languages have words with origins that date back to the Latin language spoken by the Romans. These words are called cognates – words that have a common origin and a similar meaning. Recognizing these words should greatly increase one's vocabulary with very little effort, so we will include them in almost every chapter of Unit 2.

For words that are similar in both languages, the stem of the word will provide a clue to the actual meaning, and the ending will also follow a common pattern. See how this works below:

The ending **–tà** in Italian is equivalent to the ending –**ty** in English. We have encountered many of these words already in Chapter 2 in our vocabulary list for customs.

All of these nouns are feminine and invariable; therefore, these words will take the definite article **la** for the singular form and **le** for the plural form, although the ending of these nouns remains **–à**. For instance, **one city** is **la città** and **many cities** is **le città.** These nouns are also listed in Appendix 1 at the end of the book.

città	=	city
comunità	=	community
elettricità	=	electricity
facoltà	=	faculty department or course of study/ability/power
festività	=	religious holiday
identità	=	identity
località	=	locality/place/small town
nazionalità	=	nationality
ospitalità	=	hospitality
società	=	society/company (business)
specialità	=	speciality
unità	=	unity
università	=	university

For some **–ire** verbs, the **–ire** ending will be equivalent to the ending –**ish** in English.

finire	=	to finish
punire	=	to punish

7(G)25



Side Street with Restaurant, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Regular –ire Verbs

Italian verbs have three main types, or conjugations, as we have seen, which can be recognized by the ending of the infinitive form of each. So far, we have learned the first and second conjugations. The **-ire,** or third conjugation verbs, can be divided into two groups. The first group has identical endings to those we have already learned for the second conjugation, except for the **voi** form. Notice that the endings for *all three* conjugations are identical for the **io, tu,** and **noi** forms!

Group 1 –ire Verb
********* Dormire – to sleep *********

The table below shows the conjugation of **dormire,** a regular **–ire** verb of the first group. First, drop the **–ire** and you are left with the stem **dorm.** Then add the correct ending to reflect the speaker in order to form the new word. The endings are as follows: **o, i, e, iamo, ite, ono.**

Notice the endings have been listed in a separate column, with the endings that are the same in all three conjugations in **green,** those that are the same for the **–ere** and **–ire** forms in **red,** and the single form unique to the **–ire** verbs in **blue.**

As a general guide to pronunciation of verbs in Italian, remember that the stress will fall in the beginning of the word for the **io, tu,** and **lei/lui** forms. For the **noi** and **voi** forms, an additional syllable is created by combining the root with the first vowel of the ending and the stress will change to the end of the word (second to last syllable). Finally, for **loro,** the stress reverts back to its original location at the beginning of the word! The stressed syllables are underlined for our example verb, as usual.

Dormire – to sleep			
io	dormo	o	I sleep
tu	dormi	i	you (familiar) sleep
Lei lei/lui	dorme	e	you (polite) sleep she/he sleeps
noi	dormiamo	iamo	we sleep
voi	dormite	ite	you all sleep
loro	dormono	ono	they sleep

*Note this simple present tense in Italian can be translated four ways:
io dormo is equivalent to the English **I sleep, I do sleep, I am sleeping, I am going to sleep.**

7(V)37

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Regular –ire Verbs with the -isco Ending

For the second group of **–ire** verbs, simply add the letters **–isc** to the stem prior to the usual endings – well, for all forms except the **noi** and **voi** forms, that is… See the example below.

(Group 2 –ire Verb)
********* Finire – to finish *********

The table below shows the conjugation of **finire,** a regular **–ire** verb of the second group. First, drop the **–ire** and you are left with the stem **fin.** Then, add **–isc** to the stem for all forms except the **noi** and **voi** forms. Finally, add the correct ending to reflect the speaker, and form the new word. The endings are as follows: **o, i, e, iamo, ite, ono.**

Notice the endings have been listed in a separate column, with the endings that are the same in all three conjugations in **green,** those that are the same for the **–ere** and **–ire** forms in **red,** and the single form unique to the **–ire** verbs in **blue.**

When pronouncing the conjugated words for the second group of **–ire** verbs, you will need to use both hard and soft sounds. The hard "c" sound is used for the **–isco** combination for the **io** form, as in **finisco.** But, then, the softer "sh" sounds of the **–isci** and **–isce** combinations are used for the **tu** and **lei/lui** forms are spoken with **finisci** and **finisce.** Finally, the **loro** form goes back to the hard "c" sound, with **finiscono.**

Where to put the stress in the newly formed **–isco** verbs? Well, as you can see from the syllables underlined in the table below, this differs from the other present tense forms – it is easier! The stress always falls on the syllable created by the stem consonant and the **-i** of the ending!

Finire – to finish				
tu	finisci	isc	i	you (familiar) finish
Lei lei/lui	finisce	isc	e	you (polite) finish she/he finishes
noi	finiamo		iamo	we finish
voi	finite		ite	you all finish
loro	finiscono	isc	ono	they finish

*Note this simple present tense in Italian can be translated four ways:
io finisco is equivalent to the English **I finish, I do finish, I am finishing, I am going to finish.**

7(V)38

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Third Conjugation
More Regular **-ire** Verbs

Here are some important regular verbs of the first group of the **–ire** type. Practice the different conjugations of each verb to get used to how the words sound with their different endings, focusing on the **io, tu,** and **noi** forms. Remember that the endings are: **o, i, e, iamo, ite, ono.**

aprire	to open	offrire	to offer
bollire	to boil	partire	to leave/to depart
consentire	to agree	scoprire	to find/to discover
coprire	to cover	seguire	to follow
divertire	to amuse/to entertain	sentire	to hear
fuggire	to escape	servire	to serve
inghiottire	to swallow	soffrire	to suffer
inseguire	to follow	vestire	to dress
mentire	to lie		

Present Tense - Third Conjugation
More Regular **–ire –isco** Verbs

Here are some important regular verbs of the second group of the **–ire** type. Practice the different conjugations of each verb to get used to how the words sound with their different endings, focusing on the **io, tu,** and **noi** forms. Remember to add **–isc** to the stem when necessary prior to the regular endings, as follows: **isco, isci, isce, iamo, ite, iscono.**

capire	to understand	preferire	to prefer
colpire	to hit	pulire	to clean
costruire	to build	punire	to punish
fallire	to fail	riunire	to reunite/to gather/to round up
finire	to finish	sparire	to disappear/to split/to run away
garantire	to guarantee	spedire	to send/to mail
inserire	to insert	suggerire	to suggest
istruire	to instruct	trasferire	to transfer

7(V)39

Present Tense - Third Conjugation
Important Regular –ire –isco Verbs

Capire, preferire, pulire, spedire, and **suggerire** are important regular group 2 **–ire** verbs. The complete conjugations of these important verbs are given in the table below for easy reference. Remember that the following combination endings for this type of third conjugation verb are: **isco, isci, isce, iamo, ite, iscono.**

	Capire (to understand)	Preferire (to prefer)	Pulire (to clean)	Spedire (to send)	Suggerire (to suggest/ to remind)
io	capisco	preferisco	pulisco	spedisco	suggerisco
tu	capisci	preferisci	pulisci	spedisci	suggerisci
Lei/lei/lui	capisce	preferisce	pulisce	spedisce	suggerisce
noi	capiamo	preferiamo	puliamo	spediamo	suggeriamo
voi	capite	preferite	pulite	spedite	suggerite
loro	capiscono	preferiscono	puliscono	spediscono	suggeriscono

Present Tense - Third Conjugation
Irregular Verbs **Dire, Morire, Salire, Uscire, Venire**

Dire, morire, salire, uscire, and **venire** are irregular group 1 **–ire** verbs. The stems of these verbs will change as colored in brown in the table below, although the endings are regular, and are: **o, i, e, iamo, ite, ono.**

	Dire (to say to tell)	Morire (to die)	Salire (to go up to board to get onto to get into)	Uscire (to go out)	Venire (to come)
io	dico	muoio	salgo	esco	vengo
tu	dici	muori	sali	esci	vieni
Lei/lei/lui	dice	muore	sale	esce	viene
noi	diciamo	moriamo	saliamo	usciamo	veniamo
voi	dite	morite	salite	uscite	venite
loro	dicono	muoiono	salgono	escono	vengono

7(V)40

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - Verbs that Take **di** + Infinitive

We have learned previously that when we link two verbs together in the present tense, the first verb, or helping verb, is conjugated and the second verb, or action verb, is left in the infinitive form. There are some verbs, however, that need to be followed by the Italian word **di** before the infinitive can be added to make the phrase that completes the sentence. For instance, in the Chapter 3 dialogue, you may have noticed that the clerk told Caterina, **"Non dimentichi *di* timbrare il biglietto,"** which translates into **"Don't forget to stamp the ticket."**

Most of the verbs that are followed by **di** have to do with speaking, thinking, or an activity that needs to be completed (trying to, finishing, and waiting). In the case of **cercare,** when this verb used by itself, it means **to look for,** but **cercare di** means **to try to.** To the Italian speaker, it is natural to insert the word **di** into these phrases; it just sounds correct. Don't memorize this list, but instead try to listen for the word **di** when these phrases come up, and soon it will become natural for you also to say these phrases correctly.

accettare	to accept	Accetto *di...* lavorare perché è necessario.
aspettare	to wait	Aspetto *di...* ricevere un regalo.
cercare di*	to try to*	Cerco *di...* studiare bene.
credere	to believe	Credo *di...* avere ragione.
decidere	to decide	Decido *di...* guidare con attenzione.
dimenticare	to forget	Dimentico *di...* svegliarmi presto ogni giorno.
		Non dimenticare *di...* prendere la medicina! (command)
dire	to say/tell	Dice *di...* stare bene.
finire	to finish	Finisco *di...* lavorare per oggi.
occuparsi di	to work at	Mi occupo *di...* fare la cena.
ordinare	to order	Ordino *di...* prendere il mio caffè a lavoro.
pensare	to think	Penso *di...*p artire alle tre.
pregare	to pray/beg	Prego *di...* andare in Italia.
ricordare	to remember	Ricorda *di...* prendere la medicina.
scegliere	to choose	Sceglo *di...* amare la natura.
scrivere	to write	Scrivo *di...* viaggiare quando in vacanza.
smettere	to stop	Smetto *di...* guidare la tua macchina.
sperare	to hope	Spero *di...* trovare i soldi.

7(V)41

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 7

Infinitive Present	Reflexive Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	**	o	o	o	isco
tu	**	i	i	i	isci
Lei/lei/lui	**	a	e	e	isce
noi	**	iamo	iamo	iamo	iamo
voi	**	ate	ete	ite	ite
loro	**	ano	ono	ono	iscono

Infinitive Imperative	Direct Object Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	**			*	****
tu	**	*	*	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	**	*	*	*	****
noi	**	****	****	****	****
voi	**	***	***	***	***
loro	**	***	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Essere Imperative	Avere (to have)	Avere Imperative
io	sono		ho	
tu	sei	****	hai	***
Lei/lei/lui	è	***	ha	***
noi	siamo	******	abbiamo	*****
voi	siete	*******	avete	*****
loro	sono	****	hanno	****

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - **Avere** and **Essere** + **di** + Infinitive

We have already used the expression, **"ho bisogno di"** extensively in our dialogues, which literally means, **"I have need of."** There are several other phrases that require the word **di** to link the conjugated form of the verb **avere** with the infinitive form of the verb of action that will complete the sentence. In English, the preposition **of** is sometimes used, but sometimes no additional preposition is needed (the English infinitive verb will already contain the word **to** or the English expression may use a gerund instead of an infinitive verb). You must really learn to think in Italian to use these expressions! Some examples of how to use these phrases are given in the last column. How many more can you think of?

avere bisogno di	to have need of	Ho bisogno *di*... riposare. I need to rest.
avere paura di	to be afraid/have fear of	Ho paura *di*... guidare. I am afraid of driving.
avere voglia di	to feel like	Ho voglia *di*... mangiare una pizza. I feel like eating a pizza.

There are several expressions of feeling that use the verb **essere** and take the word **di** prior to adding the infinitive verb for the phrase that completes the sentence. Again, in English, we do not always use an additional preposition for these phrases, aside from the word **to** that is already a part of the infinitive verb. How many of the phrases below can you recognize from the dialogue in this Chapter?

essere certo di	to be certain of	Sono certo *di*... ricordare il tuo nome. I am sure to remember your name.
essere sicuro di	to be certain of	Sono sicuro *di*... ricordare questo posto. I am sure to remember this place.
essere contento di	to be happy to	Sono conteno *di*... stare qui. I am happy to be here.
essere felice di	to be happy to	Sono felice *di*... incontrare mio cugino oggi. I am happy to meet my cousin today.
essere fortunato di	to be lucky to	Sono fortunato *di*... mangiare questa cena. I am so lucky to be eating this dinner.
essere libero di	to be free to	Sono libero *di*... viaggiare. I am free to travel.
essere stanco di	to be tired of	Sono stanco *di*... volare. I am tired of flying.

7(IE)13



Piazza Obelisco, Tagliacozzo
Abruzzo Region

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers – Counting 100-999

In order to count from 10 to 999 in Italian, just combine the numbers from 100 through 900 with the numbers from one to 99 that we have already learned. The method is the same as in English!

Counting by Hundreds	
100	cento
200	duecento
300	trecento
400	quattrocento
500	cinquecento
600	seicento
700	settecento
800	ottocento
900	novecento

Notice that the single word **cento** contains the meaning of the two English words – **one** and **hundred**. Therefore, it is not necessary to add **uno** to **cento** for 100, but **due** must be added to **cento** to make **200 (duecento), tre** for **300 (trecento),** and so on.

To make any number between 100 and 999, follow this simple procedure: first say the number in the 100's place (for 200 and above), then say **cento,** and then simply tack on the remaining numbers for the tens and ones places. No exceptions! The combined words can be long, but they follow an easy and regular pattern.

Below are some examples of the many combinations tha are needed in written form to represent numbers from 101 to 558. We still need to remember our rule for adding **uno** and **otto** after the tens place (take away the letters **–i** or **–a** from the stem from **venti** through **novanta**) as in the last two examples! Slashes are given here between the combined words to aid comprehension, but are not used in ordinary written form.

101	cento/uno	110	cento/dieci	119	cento/dicianove
201	due/cento/uno	220	due/cento/venti	229	due/cento/ventinove
301	tre/cento/uno	330	tre/cento/trenta	339	tre/cento/trenanove
401	quattro/cento/uno	441	quattro/cento/quarantuno		
501	cinque/cento/uno	558	cinque/cento/cinquantotto		

7(N)13



Tivoli

Villa D'Este Gardens

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 8 – Getting Ready
Dialogue

As we know from previous dialogues, Caterina, our visitor to Italy, has been staying with her cousin Pietro and his wife Francesca in Milan. Now it is time for all of them to visit Pietro's parents, Caterina's **Aunt Rose (zia Rosa)** and **Uncle Sal (zio Salvatore)**. In this dialogue, we listen in as Pietro's family gets ready for the visit.

Can you pick out all of the reflexive verbs in the dialogue? The reflexive verbs and their reflexive pronouns are both highlighted in **green,** and will be the focus of this chapter. This short dialogue presents the reflexive verbs in the present tense, present progressive tense (remember **stare + gerund** from Chapter 6?) and even the past tense (to be covered in more detail in Chapters 11 and 12). Notice how many verbs are reflexive in Italian but not in English! This will be indicated in the translation by parenthesis around the reflexive pronoun when it would not ordinarily be included in English.

Pietro:	Caterina, ti sei riposata bene? Kathy, have (you fam.) rested (yourself) well?
Caterina:	Si, si. Mi sono alzata tardi stamattina, e così mi sono riposata tutto il giorno. Yes, yes. (I) got (myself) up late this morning, and then (I) rested (myself) all day.
Pietro:	Perfetto. Perché stasera andiamo a trovare la mia mamma e il mio papà. Mamma sta preparando una bella cena. Perfect. Because this evening (we) go (are going) to visit my mom and dad. Mother is preparing a wonderful dinner.
Caterina:	Zia Rosa e zio Salvatore! I tuoi genitori sono molto gentili. Prima, mi lavo e poi mi metto un bel vestito. Aunt Rose and Uncle Sal! Your parents are very kind. First, (I) (will) wash myself and then (I) (will) put (on) (myself) a nice dress.

8(Vo)31

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 8 – Getting Ready
Dialogue (cont'd)

Pietro: Bene. Anche Francesa e Nonna si stanno preparando. Io sono già pronto, così mi siedo e aspetto.

Good. Also Francesca and Grandma are getting (themselves) ready. I am already ready, so (I) (will) sit (myself) down and wait.

(*Dopo un po' di tempo…*)
(*In a short time…*)

Pietro: Avete finito? Siete pronte?
Have (you all) finished? Are (you all) ready (feminine plural)?

Francesca: Si, si, io sono pronta, ma ho bisogno di lavare Michele.
È un bimbo sporco!

Yes, yes, I am ready (feminine singular), but (I) have to wash Michael.
(He) is a dirty baby!

Pietro: Va bene. Ma non voglio fare tardi. Normalmente, i miei genitori cenano alle sette di sera a casa.

OK. But (I) don't want to be late. Usually, my parents eat dinner at seven in the evening at home.

Francesca: Si, Pietro. Non preoccuparti! Stai calmo!
Yes, Peter. Don't worry (yourself)! Be calm!

Pietro: Sto calmo. Ma è tardi!
(I) am calm. But (it) is late!

Caterina: Eccomi! Io sono pronta.
Here I am! I am ready.

Pietro: Molto bene. Francesca, Michele, Nonna, andiamo!
Very good. Francesca, Michael, Grandma, let's go!

8(Vo)32

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Making Yourself Comfortable at Home

Here is a list of furniture and common items found in the home. It may be important to know these words in Italian, whether you are staying with family or at a hotel. As usual, the important verbs found in our dialogue, most of which are reflexive, have been included.

i mobili	furniture
il letto	bed
la culla	crib
il piumone	comforter
la coperta	blanket
il lenzuolo	sheet
le lenzuola*	pair ofsheets
i lenzuoli*	pile of sheets
il guanciale	pillow to sleep
il materasso	mattress
morbido(a)	soft
duro(a)	firm/hard
l'armadio	wardrobe/armoire
il cassettone	dresser
il cassetto	drawer
la lampada	lamp
la lampadina	light bulb
il tavolino	accent table/desk
l'orologio	clock
il tavolo	table/desk
la tavola	table set for dinner at home
biancheria da tavola	table linen
la sedia	chair
la poltrona	arm chair
il divano	couch
il cuscino	accent pillow
la tenda	curtain
il tappeto	rug/carpet
lo scaffale	bookcase
la televisione/la TV	television/TV
il canale	channel

la doccia	shower
la vasca (da bagno)	bathtub
il lavandino	sink
il rubinetto	faucet
il water/la toilette	toilet bowl
il bidèt	bidet
la carta igienica	toilet paper
l'acqua	water
il sapone	soap
la spugna	sponge
l'asciugamano	towel
lo specchio	mirror
la spazzola	hair brush
il pettine	comb
lo spazzolino	tooth brush
il dentifricio	toothpaste
alzarsi	to get up
aspettare	to wait for
cenare	to eat dinner
lavarsi	to wash (oneself)
preoccuparsi	to worry (onself)
prepararsi	to get (onself) ready
riposarsi	to rest (oneself)
sedersi	to sit (oneself)
	down

***Il lenzuolo** has two different plural forms, **le lenzuola** or **i lenzuoli**, depending on the meaning to be conveyed (see Appendix 1). 8(Vo)33



The Ponte Vecchio (Old Bridge), Florence

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Getting Ready

The following expressions are used in the morning when getting up and getting ready for the day. Some phrases are polite expressions we use to greet those living or staying with us, while others describe daily activities. Many of these phrases use the reflexive verbs that we will learn about in detail later in the verb sections of this and the next chapter. Italian phrases that use reflexive verbs often do not translate literally into English, since the English language uses reflexive verbs far less frequently than the Italian language. Also, as usual, the Italian phrases leave out the subject pronouns that are always included in English! Here, again, it becomes important to think in Italian!

Getting up in the morning:

Mi sveglio.	(I) wake up. (lit. I wake myself up.)
Mi alzo.	(I) get up. (lit. I get myself up.)
Mi alzo presto.	(I) get (myself) up early.
Mi alzo alle sei.	(I) get (myself) up at 6 AM.
Mi alzo tardi domani.	(I) (am going to) get (myself) up late tomorrow.
Chiamami alle nove, per favore.	Call me at 9 AM, please.
Lasciami stare, per favore!	Leave me alone (lit. Let me be), please!
Non preoccuparti!	Don't (you) worry (yourself)!
Mi alzo fra un paio d'ore.	(I) (will) get (myself) up in a couple of hours!
Mi alzo più tardi.	(I) get (myself) up a little later.
Il sabato mi alzo un po' più tardi.	On Saturdays, (I) get (myself) up a little later.
Buon giorno. Hai dormito bene?	Good morning. (Did) you sleep well? (lit. Have you slept well?)
Si, molto bene, grazie.	Yes, very well, thank you.
Si, ho dormito molto bene, grazie.	Yes, (I) slept very well, thank you.
Vuoi un caffè?	(Do) (you) want a (cup of) coffee?
Si, vorrei un caffé.	Yes, (I) would like a coffee.
Si, vorrei una tazza di caffè.	Yes, (I) would like a cup of coffee.
Si, vorrei del caffè.	Yes, (I) would like some coffee
Vuoi un tè?	Do (you) want some tea?
Si, vorrei un tè.	Yes, (I) would like a (cup of) tea.
No, vorrei un bicchiere di…	No, (I) would like a glass of…
…acqua.	…water.
…succo d'arancia.	…orange juice.
Vorrei un biscotto.	(I) would like a cookie. (usually with coffee)
Vorrei dei biscotti.	(I) would like some cookies. (usually with coffee)

8(IP)25

Important Phrases - Getting Ready (cont'd)

Getting ready to go out for the day:

Mi faccio il bagno.	(I) take a bath. (lit. I make myself the bath.)
Faccio una doccia.	(I) take a shower.
Faccio una doccia ogni mattina.	(I) take a shower every day.
Mi lavo.	(I) wash myself.
Mi asciugo.	(I) dry myself off.
Mi pettino.	(I) comb (myself) my hair.
Mi preparo per il lavoro.	(I) get (myself) ready for (the) work.
Mi vesto.	(I) get (myself) dressed.
Mi metto i vestiti.	(I) put on (myself) the clothes.
Mi trucco.	(I) put on my makeup.
Mi metto la giacca e le scarpe.	(I) put on (myself) the jacket and the shoes.
Mi sento molto bene!	(I) feel very well!
Vado al lavoro./Vado a lavorare.	(I) go to work.

At the end of the day:

Torno a casa.	(I) return home.
Mi tolgo la giacca.	(I) take off (myself) the jacket.
Preparo la cena per la famiglia.	(I) make the dinner for the family.
Alle nove, mi spoglio.	At nine, (I) get (myself) undressed.
Mi tolgo le scarpe.	(I) take off my shoes.
Mi metto il piajama e le ciabatte.	(I) put on (myself) the pajamas and slippers.
Mi siedo.	(I) sit (myself) down.
Mi rilasso.	(I) relax (myself).
Alle dieci e mezzo, ho sonno.	At ten thirty, (I) am sleepy. (lit. I have sleepiness)
Dico a mia figlia, "A nanna! Buona notte!	(I) say to my daughter, "It's night-night! (slang, used with children) Good night!"
Mi riposo.	(I) rest (myself).
Mi addormento.	(I) fall (myself) asleep.

8(IP)26

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Renting a Place in Italy

Planning to stay awhile in Italy? Interested in renting a place? There are many websites that will help you to do this. Here is some vocabulary to help you out as well.

in affitto	for rent
richieste di affitto	rental requests
casa in affitto	home for rent
affitti abitatvi	places for rent
affitti case vacanze	vacation homes for rent
affitti commerciali	commercial for rent
in vendita	for sale
di nuova construzione	new construction
ristrutturato	restored
posizione eccellente	excellent location
appartamento prestigioso	luxury appartment
ingresso indipendente	separate entrance
ingresso a piano terreno	ground floor apartment entrance
al piano terreno	on the ground floor/first floor
al primo piano	on the second floor (first floor above ground floor)
con ascensore	with elevator
molto luminoso	very bright/sunny
posti letto	how many beds/sleeps how many
camera matrimoniale	bedroom for two
camera singola	bedroom for one
letto matrimoniale	double bed
composta da	made up of/includes
riscaldamento autonomo	independent heating
climatizzato	air conditioning
ripostiglio	utility room
lavanderia	laundry room
servizio	toilet facilities
interamente arredato	fully furnished
non arredato	not furnished*
vuoto(a)	empty
solo referenziati	only referenced persons (need apply)
il prezzo è	the price is
comprensivo di spese	inclusive of expenses

*In Italy, the phrase **"non arredato"** usually means no kitchen cabinets, appliances, or bathroom fixtures.

8(IP)27

Cultural Note - Renting a Place in Italy (cont'd)

Here is a typical ad with its translation found on a random internet search. Of course, if you use Google to search, there is a tool which will automatically translate these ads into rough English if you want help while you are learning Italian! Notice the change in price for the same accommodations around holiday time...

Appartamento in villa, in esclusiva e tranquilla località turistica a 25 minuti da Aosta. 4 posti letto (di cui 2 in divano letto). Arredamento tipico, decori e tessuti alpini. Pavimenti in parquet e soffitti a volta in pietra e legno. Il prezzo si intende comprensivo di spese (elettricità, riscaldamento, acqua) e biancheria da letto, cucina e bagno. Riscaldamento autonomo.

Apartment in villa, in an exclusive and tranquil tourist resort 25 minutes from Aosta. 4 beds (2 in a sofa-bed). Typical alpine decorations and furniture fabrics. Wood floors and ceilings in vaulted stone and wood. The price is inclusive of expenses (electricity, heating, water) and bed linens, kitchen and bathroom. Independent heating.

Servizi offerti
Speciale familglie con bimbi piccoli; a disposizione su richiesta all'atto della prenotazione culla (0-12 mesi), lettino (1-5 anni) e materiale vario per ospitare i bimbi più piccoli.

Services offered
Special for families with small children; available on request when booking is a crib (0-12 months), cot (1-5 years) and various materials to accommodate smaller children.

Prezzi
Min 450 euro a settimana
Max 750 euro a settimana nel periodo di Natale e Capodanno

Prices
Min 450 euros per week
Max 750 euros per week around Christmas and New Year's

Informazioni e prenotazioni
Dove siamo - autostrada Torino - Aosta Monte Bianco, Uscita Aosta Ovest
Seguire le indicazioni per Vetan

Information and reservations
Where we are - autostrada Torino - Aosta Monte Bianco, Exit Aosta West
Follow the signs for Vetan

8(IP)28

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Cognates
Adjectives Ending in –ale, -ico, -etto, -atto

Here are more examples of cognates – words that have a common origin and a similar meaning in both Italian and English. Recognizing these words should greatly increase one's vocabulary with very little effort!

The ending **–ale** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–al** in English.

originale	=	original
personale	=	personal
speciale	=	special
tradizionale	=	traditional

The ending **–ico** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–ical** in English.

classico	=	classical
fisiologico	=	physiological
politico	=	political
tecnico	=	technical
tipico	=	typical
turistico	=	touristy

The ending **–etto** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–ect** in English.

corretto	=	correct
dialetto	=	dialect
diretto	=	direct
perfetto	=	perfect

The ending **–atto** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–act** in English.

contatto	=	contact (to touch)/to know someone (in a business)
contratto	=	contract
fatto	=	fact
tratto	=	tract of land/pamphlet
tratto digestivo	=	digestive tract

8(G)27

Grammar Note - Adverbs of Manner

The adverbs of manner describe how something happens. They can be easily formed from Italian adjectives we already know by adding the ending **–mente,** which corresponds to the English **–ly** ending. There are, of course, certain rules for this procedure, which are given below, along with examples of some common adverbs.

Notice the many ways there are to say **usually** given in these examples! Use **"Di solito…"** to start a sentence that describes something that you **frequently** do. Use **"Normalmente…" (normally)** to start a sentence describing something that you almost always or habitually do. The word **solitamente** is another commonly used adverb that means **usually**. Remember that adverbs *follow* the verb, as they do in English.

For adjectives that end in an **–o,** change this ending to an **–a** and then add **–mente.**

corretto	correct	goes to	correctly	correttamente
perfetto	perfect	goes to	perfectly	perfettamente
raro	rare	goes to	rarely	raramente
solito	usual (frequent)	goes to	usually (frequently)	solitamente (Di solito…)
vero	true	goes to	truly	veramente

For adjectives that end in **–le** or **–re,** drop the **–e** and then add **–mente.**

facile	easy	goes to	easily	facilmente
normale	normal (usual)	goes to	normally (usually/habitually)	normalmente (Normalmente…)
originale	original	goes to	originally	originalmente
probabile	probable	goes to	probably	probalmente
particolare	particular	goes to	particularly	particolarmente
regolare abituale	regular	goes to	regulary habitually	regolarmente abitualmente
speciale	special	goes to	specially	specialmente

Otherwise, adjectives ending in an **–e** retain the **–e** and simply add **–mente.**

breve	brief	goes to	briefly	brevemente
frequente	frequent	goes to	frequently	frequentemente
paziente	patient	goes to	patiently	pazientemente
veloce	quick	goes to	quickly	velocemente

8(G)28

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Direct Reflexive Verbs

Direct reflexive verbs are recognized by the **–si** ending of the infinitive form. We were introduced to a direct reflexive verb of the **–are** type in the very first chapter, when we learned how to conjugate **chiamarsi**. There are also reflexive verbs of the **–ere** and **–ire** types as well, such as **vedersi** and **divertirsi**. You may also remember that all reflexive verbs must take a reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself, himself, etc.), which corresponds to and refers directly back to the subject.

The reflexive pronouns are:
mi – myself, ti – yourself (fam.), si – yourself (pol.), herself, himself, itself
ci – ourselves, vi – yourselves (fam.), si – yourselves (pol.)/themselves

To start conjugating a reflexive verb, first put each reflexive pronoun after the subject pronoun that it must refer back to:

Reflexive Pronouns			
io	mi	I	myself
tu	ti	you (familiar)	yourself
Lei lei/lui	si	you (polite) she/he	yourself herself, himself
noi	ci	we	ourselves
voi	vi	you all	yourselves
loro	si	they	themselves

All we need to do now is to add our verb for some action! Notice that the English translation adds the reflexive pronoun after the verb, while in Italian the reflexive pronoun (almost) always comes *before* the verb, so this may take a little getting used to…

Divertirsi – to enjoy onself/to have a good time			
io	mi	diverto	I enjoy myself
tu	ti	diverti	you (familiar) enjoy yourself
Lei lei/lui	si	diverte	you (polite) enjoy yourself she/he enjoys herself, himself
noi	ci	divertiamo	we enjoy ourselves
voi	vi	divertite	you all enjoy yourselves
loro	si	divertono	they enjoy themselves

8(V)43

Present Tense - More Direct Reflexive Verbs

Here is a list of regular direct reflexive verbs that includes all three conjugations. Reflexive forms are extremely important for conversation, since they often involve activities and emotions that we encounter every day. Note that many of these verbs are not reflexive in English. Practice the different conjugations for each verb in order to get used to how the words sound with their different endings; as usual, focus on the **io**, **tu** and **noi** forms.

accomodarsi	to make onself comfortable	pettinarsi	to comb one's hair
accorgersi	to realize	preoccuparsi	to worry
addormentarsi	to fall asleep	rilassarsi	to relax oneself
alzarsi	to get up	riposarsi	to rest
annoiarsi	to be/become bored	sbagliarsi	to be wrong
arrabbiarsi	to become angry	sbrigarsi	to hurry up
asciugarsi	to dry oneself	scusarsi	to excuse one self
bagnarsi	to get wet/to take a bath	spogliarsi	to get undressed
dirigersi	to go over to/head over	svegliarsi	to wake up
divertirsi a	to play with	svestirsi	to take off
fermarsi	to stop oneself	togliersi	to take off
innamorarsi	to fall in love	truccarsi	to put on make-up
muoversi	to move onself	vergognarsi	to be ashamed
		vestirsi	to get dressed/to wear

Present Tense - Direct Reflexive Verbs
Irregular Verb **Sedersi**

Sedersi is a second conjugation irregular reflexive verb due to its **-ere** ending and irregular root in all but the **noi** and **voi** forms. This is a very important verb to commit to memory if you want to make sure that you or your guests are comfortable! Notice from the translation that the equivalent verb in English is not reflexive.

Sedersi – to sit down		
io	mi siedo	I sit down
tu	ti siedi	you (familiar) sit down
Lei lei/lui	si siede	you (polite) sit down she/he sits downs
noi	ci sediamo	we sit down
voi	vi sedete	you all sit down
loro	si siedono	they sit down

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Direct Reflexive Verbs
Verbs That Have Both Reflexive and Non-Reflexive Forms

Many Italian verbs have both regular and reflexive forms. If the action is directed back toward the speaker, use the reflexive form. For the verbs **ricordare** and **ricordarsi,** in most situations either form may be used. When speaking of something one needs to remember to do, use **ricordare di,** as we learned in the last chapter, or **ricordarsi di.**

Note also that the meaning of a verb may change with use of its reflexive form. **Chiamare,** for instance, means **to call someone,** as in to make a call on the telephone or to call out to someone. But **chiamarsi** means **to call oneself by name. Sentire** means **to hear,** but **sentirsi** has the very different meaning of **to feel.** And, incidentally, speaking of our senses, to use the sense of **smell** is **sentire odore.**

aspettare	to wait/wait for	aspettarsi	to expect/anticipate
chiamare	to call	chiamarsi	to call onself/to name
fermare	to stop an object	fermarsi	to stop oneself
incontrare	to meet by chance	incontrarsi	planned meeting
informare	to inform/to educate	informarsi di/su	to ask/to inquire
lavare	to wash	lavarsi	to wash oneself
mettere	to put/place	mettersi	to put on clothing
occupare	to be occupied	occuparsi *di*	to work at a job or a task
essere occupato *con…*	to be busy with (something)		
preparare	to get something ready	prepararsi	to get oneself ready
provare	to try/practice/rehearse	provarsi	to try on clothes
ricordare*	to remember	ricordarsi	to remember something
ricordare *di*	to remember to do…	ricordarsi *di*	to remember to do…
sentire	to hear	sentirsi	to feel
sentire odore	to smell		
spostare	to move	spostarsi	to move oneself

***Incidentally, Romagnol dialect (from the Emiliano-Romangnolo region) for **"I remember,"** is **"amarcord,"** which is also the name of a famous Italian comedic film from the 1970's by the director Federico Fellini.

8(V)45

Present Tense - Direct Reflexive Verbs
Verbs that Have Both Reflexive and Non-Reflexive Forms (cont'd)

Here are some example sentences that use the regular verbs listed on the previous page in the first column and the reflexive forms of the same verbs in the second column. The Italian subject pronouns **io** and **tu** are included in the Italian sentences, although, unlike in English, Italian subject pronouns are almost always omitted with reflexive verbs (as they are in most general conversation). Parenthesis have been used in the Italian sentences as a reminder of this fact. In the same way, parentheses are used in the English translation to indicate Italian reflexive pronouns that are not necessary in English.

Io chiamo mia zia Maria al telefono. I call my aunt Maria on the telephone.	(Io) Mi chiamo Caterina. I name (call) myself Kathy.
Io sento le compane della chiesa. I hear the church bells.	(Io) Mi sento bene. I feel (myself) well.
Io lavo l'automobile. I wash the car.	(Io) Mi lavo ogni mattina. I wash myself every morning.
Io metto i piatti sul tavolo. I put the plates on the table.	(Io) Mi metto il vestito. I put on (myself) the dress.
Io preparo la cena. I prepare (make) the dinner.	(Io) Mi preparo per uscire. I get (myself) ready to go out.
La famiglia occupa un posto importante. The family occupies an important place.	(Io) Mi occupo di fare la cena. I am taking care of making the dinner.
Prova gli spaghetti! Try the spaghetti!	(Io) Mi provo questo vestito. I try on (myself) this dress.
Ricorda di comprare il vino per stasera! Remember to buy the wine for tonight!	(Tu) Ricordati di comprare il vino per stasera! Remind yourself to buy the wine for tonight!
Io sposto la mia macchina dall'altra parte della strada. I move my car across the street.	(Io) Mi sposto facilmente. I move myself easily.
Io informo gli student sull'esame. I inform the students about the test.	(Io) Mi informo sul viaggio a Milano. I inquire (for myself) about traveling to Milan.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Reciprocal Reflexive Verbs

Reciprocal reflexive verbs are used in the special situation when two people perform the same action together; this will make *both people the subject* of the action. Therefore, the reciprocal reflexive verbs are only conjugated in their plural form, using the plural subject and reflexive pronouns: **(noi) ci, (voi) vi,** or **(loro) si.** For conversation, the **noi** and **loro** forms will be the most important to remember. To express this type of situation in English we simply add the phrase **"each other,"** after the verb.

Here is how this verb form works; for instance, way back in Chapter 1, we learned, **"Ci vediamo,"** for, **"We (will) see each other."** So, if the speaker is involved in the action with someone else – *we* are doing the action – use the **noi** verb conjugation and put **ci** in front of the verb. Also, in Chapter 7, we find the line, **"Si abbracciano e si baciano."** The translation says, **"They hug and kiss each other."** If two people are being talked about – *they* are doing the action – use the **loro** verb conjugation and put **si** in front of the verb. As we know, the subject pronouns are almost always omitted in conversation, and this applies to reciprocal reflexive verbs as well – hence the parenthesis in the examples that follow!

Io e Francesca ci vogliamo bene.	Frances and I care for each other very much.
(Noi) Ci sposiamo oggi.	We (will) marry each other today.
(Noi) Ci scriviamo ogni giorno.	We write each other every day.
(Noi) Ci vediamo al teatro.	We (will) see each other at the theater.
(Noi) Ci vogliamo bene.	We love each other very much.
Caterina e Zia Rosa si salutano.	Kathy and Aunt Rose greet each other.
Michele e Francesca si volgiono bene.	Michael and Frances care for each other very much.
(Loro) si vogliono bene.	(They) care for each other very much.
(Loro) Si incontrano.	They meet each other.
(Loro) Si telefonano ogni giorno.	They telephone each other every day.

Listed below are verbs that commonly use the reciprocal reflexive form:

abbracciarsi	to hug each other	odiarsi	to hate each other
aiutarsi	to help each other	parlarsi	to speak to each other
amarsi	to love each other	salutarsi	to greet each other
baciarsi	to kiss each other	scriversi	to write each other
chiamarsi	to call each other	sposarsi	to marry each other
conoscersi	to get to know each other	telefonarsi	to call each other
fidanzarsi	to become engaged	trovarsi	to meet each other
guardarsi	to look at each other	vedersi	to see each other
incontrarsi	to meet each other (planned meeting)		

8(V)47

Grammar Point - Infinitive Reflexive Verbs and Reflexive Pronouns

By now, it may seem that we know everything we would ever want to know about reflexive verbs! But, there is one more rule that needs to be mentioned. When we use an infinitive reflexive verb in a sentence, the reflexive pronoun must come *after* the verb; the **–si** is dropped from the infinitive ending and the reflexive pronoun is then added *directly onto the stem* at the end of the verb. This is the same word order that we routinely use in English! This situation usually occurs in Italian when one of the helping verbs **(dovere, potere,** or **volere)** **(to have to, to be able to,** or **to want)** precedes a reflexive verb.

For our first example below, **divertirsi,** we first drop the **–si** ending to make the stem **divertir**. Then, we tack the reflexive pronoun **mi** to the end of the stem get our final reflexive verb, **divertirmi**. Complete the sentence with the helping verb **voglio,** in order to say, **"Voglio divertirmi,"** which means, **"I want to enjoy myself."** Two additional examples are given below where the reflexive form must be used in Italian, although this is not the case for English (as denoted by the parentheses in the translation).

Voglio divertirmi.	(I) want to enjoy myself.
Volgio riposarmi.	(I) want to rest (myself).
Devo alzarmi.	(I) must get (myself) up.

Grammar Point - Using **Si** to Make Impersonal Statements

We rarely make generalizations in the third person in modern American English – called impersonal statements – but they are common in Italian. In Italian, these phrases are formed by using the reflexive pronoun **si,** along with the corresponding verb in the singular or plural third person (either the **lei/lui** or the **loro** form). **Si** refers to either a single person **(one),** or a group of people **(they)** that the speaker wants to make a generalization about. You may want to remember the first example when asking for help with your Italian!

Come si dice…?	How (does) one say…?
In Italia, si parla italiano.	In Italy, one speaks Italian/Italian is spoken.
In America, si parlano molte lingue.	In America, they speak many languages/ many languages are spoken.

8(V)48

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 8

Infinitive Present	Reflexive Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	mi	o	o	o	isco
tu	ti	i	i	i	isci
Lei/lei/lui	si	a	e	e	isce
noi	ci	iamo	iamo	iamo	iamo
voi	vi	ate	ete	ite	ite
loro	si	ano	ono	ono	iscono

Infinitive Imperative	Direct Object Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	**			*	****
tu	**	*	*	*	****
Lei/lei/lui	**	*	*	*	****
noi	**	****	****	****	****
voi	**	***	***	***	***
loro	**	***	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Essere Imperative	Avere (to have)	Avere Imperative
io	sono		ho	
tu	sei	****	hai	***
Lei/lei/lui	è	***	ha	***
noi	siamo	******	abbiamo	*****
voi	siete	*******	avete	*****
loro	sono	****	hanno	****

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 8 (cont'd)

Irregular Verbs	Sedersi (to sit down)	Dare (*******)	Fare (**********)
io	mi siedo	**	******
tu	ti siedi	***	***
Lei/lei/lui	si siede	**	**
noi	ci sediamo	*****	********
voi	vi sedete	****	****
loro	si siedono	****	*****

Irregular Imperative Verbs	Direct Object Pronouns	Andare (*****)	Dare (*******)	Dire (******)	Fare (***** *******)	Stare (*** *******)
io	**			*		
tu	**	******	******	**	***	****
Lei/lei/lui	**	***	***	***	***	***
noi	**	*******	*****	*****	********	******
voi	**	******	****	****	****	*****
loro	**	****	****	****	****	****

Irregular Verbs	Indirect Object Pronouns	Piacere (**********)
io	**	
tu	**	*
Lei/lei/lui	*********	*
noi	**	****
voi	**	***
loro	***	***

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - Trovare

Trovare means **to find *something***. When combined with the verb **andare** in the phrase **"andare a trovare,"** the meaning changes to **"to go to visit"** *someone*, as we have seen from the dialogue in this chapter. Pietro says, **"andiamo a trovare la mia mamma e il mio papà,"** for **"we go (are going) to visit my mother and my father."** If Pietro's mother was talking to his father about their son Pietro and his family coming to visit them, she would use a phrase with the verb **venire** and a similar construction: **"vengono a trovarci,"** which means, **"they are coming to visit us."**

Trovare can also mean **"to meet by chance,"** or **"to run into"** someone, as we would say in English. **Trovare** sometimes means **"to think/consider"** and is also used to mean **"to notice"** in some expressions. **Trovarsi** is a reflexive verb that is used to describe **"finding oneself"** in certain situations or in a certain place.

andare a trovare	to go to visit with/to look in on/to look up
venire a trovare	to come to visit with
cercare di trovare	to try to find
trovare per caso	to happen on/to happen upon/to come across
torvare i mezzi	to find means
trovare conforto	to take comfort
trovare informazioni su	to find information (something) on
trovare la propria strada	to make your way/to take the right road
trovare la risposta	to find the answer
trovare la soluzione	to find the solution
trovare il tempo per fare	to get around to doing something
trovare il giusto equilibrio	to strike a balance
trovare (qualcosa) divertente	to find (something) amusing
trovare qualcosa	to consider something
trovare un modo	to find a way
Dove si trova?	Where is she/he/it located?
Si trova in…	(He/she/it) is located in…
Non mi trovo bene con…	I don't get on well with…
Troviamoci dopo cena.	Let's meet (each other) after dinner. 8(IE)15



Piazza della Signoria in the Heat, Florence

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Counting 1,000 - 1,000,000,000

There was a time, not too long ago, when, **1,000 lira** was equivalent to about **$1.00 US** and every purchase required advanced knowledge of arithmetic in Italian! Now that Italians use the **euro** as their unit of currency instead of the **lira,** it is not as important for visitors to know how to say Italian numbers greater than 1,000. When the conversion from the **lira** to the **euro** finally took place, the number of millionaires in Italy dropped dramatically overnight, and even Italians now have less use for these larger numbers! For those of you who must learn Italian to close out a million dollar deal, however, here are the numbers you will need to know, up to one billion.

1,000	mille
2,000	due/mila
3,000	tre/mila
4,000	quattro/mila
5,000	cinque/mila
6,000	sei/mila
7,000	sette/mila
8,000	otto/mila
9,000	nove/mila
10,000	dieci/mila
20,000	venti/mila

Note that the plural of **mille** is **mila,** but only when attached to a number; the word **mila** is never used by itself in a sentence! **Mille** is otherwise masculine and invariable **(il mille** or **i mille)**.

Also, the indefinite article **un** is omitted when the number referred to is hundreds or thousands, as in, **"Le pitture costano cento dollari o mille lire."** If you want to say **"about a thousand"**, use **un migliàio** to refer to a masculine things or **una migliàia** for the feminine. The plural for this, **thousands,** is **migliàio** or **migliàia,** without the definite article.

etc….to

100,000	cento/mila
200,000	due/cento/mila

etc…to

1,000,000	un milione
2,000,000	due milioni

When **millione(i)** and **milardo(i)** are followed by a noun, they take the preposition **di,** as in: **"Ci sono due milioni di automobili a Milano,"** meaning, **"There are 2 million cars in Milan."**

etc…to

1,000,000,000	un miliardo
2,000,000,000	due miliardi

8(N)15



Rome

The Spanish Steps

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life

Chapter 9 – It's a Party!

Dialogue

Caterina is enjoying life in Milan with her cousin Pietro and his family. In this dialogue, Caterina attends a party with Pietro and Francesca, where Caterina has a familiar conversation with Pietro's friends and a polite conversation with the hostess of the party. Watch for the idiomatic expression used to make the transition from a polite into a familiar conversation, **"Diamoci del tu,"** which loosely translated means, **"Let's use the familiar form of you with each other."**

Many of the initial "meeting and greeting" phrases we learned in Chapter 1 will be revisited in this dialogue. The verb **conoscere (to know a person)** will also come in handy for additional "getting to know you" phrases that are frequently used. The verb **piacere (to like/to be pleasing to),** and additional phrases used to make "small talk," will also come up as we start to put together all the bits and pieces of Italian we have been learning in order to have more realistic and interactive conversations!

Have fun looking up the Italian for the many professions listed in the vocabulary section; see if you can find your own line of work, so you will be ready to reply when asked!

Pietro: Caterina, ti presento il mio amico Paolo.
Kathy, (I) introduce to you (fam.) my friend Paul.

Caterina: Piacere di conoscerla.
(It is a) pleasure to meet you (fam.). *(Caterina uses the polite form for a person she has just met, even though Paolo is Pietro's friend.)*

Pietro: E questo è il mio amico Luigi.
And this is my friend Louis.

Caterina: Piacere.
(It is) a pleasure.

Luigi: Piacere mio. Io sono professore di Italiano, come Pietro. Paolo è un medico.

(The) pleasure is mine. I am (an) Italian professor, like Peter. Paul is a physician.

Caterina: Molto interessante.
Very interesting. 9(Vo)35

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 9 – It's a Party!
Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Paolo: Lei è la cugina americana di cui Pietro parla sempre?
You (pol.) are the American cousin of whom Peter always speaks? *(Paolo uses the polite form in his first interaction with a person he does not know.)*

Caterina: Si, si. Sono americana, di Chicago. Lei è di qui?
Yes, yes. (I) am American, from Chicago. (Are) you (pol.) from here? *(Caterina continues in the polite form.)*

Paolo: Io sono di Novara, una città vicino a Milano. Diamoci del tu, per favore!

I am from Novara, a town near to Milan. Let's use the familiar form of you with each other, please! *(Paolo officially asks if he can use the familiar, or "tu" form with Caterina.)*

Caterina: Va bene.
O.K.

Caterina: E tu, Luigi, di dove sei?
And you, Luigi, where are you (fam.) from?

Luigi: Io sono di Milano.
I am from Milan.

Pietro: E dov'è il nostro amico, l'ingegnere?
And where is our friend, the engineer?

Paolo: L'ingegnere Rossi non è alla festa stasera. Troppo lavoro.
Caterina, che lavoro fai?
(The) engineer Rossi is not at the party tonight. Too much work.
Kathy, what work (do) you (fam.) do?

Caterina: Io sono agente immobiliare.
I am (a) real estate agent.

Paolo: Perfetto! Io ho bisogno di un appartamento in America!
Perfect! I need a condominium in America!

9(Vo)36

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 9 – It's a Party!
Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Caterina: Ecco il mio biglietto da visita. Mi chiami domani e ne parliamo!
Here is my business card. Call me tomorrow and let's talk about it!

(Entrano Francesca e Lucia, la padrona di casa.)
(Enter Frances and Lucy, the hostess.)
Francesca: Caterina, posso presentarti Lucia, l'ospite della festa.
Kathy, may (I) introduce to you (fam.) Lucia, the hostess of the party.

Caterina: Molto lieta! È una bella festa. Mi sto proprio divertendo!
Delighted to meet you (pol.)! (It) is a wonderful party.
(I) am really enjoying myself! *(Caterina uses the polite form with the hostess, whom she has just met.)*

Lucia: Grazie. Lei parla italiano molto bene! Capisce, anche, molto bene?
Thank you. You (pol.) speak Italian very well!
(Do) you (pol.) also understand very well? *(The dialogue continues in the polite form, as both seem to feel this is appropriate.)*

Caterina: Abbastanza bene. Specialmente quando si parla lentamente!
Pretty well. Especially when one speaks slowly!
(Tutti ridono.)
(Everybody laughs.)

Lucia: Di che cosa si occupa? Anche lei è professoressa come suo cugino Pietro?
What work (do) you (pol.) do? (Are) you (pol.) also (a) professor, like your cousin Peter?

Caterina: No, mi occupo di vendita di immobili. Faccio l'agente immobiliare.
No, (I) am busy selling property. (I) work as (a) real estate agent.

Lucia: Brava! Lei è una ragazza molto bella.
E ora, devo salutare la mia amica Anna. Arrevederci!
Great! You are a very nice girl.
And now, (I) must greet my friend Anna. Good bye!

Caterina: Arrivederci! È stato un piacere averla conosciuta.
Good-bye! (It) was a pleasure (to have) made your (pol.) acquaintance.

9(Vo)37

Vocabulary – Hosts and their Guests

Several Italian words are commonly used to refer to hosts and their guests that sound very much like their English counterparts. But, beware! Despite similar pronunciation, the meaning of these words in Italian is different from the English definition. Here are short but important explanations to clarify these issues.

Let's start with an Italian word we already know: **l'hostess.** In Chapter 1, we learned that this word means **stewardess** and that a man working the same job is referred to as **lo steward.**

The word **l'hostess** does not have any other meaning in Italian, other than **stewardess.** So, other Italian words must be substituted for the English word **hostess** (a woman who has invited others to a gathering or party or to stay in her home).

L'ospite can be used to refer to **the hostess** of a party in Italy. However, **l'ospite** is also commonly used to refer to **the guest!**

Several common phrases can be used to clarify the situation...

For a **hostess** or **host** who has invited people into their home, the titles **"la padrona di casa"** or **"il padrone di casa"** are used.

For a party given outside the home, you can use the phrase, **"la persona che invita"** to refer to *both* a **female** or **male host.** It should be noted here that, although **persona** is a feminine word in Italian, it refers to all human beings, male and female; the plural would be **le persone,** of course! To refer to an **organizer/coordinator** of an event or party, use, **"l'organizzatore/l'organizzatrice della festa."**

l'ospite	host, hostess or guest
la padrona di casa	hostess (at her home)
il padrone di casa	host (at his home)
la persona che invita	host or hostess (for event or party outside the home)
l'organizzatore	host/organizer/coordinator (for event or party outside the home)
l'organizzatrice	hostess/organizer/coordinator (for event or party outside the home)

la festa/le feste	holiday(s), celebration(s), party(ies)
la festa di compleanno	birthday party
la festivà	religious holiday
fare una festa	to have a party
festeggiare	to celebrate or have a celebration/to observe a holiday
fare festa	to celebrate/to party

9(Vo)38

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Meeting and Greeting at a Gathering

Here are some common expressions that can be used to "break the ice" at a gathering, some simple replies to keep a conversation going, and a few polite phrases of thanks for when it comes time to depart. These are good phrases to commit to memory, as they can be used in many different situations. And, don't worry; most of the verb forms should actually make sense after you complete this chapter!

Benvenuto!(a)(i,e)	Welcome! (to a male) (to a female) (to a group of males, or males + females, to females only)
Entra!	Come in! (fam. command)
Si accomodi./Accomodati!	Make yourself (pol.) comfortable./(fam. command)
Da questa parte, prego.	This way, please.
Si sieda./Siediti!	Sit down. (pol. command)/Sit down! (fam. command)
Piacere di conoscerla/conoscerti.	Pleased to meet you (pol.)/(fam.).
Piacere mio.	The pleasure is mine.
Lieto(a) di conoscerla/conoscerti.	Delighted (masc./fem. speaker) to meet you (pol.)/(fam.).
Molto lieto(a)!	Delighted! (masc./fem. speaker)
Sono molto contento(a) di vederla/ti.	(I) am very happy(masc./fem.) to see you (pol.)/(fam.).
Sono felice di reverderla/ti.	(I) am happy to see you (pol.)/(fam.) again.
Si ricorda di me?	(Do) you (pol.) remember me?
È di questa zona?	Are you (pol.) from around here?
Sei di queste parti?	Are you (fam.) from around here?
Di che cosa si occupa?	What do you (pol.) do (as a job)?
Mi occupo di affari.	I'm in business. (work in a company)
Che lavoro fa/fai?	What work do you (pol.)/(fam.) do?
Sono in affari.	(I) am in business.
Sono studente/studentessa.	(I) am a student (masc./fem speaker).
Non mi dica!	You (pol.) don't say! (lit. You are not telling me!)
Sono contento(a) per Lei/te.	(I) am happy (masc./fem. speaker) for you (pol.)/(fam.).
Mi piace tanto!	I love it!/ I like it a lot! (lit. It is very pleasing to me!)
Mi piace un sacco.	I love it! (idiomtatic) (lit. It is pleasing to me a sac full.)
Devo andare via ora.	(I) must leave now.
È stato un piacere.	(It) has been a pleasure.
È stato divertente.	(It) has been enjoyable/fun/a blast/amusing/funny.
Ti sei divertito(a)?	(Did) you (fam.) enjoy yourself (masc./fem.)?
Mi sono proprio divertito(a).	I really enjoyed myself (masc./fem. speaker). (I had a great time.)
Grazie di tutto.	Thank you for everything.
Grazie per la Sua/la tua ospitalità.	Thank you for your (pol.)/(fam.) hospitality.
Grazie per una bella serata.	Thank you for a nice/beautiful evening.
La/Ti ringrazio.	(I) thank you (pol.)/(fam.).

9(IP)29

Cultural Note - The Trades and Professions in Italian

Here is a long list of trades and professions. Can you find yourself here? Or are you **lavoro in proprio, self-employed, fra un lavoro e l'altro, between jobs, disoccupato(a), unemployed** at the moment, or, perhaps, **in pensione (retired)?**

Le arti – The arts

l'artista	artist
il pittore	painter(m)
la pittrice	painter(f)
il grafico pubbicitario	graphic artist
il fotografo	photographer(m)
la fotografa	photographer(f)
il produttore	producer
il/la regista	director
l'attore	actor
l'attrice	actress
il modello	fashion model(m)
la modella	fashion model(f)
il truccatore	make-up artist
il/la cantante	singer
il cantante jazz	jazz singer
il cantante rock	rock singer
l'artista pop	pop artist
il/la muscicista	muscian
il/la jazzista	jazz musician
la ballerina	dancer(f)
il ballerino	dancer(m)
la ballerina classica	ballet dancer(f)
il ballerino di tip tap	tap dancer(m)
il maestro	teacher of arts(m)
la maestra	teacher of arts(f)
il direttore d'orchestra	conductor
il tecnico del fonico	sound tech

Gli affari – Business

l'agente immobiliare	real estate agent
l'agente di viaggio	travel agent
l'assicuratore	insurance salesman
l'assicuratrice	insurance sales(f)
il consulente gestionale/professionalista:	management/professional consultant

Gli affari – Business (con't)

l'uomo d'affari	businessman
la donna d'affari	businesswoman
in commercio	in retail
il capo	the boss
l'operaio	factory worker(m)
l'operaia	factory worker(f)
specializzato(a)	skilled (worker)
l'apprendista	apprentice
l'impiegato	clerk(m)
l'impiegata	clerk(f)
il/la dipendente	employee
l'assistente	assistant
il segretario	secretary(m)
la segretaria	secretary(f)
il/la ragionere	bookkeeper
l'agente	agent/broker
il/la contabile	accountant
il/la collega	co-worker
il collaboratore a progetto	freelancer
il rappresentante	representative/sales
il venditore	salesman
la venditrice	saleswoman
l'agente di cambio	stock broker
il ragioniere abilitato	CPA Accountant
la receptionist	receptionist
il supervisore	supervisor
il commesso	shop and bank clerk(m)
la commessa	shop and bank clerk(f)
il banchiere	banker(m)
la banchiera	banker(f)
il cassiere	cashier(m)
la cassiera	cashier(f)
l'amministratore	manager(m)
l'amministratrice	manager(f)
il direttore	director (m)
la direttrice	director (f)

9(IP)30

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - The Trades and Professions in Italian (cont'd - 2)

L'insegnamento – Teaching

l'insegnante	teacher
abilitazione	certified
l'aiutante didattico	teacher's aid
il professore	professor(m)
la professoressa	professor(f)
lo studente	student(m)
la studentessa	student(f)
lo scrittore	writer(m)
la scrittrice	writer(f)
l'autore	author(m)
l'autrice	author(f)
l'interprete	interpreter(m)
il/la giornalista	journalist
l'autore technico	technical writer
il traduttore	translator(m)
la traduttrice	translator(f)

Gli operai di casa – Home workers

la casalinga	housewife
il casalingo	househusband
la domestica	maid
la donna delle pulizie	cleaning lady
il giardiniere	gardener
il maggiordomo	butler
l'autista	driver/chauffer
il tuttofare	handyman
il/la baby sitter	baby sitter
la badante di bambini	nanny

La Chiesa – The Catholic Church

il prete	priest
il parroco	parish priest
l'alto prelato	high priest
il cardinale	cardinal
il papa	pope
la suora	nun

Le professioni – The professions

il/la professionista	professional
l'ingenere	engineer
l'avvocato*	lawyer(m/f)*
il dottore	doctor(m)
la dottoressa	doctor(f)/physician(f)
il medico	physician(m)
il veterinario	veterinarian(m)
la veterinaria	veterinarian(f)
il farmacista	pharmacist(m)
la farmacista	pharmacist(f)
il/la consulente	counselor
l'ottico	optician
l'infermiere	nurse(m)
l'infermiera	nurse(f)
l'autista scoccorritore	EMT
il/la dentista	dentist

Gli impiegati del Governo – Government

il presidente	president(m/f)
la presidentessa*	president(f)*
il primo ministro	prime minister
il capo di stato	head of state
il senatore	senator(m)
la senatrice	senator(f)
il governatore	governor(m)
la governatrice	governor(f)
il sovraintendente	governor
il sindaco	mayor
il soldato	soldier(m)
la soldatessa	soldier(f)
il veterano	the old soldier
il poliziotto	policeman
la poliziotta*	policeman/woman*
l'agente di polizia	police agent (m/f)
il postino	postal worker
la postina	postal worker
il pompiere	fireman
i Carabinieri	national military police

9(IP)31

Cultural Note - The Trades and Professions in Italian (cont'd - 3)

I tecnici – Technicians and Technical Professions

il tecnico/il tecnologo	technician(m)/technologist(m)
la tecnica/la tecnologa	technician(f)/technologist(f)
l'odontotecnico	dental technician(m)
l'odontotecnica	dental technician(f)
il tecnico di laboratorio	laboratory technician(m/f)
il tecnico radiologo	radiology technician(m/f))
il radiologo	radiologist(m)+
la radiologa	radiologist(f)+
lo/la psichiatra	psychiatrist
lo psicologo	psychologist(m)+
la psicologa	psychologist(f)+
il geologo	geologist(m)+
la geologa	geologist(f)+
il biologo	biologist(m)+
la biologa	biologist(f)+
il chimico	chemist(m/f)+
il fisico	physicist(m/f)+
il tecnico televiso (di cavo)	(cable)TV technician(m/f)
il tecnico del telefono	telephone technician(m/f)
il/la centralista	telephone operator
il programmatore	computer programmer(m)
la programmatrice	computer programmer(f)
il tecnico informatico	computer tenchnician(m/f)
il consulente tecnico	IT advisor(m/f)
il consuelente informatico	IT consultant(m)
la consuelente informatica	IT consultant(f)
il tecnico specialista	IT specialist(m/f)
il tecnico della manutenzione	IT support(m/f)

**These feminine forms are not used much any more. Most Italian professions did not have feminine forms until the last few decades, and the trend now has been to go back to using only the masculine form, even when addressing a woman. In these cases, the masculine definite article is used, such as with il presidente and il poliziotto, followed by the woman's last name. The newer fields related to technology do not have feminine forms.

+For words that describe a profession and end in –ologo/–ologa or –ico, keep in mind that there are words with the same stem and an -ia ending that describe the field itself, as in radiologia (radiology), psicologia (psychiatry), geologia (gelology), chimica (chemistry), and fisica (physics).

9(IP)32

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - The Trades and Professions in Italian (cont'd - 4)

I mestieri – Trades

il contadino	farmer(m)	il ristoratore	restaurateur(m)
la contadina	farmer(f)	la ristoratrice	restaurateur(f)
l'albergatore	innkeeper(m)	il cameriere	waiter
l'albergatrice	innkeeper (f)	la cameriera	waitress
il proprietario	land owner/landlord	il/la barista	bartender(coffee)
il proprietario di albergo	hotel owner	il couco	cook(m)
il portinaio	doorman/porter	la cuoca	cook(f)
il portiere d'albergo	concierge/doorman	il capocuoco	chef(m)
il parcchegiatore	parking attendant	la capocuoca	chef(f)
il padrone	shop owner/boss(m)	il pasticciere	pastry chef(m)
la padrona	shop owner/boss(f)	la pasticciera	pastry chef(f)
il/la fiorista	florist	il macellaio	butcher
il gioielliere	jeweler	il fornaio	baker(m)
il calzolaio	shoemaker	la fornaia	baker(f)
il parrucchiere	hairdresser(m)		
la parrucchiera	hairdresser(f)		
il barbiere	barber		
l'esperta in manicure	manicurist		
il giornalaio	news vendor		

il/la pilota	pilot
il/la copilota	copilot
il tecnico di bordo	flight engineer (m/f)
lo steward	steward/flight attendant
l'hostess	stewardess/flight attendant
l'autista di autobus	bus driver
il/la tassista	taxi driver
il controllore	train conductor/ticket collector
il bigliettaio	ticket clerk
la bigliettaia	ticket clerk
il capitano	captain of a ship
il comandante	captain of a ship
il marinaio	sailor
il pescatore	fisherman
l'artigiano	artisan/craftsman
l'appalatore	contractor
il falegname	carpenter
l'idraulico	plumber
l'elettricista	electrician
il meccanico	mechanic

9(IP)33



The Trevi Fountain, Rome



Fountain at the Pantheon, Piazza della Rotonda, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Cognates
Nouns Ending in **-ista, -ore, -ario**

Many of the words that describe the professions in Italian and English are cognates – they have a common origin and so share a common stem and have equivalent endings. The Italian ending will be invariable for some professions, as it in English, but for others will change to reflect the gender of the professional.

The ending **–ista** in Italian is equivalent to the ending –**ist** in English. The **–ista** ending is invariable, but the definite article **(il, la,** or **l')** will change to reflect the gender. For more than one professional, change the **–a** ending to the plural **–i** for men and **–e** for women and use the plural definite articles **(i, gli,** or **le),** of course! (See Appendix 1)

l'artista	=	artist		
il farmacista	=	pharmacist	=	la farmacista
il pianista	=	pianist	=	la pianista
il socialista	=	socialist	=	la socialista
il turista	=	tourist	=	la turista

The masculine ending **–ologo** and the feminine ending **–ologa** in Italian are also equivalent to the ending –**ist** in English.

il biologo	=	biologist	=	la biologa
il geologo	=	geologist	=	la geologa
il psicologo	=	psychologist	=	la psicologa
il radiologo	=	radiologist	=	la radiologa

The ending **–ore** in Italian is equivalent to the ending –**or** in English. You will notice that these nouns refer to masculine professions. The corresponding profession in the feminine is either **–essa** or **-ice.**

l'attore	=	actor	=	l'attrice
il conduttore	=	driver/chauffeur	=	la conduttrice
il dottore	=	doctor	=	la dottoressa
il professore	=	professor	=	la professoressa

The endings **-aria** and **–ario** in Italian are equivalent to the ending –**ary** in English.

il segretario	=	secretary	=	la segretaria
il salario	=	salary		
il vocabolario	=	vocabulary		

9(G)29

Grammar Note - Indirect and Direct Object Pronouns

The Italian indirect and direct object pronouns are identical to the reflexive pronouns that we are already familiar with for the **io, tu, noi,** and **voi** forms, and are: **mi, ti, ci,** and **vi.** But, the meaning is different. If the reference is indirect, the English translation is **"to me, to you, to us,"** or **"to you all."** If the reference is direct, the translation is just, **"me, you, us,"** or **"you all."** The third person forms of the indirect and direct object pronouns are different from the reflexive forms. **La** means **"her"** or **"polite you,"** and **lo** means **"him."** **Le** and **gli** mean **"to her"** and **"to him."** **Gli** also means **"to them."**

Both indirect and direct object pronouns are placed *before* the verb. This takes a little getting used to, as the word order is different from English, which places both object pronouns after the verb.

Indirect object pronouns are commonly used to introduce someone we know to someone else, as in the first line of our dialogue from this chapter, when Pietro says, **"Caterina, ti presento il mio amico Paolo,"** for, **"Kathy, to you I introduce my friend Paul."** Notice that the word-for-word translation sounds stilted in English, since in English the object pronoun goes after the verb, whereas in Italian, it is placed *before* the verb. Proper English would instead be, **"Kathy, let me introduce you to my friend Paul."**

What does Caterina reply? **"Piacere di conoscerla,"** which means, **"It is a pleasure to meet you (polite)."** This sentence uses the direct object pronoun **la (polite you)** for a polite first encounter, although the conversation quickly turns to the familiar; both Paolo and Caterina are about the same age and friends of Pietro. When addressing someone older, someone's boss, a professional, or a high-ranking politician, always use a polite greeting. The polite form usually continues for the remainder of the encounter, as when Caterina meets the hostess of the party.

There is one more important thing to notice in Caterina's response: the direct object **la** is *attached to the end of the infinitive verb* **conoscere**. Again, just like with the reflexive pronouns, the rule of placement for the direct object pronouns changes when an infinitive verb is used. The final **–e** of the infinitive form of the verb is dropped, and the direct object pronoun is attached directly to the end of the verb.

Let's say we get to know someone very well, and want to say, **"I love you,"** in a romantic way in Italian. This important phrase is, **"Ti amo,"** or, translated word for word, "You (I) love." It may be easier to remember this word order by thinking in English with the third person, as in, "**It is *you* that I love.**" So, when using the indirect and direct object pronouns, we must really learn to think in Italian, or we may misunderstand some very important phrases! 9(G)30

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Reflexive, Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns Summary

The table below summarizes the reflexive, indirect, and direct object pronouns. Notice that for the singular and plural first and second persons, *the four different types of pronouns are identical*, and are: **mi, ti, ci,** and **vi.** As usual, for conversational Italian, we will focus on the forms that refer to "me," "you," and "us." So, by memorizing the few Italian words given above, we already know all three types of the most important pronouns!

Reflexive Pronouns		Direct Object Pronouns		Indirect Object Pronouns	
mi	myself	mi	me	mi	to me
ti	yourself (fam.)	ti	you (fam.)	ti	to you (fam.)
si	yourself (pol.)	La (L')	you (pol.)	Le	to you (pol.)
si	herself	la (l')	her, it (fem.)	le	to her
si	himself	lo (l')	him, it (masc.)	gli	to him
ci	ourselves	ci	us	ci	to us
vi	yourselves	vi	you all	vi	to you all
si	themselves	le	them (fem.)	gli	to them (fem.)
si	themselves	li	them (masc.)	gli	to them (masc.)
The reflexive, direct, and indirect object pronouns come *before* the verb, or are attached to the end of an infinitive verb after dropping the final infinitive **-e**.					

The third person singular and plural forms of the different types of pronouns are not all the same, however, and these are a bit tricky to remember. Also, there are both feminine and masculine forms for the indirect and direct object pronouns. But, don't be intimidated! Learn how to recognize these forms, whether placed before or attached to the end of a verb. It will take a little more practice to start using them, and the *Audio Dialogue Practice Book (Volume 1)* provides many useful examples.

When replacing a noun with the direct object pronoun for **it**, choose **lo** for masculine nouns and **la** for feminine nouns that are singular. Choose **li** or **le** for plural masculine and feminine nouns respectively. Notice how the position of the Italian direct object pronoun is *before the verb* in our examples below, and that the subject pronoun is dropped!

Io compro la lampada.	I buy the lamp.	Io compro le lampade.	I buy the lamps.
La compro.	I buy it.	Le compro.	I buy them.
Io compro il cuscino.	I buy the pillow.	Io compro i cuscini.	I buy the pillows.
Lo compro.	I buy it.	Li compro.	I buy them.

Grammar Note - Reflexive, Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns Summary (cont'd)

Note: The singular third person direct object pronouns **lo** and **la** sometimes drop their final vowel if placed *before an Italian verb that begins with a vowel* in spoken Italian (and also before an **-h,** as with the **passato prossimo** in Chapter 11). Eliminating one of the two vowels or the **-h** lends itself to smoother conversation, although both forms are commonly used. If one chooses to drop the additional vowel from the object pronoun, the pronoun and verb are spoken together as a single word. In writing, an apostrophe is used to signify that the pronoun and verb have been combined. Here is how it works:

Pietro ordina il libro.	Peter orders the book.
Pietro lo ordina.	Peter orders it.
(Pietro l'ordina.)	
Pietro ordina la pizza.	Peter orders the pizza.
Pietro la ordina.	Peter orders it.
(Pietro l'ordina.)	

However, the above *does not apply for the plural* forms of the direct object pronouns, **li** and **le!** So, our routine for changing a noun into the direct object pronoun **it** remains the same, as you can see below!

Pietro ordina i libri.	Peter orders the books.
Pietro li ordina.	Peter orders them.
Pietro ordina le pizze.	Peter orders the pizzas.
Pietro le ordina.	Peter orders them.

Grammar Note - Reflexive, Indirect and Direct Object Pronouns with the Negative

In negative sentences, the Italian word **non** is placed before the reflexive, indirect, or direct object pronoun.

Pietro vede la strada.	Peter sees the road.
Pietro la vede.	Peter sees it.
Pietro non la vede.	Peter doesn't see it.

9(G)32

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Titles and Proper Forms of Address

When using the title **signore** for **Mr.,** and other masculine titles, such as **professore (professor)** before an individual's name, the final **–e** of the title is dropped, as in **signor Rossi (Mr. Rossi).** Also, notice that the title is written in lower case in Italian. The words **signore** and **signora** can also mean **gentleman** and **lady,** and **"un signore"** and **"una signora"** refer to a person of nobility, or to a person who by their education, demeanor and upbringing acts as belonging to the upper class. A very common way to express respect for someone in Italy is to say they are **"un vero signore"** or **"una vera signora" (a true gentleman** or **a true lady).**

When referring to a profession in Italian with the linking verb **essere,** the indefinite article **a** is not necessary, although it is often included. We have examples of this in our dialogue. First, Luigi says simply, **"Io sono professore,"** for, **"I am (a) professor."** But, when he introduces his friend, Paolo, Luigi says, **"Paolo è un medico,"** for, **"Paul is a physician."**

Finally, when *speaking about someone* who holds a title, it is appropriate to use the definite article before their title. So, when Paolo and Luigi were speaking about another friend, they mentioned, **"L'ingenere Rossi non è alla festa stasera,"** for, **"(The) engineer Rossi is not at the party tonight."** This also holds true if you are giving your own name and title! So, Pietro could say, **"Io sono il professore Manzini,"** for, **"I am Professor Manzini,"** if he were to introduce himself.

However, the article is not used *when directly addressing a person* who holds a title. So, to greet **l'inginere Rossi,** you would say something like, **"Ingenere Rossi, che piacere rivederla!"** for, **"Engineer Rossi, what a pleasure to see you again!"**

When going to an appointment with a professional, use **dal,** as in, **"Vado dal dottore,"** for, **"I am going to the doctor;"** or, if the doctor is a woman, **"Vado dalla dottoressa."**

To ask to speak with the doctor, use **con il** or **con la,** as in, **"Vorrei parlare con il dottore,"** or **"con la dottoressa,"** for, **"I would like to speak with the doctor."** You may also speak **to** the doctor, using **al dottore** or **alla dottoressa,** but this preposition is not as commonly used and is considered a bit confrontational.

Incidentally, **professore** and **professoressa** translate into both **teacher** and **professor,** and in Italy are the titles students use to address both high school and uinveristy teachers. Those with a university degree are in general called **dottore/dottoressa,** with **medico/medica** referring specifically to **physicians.**

9(G)33

Grammar Note - **Che** and **Cui**

The Italian word **che** is a relative pronoun when it is used to link two different phrases in a sentence. **Che** translates into **who, that,** and **which** in English. **Che** is invariable, and is never omitted when speaking in Italian. So, it is important to note (that): while the English word "that" can be, and often is, omitted from complex English sentences, the Italian word **che** is always required to link phrases in Italian!

La ragazza *che* viaggia è Caterina.	The girl *who* travels is Kathy.
La macchina *che* Pietro guida è rossa.	The car *that* Peter drives is red.

La festa italiana *che* è importante per i bambini è Natale.
The Italian holiday *which* is important for the children is Christmas.

Cui is also a relative pronoun, and translates into **whom** and **which,** and is only used after a preposition, such as: **con (with), di (of),** or **a (at).** This is just as we would do in English. If you can remember those high school English lessons about when to use **who** and **whom,** you will do very well in Italian!

Ecco Caterina, *con cui* noi viaggiamo.	Here is Kathy, *with whom* we travel.
Il cugino *di cui* io parlo è Pietro.	The cousin *about whom* I speak is Pietro.
Il cugino *a cui* io scrivo è Pietro.	The cousin *to whom* I write is Pietro.

When the definite article **(il, lo, la, i, gli, le)** is put in front of **cui,** agreeing with the noun that follows, we have the equivalent of **whose**.

Ecco Caterina, *il cui* cugino è Pietro.	Here is Kathy, *whose* cousin is Pietro.
Ti presento Caterina, *la cui* famiglia è in America.	I would like you to meet Kathy, *whose* family is in America.

9(G)34

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Familiar Imperative Verbs

Now that we have learned all three types of verb conjugations in the present tense, we can easily use these same verb endings to relay an urgent command or to give an order. This special use of the present tense is called the "imperative" form.

With the imperative verb form, by definition, the speaker is always giving a command to someone else. This means that there is no first person, or **io** conjugation to learn.

Most commands are given to someone we know, and so will use the familiar **tu** form. The tables below show the imperative **tu** form for the **–are, -ere,** and **–ire** verbs, and you will note from the red highlighted **–a** that only the **–are** verbs have an imperative ending that differs from the simple present tense.

When speaking to a group of people we know, with the familiar **you all,** or **voi** form, the endings for the imperative tense are also identical to the simple present tense!

There is an imperative **noi** form, which also has endings that are identical to the present tense. Now, doesn't it make sense that **"Andiamo!"** means, **"Let's go!"?** We are simply using the imperative form of the present tense! When written, an exclamation point is used to convey the idea that the verb used in the phrase is in the imperative form.

Imperative Tense

	-are	-ere	-ire
(io)	-	-	-
tu	a(!)	i(!)	i(!)
Lei/lei/lui	*	*	*
noi	iamo(!)	iamo(!)	iamo(!)
voi	ate(!)	ete(!)	ite(!)
loro	***	***	***

	Guardare (to look)	Rispondere (to answer)	Partire (to leave)
tu	Guarda! Look!	Rispondi! Answer!	Parti! Leave!
noi	Guardiamo! Let's look!	Rispondiamo! Let's answer!	Partiamo! Let's leave!
voi	Guardate! (You all) look!	Rispondete! (You all) answer!	Partite! (You all) leave!

9(V)51

Present Tense - Familiar Imperative Verbs (cont'd)

When conjugating a reflexive verb into the different familiar imperative forms, it is not enough just to use the correct verb ending. We must also place the reflexive pronoun in the proper position with respect to the verb, which in this case is *after* the verb and attached to the end of the conjugated form! This rule holds true for the **tu, noi,** and **voi** forms. The conjugated verb and attached pronoun are spoken as one word (see below).

This rule may seem confusing at first, since we have spent so much time thinking in Italian and putting the reflexive pronouns before the verb. Try to remember the correct way to conjugate the reflexive imperative verbs from everyday experiences at home. For instance, common phrases a mother might say to a teenager on a school morning would be, **"Alzati!"**or, **"Wake (yourself) up!"** and **"Sbrigati!"** for **" Hurry (yourself) up!"** And, in Italian households, at dinnertime each person in the family is encouraged to **"Siediti!"** for **"Sit (yourself) down!"** so everyone can eat together before the food gets cold!

Notice the spelling change for our second example verb **sbrigarsi** for the **noi** form in the table below. The spelling change is necessary to keep the sound of this form constant with the infinitive form and other conjugated forms.

Imperative Sbrigarsi – to hurry (oneself) up		
tu	Sbrigati!	Hurry (yourself/familiar) up!
noi	Sbrighiamoci!	Let's hurry ourselves up!
voi	Sbrigatevi!	Hurry (yourselves/familiar) up!

Present Tense - Irregular Verb **Dare**

Dare is irregular in both the present tense and the imperative **tu** form, as we will see in the next table. Notice that when the **–are** ending is dropped, we are left with only the letter **d** for the stem for the regular forms. **Dare** means **"to give,"** and is an important verb to remember.

Dare – to give		
io	do	I give
tu	dai	you (familiar) give
Lei lei/lui	dà	you (polite) give she/he gives
noi	diamo	we give
voi	date	you all give
loro	danno	they give

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Irregular Familiar Imperative Verbs

Some frequently used verbs are irregular in the **tu** form for the imperative present tense. The **noi** and **voi** forms follow the simple present tense conjugations exactly for these verbs, though, except for the auxiliary verbs **avere** and **essere**.

Anyone who enjoys watching Italian movies has heard the many ways there are in Italian to ask or tell someone to leave a place, such as, **"Va!" – "Go!"** or, **"Vai via!" – "Go away!"** There is also a polite way to tell someone to leave, by using the word **"Vada!"** for, **"Go!"**

"Dai!" is used to encourage someone to continue on despite difficulty and means, **"Come on!"** You might also want to remember **"Dimmi!"** for, **"Tell me!"** and **"Dammi!"** for **"Give me!"** **"Fallo!"** means **"Do it!"** Notice how the first letter of the direct objects **mi** and **lo** is doubled by convention when combined with these irregular verbs.

Finally, if you would like to encourage or admonish someone to **"Be good!"** you can say, **"Stà buono!"** This sentence uses the **tu** form of the regular imperative verb **stare**, and is a familiar phrase used with children. On the other hand, **"Sei bravo"** means the person you are addressing is, without a doubt, **good** or **talented**. If someone you know wants you to be patient, they may say, **"Abbi pazienza!"** for **"Have patience!"**

See the tables below for a summary of these important irregular verb forms. When the imperative form differs from its present tense conjugation, it is given in brown, and most have two different forms for the **tu** conjugation. All forms are written with an exclamation point so as not to confuse them with the simple present tense.

Imperative Irregular Verbs

	Andare (to go)	Dare (to give)	Dire (to say/to tell)	Fare (to do/to make)
tu	vai!, và!	dai!, dà!	di!	fai!, fà!
noi	andiamo!	diamo!	diciamo!	facciamo!
voi	andate!	date!	dite!	fate!

Imperative Auxiliary Verbs

	Avere (to have)	Essere (to be)	Stare (to be/stay)
tu	abbi!	sii!	stà!
noi	abbiamo!	siamo!	stiamo!
voi	abbiate!	siate!	state!

9(V)53

Grammar Point - Negative Familiar Imperative Verbs

When commanding someone you know *not* to do something – using the familiar **tu** form – it is very easy. Whether the verb is first, second, third conjugation, or reflexive, simply put the word **non** in front of the infinitive form of the verb! In other words, do not conjugate!

The reflexive pronoun **ti** still needs to be tacked on to the end of the infinitive reflexive verb, though. Look back to the dialogue from Chapter 8, when Francesca tells Pietro, "Don't worry!" and she says, **"Non preoccuparti!"** As usual, the subject pronoun **tu** is understood and left out of the sentence and the additional word "do" that we use in English is for the phrases "do not" or "don't" is not necessary in Italian.

So, using **preoccuparsi (to be worried)** and **guardare (to look)** and **parlare (to talk/speak)** as examples:

(tu)	Non preoccuparti!	Don't (you fam.) worry yourself!
(tu)	Non guardare!	Don't (you fam.) look!
(tu)	Non parlare!	Don't (you fam.) speak!

For the negative in the **noi** and **voi** forms, conjugate as usual and simply put **non** in front of the verb. Remember to add the reflexive pronoun to the ending of the verb if it is reflexive. Again, the personal pronouns are usually omitted, and so are given in parentheses.

(noi)	Non preoccupiamoci!	Let's not worry ourselves!
(voi)	Non preoccupatevi!	(You all) Don't worry yourselves!
(noi)	Non guardiamo!	Let's not look!
(voi)	Non guardate!	(You all) Don't look!

9(V)54

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 9

Infinitive Present	Reflexive Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	mi	o	o	o	isco
tu	ti	i	i	i	isci
Lei/lei/lui	si	a	e	e	isce
noi	ci	iamo	iamo	iamo	iamo
voi	vi	ate	ete	ite	ite
loro	si	ano	ono	ono	iscono

Infinitive Imperative	Direct Object Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	mi			*	****
tu	ti	a(!)	i(!)	i(!)	isci(!)
Lei/lei/lui	La/la/lo	*	*	*	****
noi	ci	iamo(!)	iamo(!)	iamo(!)	iamo(!)
voi	vi	ate(!)	ete(!)	ite(!)	ite(!)
loro	le/li	***	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Essere Imperative	Avere (to have)	Avere Imperative
io	sono		ho	
tu	sei	sii	hai	abbi
Lei/lei/lui	è	***	ha	***
noi	siamo	siamo	abbiamo	abbiamo
voi	siete	siate	avete	abbiate
loro	sono	****	hanno	****

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 9 (cont'd)

Irregular Verbs	Sedersi (to sit down)	Dare (to give)	Fare (**********)
io	mi siedo	do	******
tu	ti siedi	dai	***
Lei/lei/lui	si siede	dà	**
noi	ci sediamo	diamo	********
voi	vi sedete	date	****
loro	si siedono	danno	*****

Irregular Imperative Verbs	Direct Object Pronouns	andare (to go)	dare (to give)	dire (to say)	fare (to do make)	stare (to be stay)
io	mi					
tu	ti	vai,và	dai,dà	di	fai,fà	stà
Lei/lei/lui	La/la/lo	***	***	***	***	***
noi	ci	andiamo	diamo	diciamo	facciamo	stiamo
voi	vi	andate	date	dite	fate	state
loro	le/li	****	****	****	****	****

Irregular Verbs	Indirect Object Pronouns	Piacere (**********)
io	mi	******
tu	ti	*****
Lei/lei/lui	Le/le/gli	*****
noi	ci	******
voi	vi	******
loro	gli	*****

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - Dare del tu/Dare del Lei

The verb **dare,** which we have learned means **to give,** is used in important idiomatic expressions that allow the change to be made from a formal conversation, using the polite verb form for "you" (the **Lei** form), to a familiar conversation, using the familiar form of "you" (the **tu** form).

Imagine, for instance, that a conversation starts up at a gathering between two people who are of the same age and have just met. At some point in the conversation, one will say to the other, **"Diamoci del tu,"** which does not have a good literal translation, but roughly means, **"Let's use the familiar form of you** (the **tu** form) **with each other and address each other familiarly."** Look back in our dialogue, and note that Paolo speaks politely with Caterina when they first meet, and then he uses this phrase to get her consent to speak familiarly. The reflexive pronoun **ci** is added to the end of the verb **diamo** in order to refer to **each other**. (Remember those reciprocal reflexive verbs from Chapter 8?) This is a familiar way to ask the question, and assumes a level of comfort that the feeling of familiarity will be reciprocated.

An even more familiar way to ask the same question is to use the command familiar form of this phrase, which is, **"Dammi del tu!"** The use of this phrase emphasizes the closeness that the speaker already feels toward the other individual just in the way the question is asked, as command phrases are normally only used between family and close friends.

There are other ways to make this request. If the person making the request wants to continue in the polite way of speaking when the request is made, and switch only after consent is given, he or she could use the verb **potere** and the very useful phrase of politeness we have come across many times before: **"Mi può..."** In this case, the phrase would be, **"Mi può dare del tu,"** for, **"You can use the familiar form of 'you' with me."**

Or, perhaps one is speaking to an older individual and is not sure the feeling of familiarity will be reciprocated. They can use the same phrase in a question form, as in, **"Lei posso dare del tu?"** which means, **"Can I use the familiar form of 'you' with you (pol.)?"**

Finally, it should be noted that Italians use the polite form of "you" in conversation as a way of showing respect to older individuals, teachers, bosses, the police, or those in government. Between Italians, then, situations may arise where someone of importance might feel another individual is not showing proper respect or has become too familiar with them by their use of the familiar "you" in conversation. In this case, a conversation may start in the familiar, but revert to the polite at the request of a superior with the polite command, **"Mi dia del Lei,"** which means, **"Use the polite form of 'you' with me."**

9(IE)17



Grand Canal by the Rialto Bridge, Venice

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - The Date in Italian

It takes a little practice, but at this point we should be able to let those long Italian words for the years roll off our tongue easily when saying the date, since we have learned our numbers out past the thousands. The smaller numbers are combined to make one long word when written. Slashes have been included for easier reading in the examples below.

Remember to use **mila** as the plural for **mille** when counting from the years 2000 and greater. Now that human beings have entered the early twenty first century of recorded history, it is actually a little easier to give the current date than it was in the previous centuries, since there are smaller numbers to string together to make the final year!

Here it goes with a few examples. You may want to memorize any important years in your life, just in case you need to say them in Italian. For instance:

The year I was born, **1962**	mille/novecento/sessantadue mille.....nove cento.....sessantadue = one thousand....nine hundred...sixty two
High school graduation, **1980**	mille/novecento/ottanta mille.....nove cento.....ottanta = one thousand....nine hundred...eighty
My daughter's birthday, **1996**	mille/novecento/novantasei mille.....nove cento.....novantasei = one thousand ...nine hundred ...ninety six
My son's birthday, **2001**	due/mila/uno duemila..... uno two thousand... one

To refer to a specific decade, such as, **the 60s,** or **the 1960s** for instance, use the phrase:

Gli anni sessanta	The 60s (lit. the years 60)

Centuries can also be referred to in this manner. For the **1800s** we could use the phrase:

L'ottocento	The 800s (lit. the years 800)

To refer to the exact year, rather than generalize about a decade or century, begin the phrase in the singular, with **"l'anno."**

L'anno ottocento	The year 800 AD

9(N)6

Numbers - The Date in Italian (cont'd)

In order to ask the date, use this phrase:

Qual'è la data, oggi?	What is the date today?

When answering this question, use the following order: definite article, number, month, and year. For the first of the month, use **il primo**. Otherwise, use the cardinal numbers **(due, tre, quattro, etc.)** that we normally use for counting.

Oggi è il primo aprile 2011.	Today is the first day of April 2011.
Domani è il due aprile 2011.	Tomorrow is April 2, 2011.
Dopodomani è il tre aprile 2011.	The day after tomorrow is April 3, 2011.

When including the day of the week in the sentence, the day of the week takes the place of the definite article.

Dopodomani è lunedì tre aprile 2011.	The day after tomorrow is Monday, April 3, 2011.

In order to ask the day, use this phrase:

Quanti ne* abbiamo oggi?	How many of them (days of the month) (do) (we) have today?

And to answer, again use cardinal numbers, up to 31, of course. Notice from the translation how this differs from English.

Oggi ne* abbiamo tre.	It is the third. (lit. Today we have three of them.)
Oggi è il tre.	Today is the third.

*In this situation, the word **ne** stands for **of them**. We will encounter other meanings for this word in Unit 3. 9(N)7

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2- City Life

Chapter 10 - Shopping in Milan

Dialogue

In this dialogue, Francesca explains to Caterina that they will have a girls day out together. Since Caterina doesn't want to do the grocery shopping, Francesca and Caterina go to a dress shop in Milan instead. There, they meet a friendly **salesgirl (la commessa), Laura (Laura),** who helps them to find just the right thing. Italians use specific expressions when it comes to shopping, and these phrases have been underlined for easier reading, so watch for them! Also, watch how **questo (this)** and **quello (that)** change to match the gender and number of the nouns – in this case items of clothing – they replace.

We will make good use of the indirect object pronouns we learned about in Chapter 9, as we will use the verb **piacere (to like/to be pleasing to)** fairly often in this dialogue. The "you all," **voi** form of **avere,** which is **avete (you all have),** is also put to good use. When shopping we must now address a salesperson in the collective sense, in order to ask, "What do **you all have** for sale?"

Francesca: Caterina, abbiamo molto da fare oggi.
È giovedì, e il giovedì io vado a fare la spesa.

Kathy, (we) have a lot to do today.
(It) is Thursday, and on Thursdays I go to do the grocery shopping.

E poi, la mia amica Anna ci invita a prendere un caffé in un bar.
Ti piace fare la spesa?

And then, my friend Anna invites us to take (have) coffee in a bar.
(Do) you (fam.) like to do the (grocery)shopping? (lit. Is it pleasing to you…?)

Caterina: Si, mi piace fare la spesa al supermercato.
Ma, mi piace più andare a comprare vestiti.

Yes, I like to do the grocery shopping at the supermarket.
But, I like more to go to buy clothes. (lit. It is pleasing to me more…)

Ho bisogno di un vestito nuovo e vorrei comprare anche qualcosa per mia sorella in America.

(I) need a new dress and also (I) would like to buy something for my sister in America. 10(Vo)39

Unit 2- City Life
Chapter 10 - Shopping in Milan
Dialogue (cont'd – 2)

Francesca: Molto bene. Andiamo a fare shopping!
Ci sono molti bei negozi a Milano.

Very well. Let's go shopping! (for clothes)
There are many nice shops in Milan.

(Dopo un po'... Francesca e Caterina entrano in un negozio di vestiti e incontrano la commessa Laura.)
(After awhile... Frances and Kathy enter a dress shop and meet the sales girl Laura.)

Laura *(a Caterina)*: Buon giorno. Posso aiutarla?
Good day. May (I) help you? *(polite greeting to a customer)*

Caterina: Cerco un vestito da sera, carino ma elegante.
Mi piace molto ballare. Avete vestiti neri?

(I) am look(ing) for an evening dress, cute but elegant.
I like dancing very much. (lit. Dancing to me is pleasing...)
(Do) you all have black dresses? *(plural "voi" form of "you" used to address salespeople politely)*

Laura: Certamente. Che taglia porta?
Certainly. What size (do) (you pol.) take? *(polite question)*

Caterina: Porto la (taglia) quarantasei.*
(I) take the (size) 46 (Italian).

Laura: Questo vestito è alla moda.
This dress is in style.

Caterina: Francesca, ti piace?
Francesca, (do) you (fam.) like (it)? (lit. Is it pleasing to you?)

Francesca: Si, ma anche questo (vestito) è bello. Provali tutti e due.
Yes, but also this (dress) is nice. Try them both (on).

*Italian sizes for women's clothing differ from both American and European sizes. For instance, American size 12 for dresses corresponds to European size 42, but Italian size 46. In Italy, clothes tend to be cut for slim sizing, so try on clothing before purchasing to be sure! See the Cultural Note for more on Italian sizes for clothes and also for those wonderful Italian shoes!

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2- City Life
Chapter 10 - Shopping in Milan
Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Caterina *(a Laura)*: Avete taglie più grandi?
Mia sorella porta la (taglia) quarantotto.

(Do) you all have larger sizes? *(plural "voi" form of "you" used to address salespeople politely)*
My sister takes the (size) 48 (Italian).

Laura: Si, questo, o forse quel vestito.
Yes, this, or maybe that dress.

Francesca: Caterina, ti piace questa gonna per tua sorella?
Kathy, (do) you (fam.) like this skirt for your sister?
(lit. Is this skirt pleasing to you…?)

Caterina: È bella, ma a mia sorella non piace il colore marrone.
(It) is nice, but my sister doesn't like the color brown.
(lit. To my sister, the color brown is not pleasing.)

Francesca: E quella (gonna)?
And that one (skirt)?

Caterina: Oh, quella (gonna) è perfetta. Le piace di più il rosso del marrone.
La prendo!
Oh, that one (skirt) is perfect. She likes red more than brown. (lit. To her, red is more pleasing than brown).
I'll take it!

Caterina (a Laura): Dove posso trovare il camerino?
Where can (I) find the fitting room?

Laura: Eccolo.
Here it is.

10(Vo)41

Unit 2- City Life
Chapter 10 - Shopping in Milan
Dialogue (cont'd – 4)

(Dopo pochi minuti…)
(After a few minutes…)

Caterina: Allora, Francesca. Mi metto il vestito. Che pensi? Mi sta bene?

Now, Francesca. I put on (myself) the dress. What (do) (you) think? (Does) (it) look good on me? (lit. Does it stay well on me?)

Francesca: Ti sta benissimo! Ma com'è l'altro?
(It) looks wonderful on you (fam.)! But how (about) the other?

Caterina: L'altro non mi va bene. È troppo stretto.
The other (did) not fit me well. *(idiomatic expression)* (It) is Too tight.

Laura *(a Caterina)*: Desidera altro?
(Do) (you pol.) want anything else?

Caterina: No… Mi piacciono questi (vestiti). Quanto costano questo vestito e questa gonna?
No… I like these (clothes). (lit. These clothes are pleasing to me.)
How much is (costs) this dress and this skirt?

Laura: Sono cinquantadue euro per il vestito e ventitre euro per la gonna.
(They) are 52 euros for the dress and 23 euros for the skirt.

Caterina: Non c'è male.
That's not too bad.

Laura: Ecco la cassa. Come vuole pagare?
Here is the cashier's counter. How (do) (you pol.) want to pay?

10(Vo)42

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2- City Life

Chapter 10 - Shopping in Milan

Dialogue (cont'd – 5)

Caterina: Posso pagare con un assegno?
Can (I) pay with a check?

Laura: Mi dispiace. Non accettiamo assegni. Accettiamo la carta di credito o il bancomat.

I'm sorry. (We) don't accept checks. (We) accept (a) credit card or (a) debit card.

Caterina: Va bene. Pago in contanti.
Mi può dare la ricevuta, per favore?

Very well. (I) (will) pay in cash.
Can you give me the receipt, please?

Laura: Ma, certo! Grazie mille!
But, certainly! Thank you very much!

10(Vo)43

Vocabulary - In the Piazza

Here is a list of shops that can be found in a typical piazza in Italy. Notice from the dialogue in this chapter that Francesca wants to go **in** a bar, rather than **to** a bar, as we would say in English. More on this in Chapter 11, when the correct preposition for different places in Italy one can visit will be listed for easy memorization.

la piazza	town square
il negozio	shop
il parco	park
la panchina	park bench
il duomo	cathedral
la chiesa	church
la cappella	chapel
il chiosco	kiosk
il giornalaio/l'edicola	news kiosk
il giornale	newspaper
la rivista	magazine
la biblioteca	library
la libreria	book store
il libro	the book
il cinema	movie theater
la cassa del cinema	box office
il ristorante	restaurant
la trattoria	family-run restaurant
la pizzeria	pizza shop
la pizza	pizza
il bar-tabaccheria	coffee bar with cigarettes
il bar/il caffè	coffee house/café
il caffè	coffee
la gelateria	ice cream shop
il gelato	ice cream
il negozio di alimentari	grocery store
il supermercato	supermarket
la drogheria	drug store/general store
la farmacia	pharmacy
il fornaio	bread bakery
il panificio	bread bakery
la pasticceria	sweet bakery
la macelleria	butcher shop
la salumeria	delicatessen
la pescheria	fish shop
il fruttivendolo	fruit seller
il negozio di abbigliamento	clothing store
il negozio di vestiti	clothing store
il negozio di scarpe	shoe store
la gioielleria	jewelery store
i gioielli	jewelery
il salone di bellezza	beauty shop
il parrucchiere	hair salon
il negozio di fiori	flower shop
il barbiere	barber
la lavanderia	dry cleaners
l'agenzia immobiliare	real estate agency
l'agenzia di viaggi	travel agency
la tabaccheria	tobacco shop

10(Vo)44

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Shopping for Clothing and Jewelry

la commessa/ il commesso	shopgirl/salesgirl/salesman
i vestiti (di marca)	(designer) clothing
la taglia/la misura	size
corto(a)/lungo(a)	short/long
stretto(a)	tight
largo(a)	loose
piccolo(a)	small
grande	large
le scarpe	shoes
il laccio delle scarpe	shoe laces
le scarpe sportive	sneakers
le scarpe da giannastica	sneakers
gli scarponi	boots
i calzini	socks
il cappotto	coat
la giacca a vento	windbreaker
il cappello	hat
il maglione/il pullover	sweater
il completo	suit(m)
il tailleur	suit(f)
la giacca da completo	suit jacket
la giacca	jacket
il vestito	dress
la gonna	skirt
i pantaloni	pants
i pantaloncini/gli shorts	shorts
la camicia	shirt (m)
la camicetta	blouse/shirt(f)
i (blue) jeans	(blue/denim) jeans
la maglietta/la T-shirt	T-shirt
la roba	stuff/things/belongings
la roba da vestire	some stuff (clothing)
la roba di marca	designer stuff
la guaradaroba	wardrobe
la tasca	pocket
la cintura	belt
il bottone	button

i guanti	gloves
la sciarpa	scarf
la cravatta	neck tie
la borsa/borsetta	handbag
la cartella	briefcase
l'accapatoio	bathrobe
il pigiama	pajamas
le ciabatte	slippers
il reggiseno	bra
la mutandina	underwear(f)
le mutande	underwear
la maglietta	undershirt
l'oro	gold
l'argento	silver
la collana	necklace
l'orologio	watch/clock
l'anello	ring
l'orrecchino	earring
il braccialetto	bracelet
il diamante	diamond
i gioelli	jewelery
gli occhiali	eyeglasses
gli occiali da sole	sunglasses
il costume da bagno	bathing suit
il calzoncini da bagno	swimming trunks
il bikini	bikini

10(Vo)45



Milan
Galleria Mall

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Shopping

There are many important expressions that describe the act of shopping in Italian. Notice from the tables below how the phrases differ depending on the type of shopping to be done. Also, remember our "Important Phrases" list from Chapter 3 that focuses on how to barter when making a purchase in an Italian piazza. For more uses of the verb **fare,** see the "Idiomatic Expressions" section of this chapter.

Grocery Shopping	
fare la spesa	to do the grocery shopping to do some grocery shopping

General Shopping	
fare spese	to do the shopping (clothes, shoes, or other personal items)
fare compere	to do the shopping (any purchase) (la compera = purchase)
fare acquisti	to do the shopping (any purchase) (l'acquisto = purchase)
fare shopping	to do the shopping

Faccio la spesa.	(I) do the (grocery) shopping.
Vado a fare la spesa.	(I) go to do the (grocery) shopping.
Vado a comprare…	(I) go to buy… (any item).
Faccio shopping.	(I) go (lit. do/make) shopping (general).
Faccio shopping di vestiti.	(I) go (lit. do/make) shopping for clothes.
Faccio compere.	(I) go (lit. do/make) shopping (general).
Faccio acquisti.	(I) make purchases (usually for non-grocery items).
Mi può mostrare…	Could you (pol.) show me…
Mi fa vedere…	Could you (pol.) show me…
Posso?	May I?
Che taglia porta?	What size do you (pol.) wear?
Porto la taglia…/Porto la…	(I) take the size…/(I) take the (size)…
Qual'è la taglia italiana per la taglia dieci americana?	What is the Italian size for (the) size 10 American?
alla moda	in style
di marca	designer/brand name
Mi provo…/Ti provi…	(I) try on (myself)…/(You fam.) try on (yourself)…
Mi metto…/Ti metti…	(I) put on (myself)…/(You fam.) put on (yourself)…
Mi metto…	(I) am trying on (myself)…/(I) am going to try on (myself)…
Mi sta bene.	(It) looks good (lit. stays well) on me.
Ti sta bene.	(It) looks good (lit. stays well) on you.
Mi va bene.	(It) fits me well.
La/Lo prendo!	I'll take it! (fem./masc. direct object)
Le/Li prendo!	I'll take them! (fem./masc. plural direct object)

10(IP)35

Cultural Note - Shopping for Clothing in Italy

When visiting Italy, one encounters wonderful shops that sell everything imaginable. In most cities, beautiful, stylish clothing hangs in the shop windows, made by well-known designers. But, what size clothing to bring to the dressing room? There are still dedicated craftsmen that make high quality leather goods, and there is such a dazzling variety of shoes for sale that it is always tempting buy a pair to bring home. But, what size to tell the shop keeper to get? The tables to follow list European and Italian sizes and how they (roughly) correspond to the sizes in the United States. Please note that this is only a general guide, and it is best to always try on any item of clothing before making a purchase!

Women's Dress Sizes

General US Size	American	European	Italian
Extra Small	2	32	36
Small	4	34	38
Small	6	36	40
Medium	8	38	42
Medium	10	40	44
Large	12	42	46
Large	14	44	48
Extra Large	16	46	50

Women's Blouse and Sweater Sizes

General US Size	American	European	Italian
Extra Small	32	34	40
Small	34	36	42
Small	36	38	44
Medium	38	40	46
Large	40	42	48
Large	42	44	50
Extra Large	44	46	52

Women's and Men's Shoe Sizes*

American Shoe Sizes (inches)	5½	6	6½	7	7½	8	8½	9	9½	10	10½
European/Italian Women's Shoe Sizes	35½	36	36½	37	37½	38	38½	39			
European/Italian Men's Shoe Sizes	37	37½	38	38½	39	40	41	41½	42	42½	43

*Hint: subtract 30 from European shoe sizes to get the equivalent of the American size for women's shoes size 5 to 9.

10(IP)36

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Shopping for Clothing in Italy (cont'd)

For men's clothing, Italian sizes and European sizes have an identical numbering system, although the fit of the clothing that corresponds to this numbering system is only loosely standardized. As usual, trying on clothing before purchasing is the best policy!

Men's Shirt and Pant Sizes

General US Size	American	European	Italian	General Italian Size
2X Extra Small	32	42	42	Small
Extra Small	34	44	44	Medium
Small	36	46	46	Large
Medium	38	48	48	Extra Large
Large	40	50	50	2X Extra Large
Extra Large	42	52	52	3X Extra Large

*Hint: Just subtract 10 from the European shirt and pant sizes to get the American size.

Men's Dress Shirt Sizes

General US Size	American	European	Italian	General Italian Size
2X Extra Small	14.5	37	37	Small
Extra Small	15	38	38	Medium
Small	15.5	39	39	Large
Medium	15.8	40	40	Extra Large
Large	16	41	41	2X Extra Large
Extra Large	17	42	42	3X Extra Large

Men's Suit Sizes

General US Size	American	European	Italian	General Italian Size
2X Extra Small	36	48	48	Small
Extra Small	38	50	50	Medium
Small	40	52	52	Large
Medium	42	54	54	Extra Large
Large	44	56	56	2X Extra Large
Extra Large	46	58	58	3X Extra Large

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com



Shopping on via Gesù, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - More Irregular Plural Nouns

There are a few more simple rules for plural nouns and adjectives that we should note here, as many words with irregular plurals will be encountered when talking about places and things found in the piazza.

For instance, in some situations, Italian nouns will be invariable and will not change their endings in the plural. The nouns that fall into this category are those with an accent on the last syllable and words borrowed from other languages that end in a consonant. Only the definite article will change, as usual, according to the assigned gender of the noun. (See Appendix-1.)

Singular to Plural Invariable Nouns			
la città	the city	becomes	le città
il caffè	the coffee shop	becomes	i caffè
il bar	the coffee bar	becomes	i bar
l' autobus	the bus	becomes	gli autobus
lo sport	the sport	becomes	gli sport

For Italian words that are abbreviated, the definite article will correspond to the ending of the *original*, rather than the abbreviated form of the word. (See Appendix-1)

Singular to Plural Abbreviated Nouns				
(il cinematografo)	il cinema	movie theater/movie	becomes	i cinema
(la fotografia)	la foto	photograph/photo	becomes	le foto
(la motocicletta)	la moto	motorcycle	becomes	le moto

Nouns ending in **–io** most times will be written with just a single **–i** ending in the plural. Rarely, if the stress falls on the original **–i** of the **–io** ending, the plural will change to a double, **-ii** ending. This happens with **lo zio (the uncle),** which is written **gli zii (the uncles).** Again, for conversational Italian, this is something that we will hear, without having to worry about the spelling. The examples follow*:

Singular to Plural Nouns with Unstressed –io Ending			
il fornaio	the shop	becomes	i fornai
il giornalaio	the news kiosk	becomes	i giornalai
il negozio	the shop	becomes	i negozi
il panificio	the bread bakery	becomes	i panifici
l'ufficio	the office	becomes	gli uffici

*Also for the adjective **grigio (gray),** follow the same rule for the plural, which is **grigi**. 10(G)35

Grammar Note - Adverbs of Frequency

Adverbs of frequency describe how often something happens or is happening. Many of these words have already been used **quite often (abbastanza spesso)** in our dialogues and in the "Important Phrases" sections. They are listed from their description of the least to most frequent happening below:

mai	never
quasi mai	almost never
qualche volta	sometimes
di solito	often times/usually
spesso*	often, frequently, repeatedly
abbastanza spesso	quite often
molto spesso	very often, time and time again
quasi sempre	almost always
sempre	always
per sempre	forever (lit. for always)

Two additional adverbs, **appena (just, just now, recently, as soon as)** and **già (already, by now, formerly)**, are very useful words to remember to add a bit of detail about when something has happened. They are often confused due to their similar meanings, and possibly also because in English the words **appena** and "already" start with the "ah" sound and the words **gia** and "just" start with the "j" sound. Try to remember that it is actually the opposite of what (may) sound natural at first!

Please note that **già** is always placed *before* both verbs and adjectives; **appena** follows the usual rules for adverbs, however, and is place *after verbs* but *before adjectives*.

già fatto	already done
già in giro	already out and about
Sono appena le sei di mattina.	It is just 6 in the morning.
vedere appena	barely see
appena possibile	as soon as possible.
appena in tempo	just in time

***Spesso** can also mean **thick** or **dense**, as in a wall, and can also mean **a tax applied when voting**.

10(G)36

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Introduction to the Demonstrative Adjectives **Questo** and **Quello**

Questo and **quello** are called demonstrative adjectives. They mean **this** and **that,** and are used to point out a person or thing that is near to the speaker – **this** – or far from the speaker – **that**. For emphasis, it is proper in Italian to use the phrase, **"questo qui,"** for **"this here"** or, **"quello la,"** for **"that there."** In English, however, it is considered redundant and poor form to use these words together.*

The plural forms of **questo** and **quello** mean **these** and **those**. For the Italian, both the singular and plural forms must agree with the feminine and masculine forms of the nouns they modify.

Grammar Note - Feminine Demonstrative Adjectives **Questa** and **Quella**

The feminine demonstrative adjectives **questa (this)** and **quella (that)** have endings that follow our usual gender rules. Both have the usual **–a** ending for the feminine singular that changes to an **–e** ending in the plural, to make **queste (these)** and **quelle (those)**.

It should be noted that, *if the singular feminine noun modified begins with a vowel*, the usual **–a** ending of **questa** or **quella** can be dropped. The adjective and noun are then combined with an apostrophe in order to make conversation flow more smoothly. Unfortunately, there is no hard and fast rule for when to drop the **–a** ending and when to keep it. As usual, listening to the language as it is spoken by a native is the best and most natural way to pick up these phrases. Here are a few examples:

Questa – Singular to Plural				
questa casa	this house	goes to	these houses	queste case
questa amica	this girlfriend	goes to	these girlfriends	queste amiche
quest'altra	this other	goes to	these other	queste altre

Quella – Singular to Plural				
quella casa	that house	goes to	those houses	quelle case
quella amica	that girlfriend	goes to	those girlfriends	quelle amiche
quell'altra	that other	goes to	those other	quelle altre

*In these last two phrases, **questo** and **quello** are not followed by a noun, and so are technically pronouns, rather than adjectives… not to worry for now about these different labels, though.

10(G)37

Grammar Note – Masculine Demonstrative Adjective
Questo

The masculine demonstrative adjective **questo (this)** uses the usual **–o** ending for the masculine singular, which changes to an **–i** ending for the masculine plural and becomes **questi (these)**.

Notice that *if the singular masculine noun to be modified begins with a vowel*, the usual **–o** ending of **questo** will be dropped and the words combined with an apostrophe to make conversation flow more smoothly.

Questo – Singular to Plural				
questo giorno	this day	goes to	these days	questi giorni
quest'amico	this friend(male)	goes to	these friends (male)	questi amici

Grammar Note – Masculine Demonstrative Adjective
Quello

The masculine demonstrative adjective **quello (that)** does not follow our usual gender rules, but instead follows the rules for the definite article "the" when it precedes a noun. The word **quello** itself follows the rule for the definite article **lo**, and is only used before *the singular form of Italian masculine nouns that begin with* ***s + consonant, z, ps, gn*** *or* ***pn***. This is similar to another adjective that ends in **-lo, bello,** that we encountered way back in Chapter 2!

Quel (that) is used to modify *all singular masculine nouns that begin with a consonant*, except for those noted in the last paragraph. An apostrophe and an additional letter **–l** are added, to make **quell' (that)** *for singular masculine nouns that begin with a vowel*.

For the plural masculine forms of **quello,** the usual **–i** ending is used for plural masculine nouns that begin with a consonant, to make **quei (those)**. The word **quegli (those)** is used for plural masculine nouns that begin with **s + consonant, z, ps, gn** or **pn,** and all vowels…This is not as complicated as it seems, as again, we are following the same rules as for the masculine definite article. The summary table is below:

Quello – Singular to Plural				
quel giorno	that day	goes to	those days	quei giorni
quell'amico	that friend	goes to	those friends	quegli amici
quello zio	that uncle	goes to	those uncles	quegli zii

10(G)38

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - Verbs that Take **A** + Infinitive

Some Italian verbs need to be followed by the Italian word **a,** which in this case means **to,** before the addition of an infinitive verb to make a complete sentence. This may seem a little redundant at first, since in English a verb in its infinitive form already includes the word "to." To the Italian speaker, though, it is natural to insert the word **a** after the verbs on the list that follows – the phrases just sound correct this way. Remember our important phrases **"andare a trovare"** and **"venire a trovare"** that mean **"to go/to come to visit,"** that are used to refer to visiting a person? Don't memorize this list, but instead try to listen for the **"a"** when these phrases come up, and soon it will become natural for you, also, to say these phrases correctly.

aiutare	to help	Aiuto mia mamma *a...* cucinare la cena.
andare	to go	Mamma va *a...* fare la spesa.ogni settimana.
cominciare	to start	Comincio *a...* cucinare la cena.
divertirsi	to enjoy onself	Mi divertito *a...* suonare il violino.
imparare	to learn	Tutti imparano *a...* parlare italiano.
insegnare	to teach	Lei insegna *a...* parlare la lingua francese.
invitare	to invite	Lui l'invita *a...* mangiare al ristorante.
mandare	to send	Io mando Pietro *a...* prendere una pizza.
prepararsi	to get ready	Mi preparo *a...* viaggiare in Italia.
venire	to come	Caterina viene *a...* trovare i suoi cugini.

Present Tense - First Conjugation
Irregular Verb **Fare**

The translation of the irregular verb **fare** is **to do** or **to make**. This short, simple verb comes up often in conversation. See the many uses for this verb under "Idiomatic Expressions" at the end of this chapter. Remember that the root will change in all but the **lei/lui** and **voi** forms, with the letter **f** left as the stem for these regular forms. Try to memorize all forms and have them readily available for use!

Fare – to do/to make		
io	faccio	I do/make
tu	fai	you (familiar) do/make
Lei/lei/lui	fa	you (polite) she/he does/makes
noi	facciamo	we do/make
voi	fate	you all do/make
loro	fanno	they do/make

10(V)57

Present Tense – Reflexive and Indirect Object Pronouns for Reference to Clothing and the Body

In Chapter 9, we reviewed the three types of pronouns – reflexive, direct object, and indirect object – and discussed how each type of pronoun is used in phrases that are important for friendly introductions. By using these pronouns, we are now forming more complex Italian sentences, and must really learn to think in Italian!

An additional situation when the Italian pronouns are used comes up with reference to clothing, as you've no doubt noted from our last dialogue. Italian uses the reflexive verb **mettersi (to put on onself)** to convey the ideas of, "I put on the dress," "I put on my dress," and "I put my dress on." The reflexive pronoun **mi (myself)** is placed *before* the conjugated form of **mettersi,** as usual, and the article of clothing to be put on is then placed *after* the verb. The subject pronoun is omitted. So, when Caterina goes to try on her dress in our dialogue, she says, **"Mi metto il vestito."** Just remember the simple phrase **"mi metto"** and replace **vestito** with the article of clothing of your choice to describe your own action! To describe action in the **tu (you)** form, use **"ti metti."**

(Io) Mi metto il vestito.	I put on the dress./I put the dress on./I put on my dress.
(Tu) Ti metti l'anello.	You put on the ring.

Also, remember how we learned about the verb **stare** way back in Chapter 6, and mentioned that **stare** is used to describe how clothing looks on someone? Well, to tell someone, "It looks good on you!" follow this simple method: Conjugate **stare** into the third person, or "it" form, **sta,** and then place *an indirect object pronoun before* the verb. This is easier than it sounds, since for routine conversational use of the **io** and **tu** forms, Italian words we already know – **mi** and **ti** – are again used. **Mi** means both **me** and **to me,** and **ti** means both **you** and **to you;** the same Italian words are used for both direct and indirect object pronouns for the **io** and **tu** forms. So, when Francesca told Caterina in our dialogue, **"Ti sta bene,"** she was saying, literally, **"To you, it stays well,"** with the meaning, **"It looks good on you."** To ask someone if an article of clothing you are wearing looks good, use, **"Mi sta bene?"** If clothing looks really wonderful on someone, reply, **"Ti sta benissimo!"**

Mi sta bene?	Does it (article of clothing) look good on me?
Ti sta bene.	It looks good on you.
Ti sta benissimo!	It looks wonderful on you!

Finally, the expression **"va bene"** that we have come to know so well by now is also used to describe how an article of clothing fits on a person. If it fits well, say, **"Va bene."** If not, **"Non va bene,"** as Caterina does in our last dialogue to describe a dress that did not fit her well. 10(V)58

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense – Reflexive and Indirect Object Pronouns for Reference to Clothing and the Body (cont'd)

The reflexive and indirect object pronouns are also essential when describing how we feel. For instance, the reflexive verb **sentirsi (to feel)** is used to describe feeling **well (bene)** with the phrase, **"Mi sento bene."** Or, if you are feeling **badly (male),** the phrase can be changed a little bit into, **"Mi sento male."** The subject pronoun **io** is left out of these phrases.

(Io) Mi sento bene.	I feel well.
(Io) Non mi sento bene.	I do not feel well.
(Io) Mi sento male.	I feel badly.

With use of the verb **fare,** we come across an example of how the indirect object pronouns are used with reference to a particular part of the body feeling badly. In order to describe a headache, for instance, the phrase would be, **"Mi fa male la testa."** The literal translation is, **"To me, the head is hurting,"** but the correct English would be, **"I have a headache."**

Sound confusing? Well, if we think in Italian, we find that describing what part of the body hurts us is actually quite easy. In the examples below we use the same phrase, **"Mi fa male,"** over and over again, substituting the different parts of the body that are hurting in each case, of course! Just remember that if more than one part of the body is hurting (like both feet, for instance) to change the verb to the plural **fanno.**

Mi fa male la testa.	My head hurts.
Mi fa male la gola.	My throat hurts.
Mi fa male lo stomaco.	My stomach hurts.
Mi fa male la schiena.	My back hurts.
Mi fanno male i piedi.	My feet hurt/ache.

One last comment about those parts of the body that can be hurting to us; the verb **avere** can also be used to describe discomfort or the feeling of sickness when combined with the phrase, **"il mal di."** The definite article **il** is used in the phrase for emphasis, rather than the equivalent of the English "a." Examples follow, but hopefully you will be able to enjoy your trip to Italy without having to use any of these phrases!

Ho il mal di testa.	I have a headache.
Ho il mal di gola.	I have pain in my throat.
Ho il mal di stomaco.	I have a stomach ache.
Ho il mal di schiena.	I have a backache.
Ho il mal di mare.	I have seasickness/feel seasick.

10(V)59

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Irregular Verb **Piacere**

Piacere literally means **to like** as in "to be pleasing to." It is the verb that Italians use when they want to express the idea that they **like something**. In English, when we want say we like something, we mention two things – what thing is being liked, and by whom. So, in English, we would say, "**I like the car**," and fulfill these two requirements with the subject pronoun "I" and the direct object "car." But, in Italian, the indirect object is used instead of the direct object, to describe *to whom* the thing is liked, or pleasing to. If we wanted to change-up this same English phrase into the Italian way of thinking, we could say, **"The car is pleasing to me."** You will hopefully find this mixed Italianized-English phrase, "is pleasing to" to be very helpful to understand how **piacere** really works!

The tricky thing about this type of phrase in Italian is that the conjugation of **piacere** will have to *agree with the number of things* that are being liked.

So, if one thing is liked, or an infinitive verb follows, **piace** is used.
If many things are liked, **piacciono** is used.

Italians then put the indirect object pronoun **(mi, ti, Le, le, gli, ci, vi,** or **gli)** *before* the verb, at the beginning of the sentence, to denote *to whom the thing is pleasing to*.

Piace –to be pleasing to: if one thing is liked / before infinitive verbs		
Mi piace il vestito.	The dress is pleasing to me.	I like the dress.
Ti piace il vestito.	The dress is pleasing to you. (fam.)	You like the dress.
Le piace il vestito. Gli/le piace il vestito.	The dress is pleasing to you. (pol.) The dress is pleasing to him/her.	You like the dress. He/she likes the dress
Ci piace il vestito.	The dress is pleasing to us.	We like the dress.
Vi piace il vestito.	The dress is pleasing to you all.	You all like the dress.
Gli piace il vestito.	The dress is pleasing to them.	They like the dress.

Piacciono – to be pleasing to: if more than one thing is liked		
Mi piacciono i vestiti.	The dresses are pleasing to me.	I like the dresses.
Ti piacciono i vestiti.	The dresses are pleasing to you. (fam.)	You like the dresses.
Le piacciono i vestiti. Gli/le piacciono i vestiti.	The dresses are pleasing to you. (pol) The dresses are pleasing to him/her.	You like the dresses. He/she likes the dresses.
Ci piacciono i vestiti.	The dresses are pleasing to us.	We like the dresses.
Vi piacciono i vestiti.	The dresses are pleasing to you all.	You all like the dresses.
Gli piacciono i vestiti.	The dresses are pleasing to them.	They like the dresses.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 10

Infinitive Present	Reflexive Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	mi	o	o	o	isco
tu	ti	i	i	i	isci
Lei/lei/lui	si	a	e	e	isce
noi	ci	iamo	iamo	iamo	iamo
voi	vi	ate	ete	ite	ite
loro	si	ano	ono	ono	iscono

Infinitive Imperative	Direct Object Pronouns	-are	-ere	-ire	ire (isco)
io	mi			*	****
tu	ti	a(!)	i(!)	i(!)	isci(!)
Lei/lei/lui	La/la/lo	*	*	*	****
noi	ci	iamo(!)	iamo(!)	iamo(!)	iamo(!)
voi	vi	ate(!)	ete(!)	ite(!)	ite(!)
loro	le/li	***	***	***	******

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Essere Imperative	Avere (to have)	Avere Imperative
io	sono		ho	
tu	sei	sii	hai	abbi
Lei/lei/lui	è	***	ha	***
noi	siamo	siamo	abbiamo	abbiamo
voi	siete	siate	avete	abbiate
loro	sono	****	hanno	****

Present Tense Verb Tables for Chapter 10 (cont'd)

Irregular Verbs	Sedersi (to sit down)	Dare (to give)	Fare (to do)
io	mi siedo	do	faccio
tu	ti siedi	dai	fai
Lei/lei/lui	si siede	dà	fa
noi	ci sediamo	diamo	facciamo
voi	vi sedete	date*	fate
loro	si siedono	danno	fanno

Irregular Imperative Verbs	Direct Object Pronouns	andare (to go)	dare (to give)	dire (to say)	fare (to do make)	stare (to be stay)
io	mi					
tu	ti	và,vai	dà,dai	di	fà,fai	stà,stai
Lei/lei/lui	La/la/lo	***	***	***	***	***
noi	ci	andiamo	diamo	diciamo	facciamo	stiamo
voi	vi	andate	date	dite	fate	state
loro	le/li	****	****	****	****	****

Irregular Verbs	Indirect Object Pronouns	Piacere (to be pleasing to)
io	mi	******
tu	ti	*****
Lei/lei/lui	Le/le/gli	piace
noi	ci	******
voi	vi	******
loro	gli	piacciono

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - **Fare**

Many idiomatic expressions use the verb **fare,** which, as we have learned, means either **to do** or **to make.** In the last chapter, we concentrated on the different ways to ask others about the work they do in Italian. We can also use **fare** to ask about what someone does for a living. The reply can also use **fare,** along with the definite article **(il, lo, la, l')** before the profession.

A little note about this, though. In Italy, it can be considered rude to ask someone's occupation right after you have met them. This information is usually comes up naturally in conversation, and most often is volunteered by the speaker. But, here are some phrases you may hear if someone does ask directly what you do:

Che lavoro fai?	What work (do) (you fam.) do?
Faccio la dentista.	I am a dentist. (lit. I make work as a dentist.)

Here are some common expressions that use **fare** with the meaning of **to do:**

Ho molto da fare.	I am busy/have many (things) to do.
Ho altro da fare.	I have other (things) to do.
Ho niente da fare.	I have nothing to do.
Non so cosa fare.	I don't know what (thing) to do.
Facciamo cosi!	Let's do (it) like this!
Che cosa posso fare per te?	What can I do for you?
Fai come vuoi.	You (fam.) do as you want.

Not all expressions use the literal meaning of **fare,** though, but instead stretch the meaning a bit; **fare** can be used with the meanings of **to take**, **to pretend, to act, to cost, to say, to meet,** or, in its reflexive form as **farsi,** when the meaning is **to become.**

Faccio la doccia/il bagno.	I take a shower/bath.
Facccio il pisolino.	I take a nap.
Faccio il malato.	I pretend to be sick.
Fa lo spiritoso.	He/she is being funny.
Fare da insegnante.	To act as the teacher.
Quanto fa?	How much (does) it cost?
Fa dieci euro.	It costs 10 euro.
La mucca fa "moo."	The cow says/goes "moo."
Lei fa "ha ha."	She says/goes "ha ha."
Facciamo alle otto.	Let's make it/do (it) at 8.
(Si) fa tardi.	It's (becoming/getting) late.
(Si) fa buio.	It's (becoming/getting) dark.

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - **Fare** (cont'd - 2)

We have seen in the dialogue for this chapter that, while Americans use the simple phrase "go shopping," for any shopping that they do, Italians often **"go *to do* the shopping,"** with the expression **"andare *a fare* la spesa."** This interesting expression refers only to **grocery shopping**. A phrase denoting the location of the shopping, such as **"al supermercato" ("at the supermarket")** can be used to complete the sentence. In most cases, the place to obtain groceries is known by both speakers, and so the actual place is omitted.

If one is going to shop for non – grocery items, there are several phrases that can be used. **"Fare spese"** is similar to the phrase we have just learned for grocery shopping, but instead means **"to go shopping for clothes, shoes, or other personal items,"** usually in the piazza or shopping district in town known to the speakers. Two phrases can be used for **shopping in general**, for any purchase: **"fare compere"** and **"fare acquisti."** A very popular phrase in Italy today that can be used for any type of shopping is simply **"fare shopping!"**

Otherwise, to shop for a specific item, use **"andare a comprare"** and mention what you are going to buy; for instance, complete this phrase with the word **vestiti** for **clothes**, like Caterina did in our dialogue.

Here is a summary of these Italian phrases, using the **io** form:

Vado a fare la spesa.	I go to do the (grocery) shopping. I go to do some (grocery) shopping.
Faccio la spesa al supermercato.	I do the (grocery) shopping at the supermarket.
Faccio la spesa alla drogheria.	I do the (grocery) shopping at the drugstore/pharmacy.
Faccio la spesa in farmacia.	I do the (grocery) shopping at the drugstore/pharmacy.
Vado a fare spese.	I go to do the shopping. (for personal articles)
Faccio spese.	I do the shopping.
Vado a comprare vestiti.	I go to buy clothes.
Vado a fare compere.	I go to do the shopping. (for any purchase)
Faccio compere.	I do the shopping.
Vado a fare acquisti.	I go to do the shopping. (for any purchase)
Faccio acquisti.	I do the shopping.
Faccio shopping.	I go shopping. (to look for non-grocery items)
Faccio shopping di vestiti.	I go shopping for clothes.

10(IE)20

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions – **Fare** (cont'd - 3)

There are many other expressions related to going and doing something that use **fare,** with the translation of **to take,** as below. You can precede these expressions with, **"vado a"** for, **"I go to,"** if you like, before adding the infinitive form of **fare.**

Vado a fare un giro in macchina.	I go to take a drive in the car.
Faccio un giro in macchina.	I take a drive.
Faccio una passeggiata.	I take a walk.
Faccio due passi.	I take a short stroll. (lit. I take two steps.)
Faccio un salto da Maria.	I drop by (lit. take a hop over to) Maria's.
Faccio un viaggio.	I take a trip.

And, here are a few more expressions that use **fare.** The first two groups of phrases are useful for tourists who want help taking a picture of their favorite location or making a telephone call. If you can learn to use the verb **fare** in the expressions in this section, you will have really learned to think in Italian!

Faccio una foto.*	I take a picture.
Posso fare una foto?	May I take a picture?
Mi può fare una foto?	Could you take a picture of/for me?

Faccio una telefonata.	I make a telephone call.
Posso fare una telefonata?	May I make a telephone call?
Mi può fare una telefonata?	Could you make a telephone call for me?

Faccio la dieta.	I am on (making) a diet.
Fa pure!	Go ahead!
Non ho ancora fatto.	I have not yet done.
Facciamo sport.	We are playing sports.

Fa lo stesso.	It's all the same.
Non fa niente!	It's nothing/It doesn't matter/never mind!

Fammi pensare.	Let me think.
Mi fa schifo!	It is disgusting to me!

***From the Italian **la fotografia.**

10(IE)21



Kiosk on Isola Pescatore, Lago Maggiore

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - **Fare** and Mathematics

While we are on the subject of expressions that use **fare,** it should be noted, mostly for completeness sake, that mathematical expressions use **fare** when expressed in words. Here are examples for addition, subtraction, and multiplication.

Quanto è cinque più cinque?	What is five plus five?
Cinque più cinque fa dieci.	Five plus five makes ten.
5 + 5 = 10	

Quanto è dieci meno cinque?	What is ten minus five?
Dieci meno cinque fa cinque.	Ten minus five makes five.
10 – 5 = 5	

Quanto fa cinque per cinque?	What makes (is) five times five?
Cinque per cinque fa venticinque.	Five times five makes twenty five.
5 X 5 = 25	

10(N)8



Florence
Coffee Bar and Osteria

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 11 – At the Coffee Shop
Dialogue

After shopping, Francesca and Caterina meet Francesca's friend, **Anna (Ann),** at Anna's favorite coffee bar to have lunch. Francesca describes their morning to Anna, using the **passato prossimo** form of the past tense. The girls also use familiar command forms, and even the future tense in this dialogue. Can you find all of these different tenses?

While the girls are catching up on the happenings of the day, the man at the next table in the bar comes over to introduce himself to them. It turns out that he has seen Anna before and is interested in getting to know her better. Anna is also interested. They make a date to meet again, and the girls compliment Anna on her good fortune.

Anna *(a Francesca e Caterina):*
(to Frances and Kathy):
Ciao! Come state?
Hi! How are you all?

Francesca: Stiamo bene. Tu ricordi la cugina di Pietro, Caterina?
(We) are well. You (fam.) remember Peter's cousin, Kathy

Anna: Si. Ho avuto sentito molte buone cose su Caterina. Piacere di conoscerti.
Yes. (I) have heard many good things about Kathy. (lit. (I) have had much good news/information about Kathy.) Pleasure to meet you (fam.).

Caterina: Piacere mio.
The pleasure (is) mine.

Anna: Sediamoci e riposiamoci un po'. Allora. Ecco la cameriera.
Let's sit (ourselves) down and let's relax (ourselves) a little bit. (command)
Now. Here is the waitress.

La cameriera: Cosa desiderate? *(ad* Anna):* Ciao, Anna! Dimmi!
What would (you all) like (wish)?
(to Anna): Hi, Anna! Tell me! (fam. command)

Anna: Vogliamo tre espressi e tre panini al prosciutto e formaggio.
(We) want three espressos and three ham and cheese sandwiches.

La cameriera: Molto bene. Un momento.
Very well. One moment. 11(Vo)47

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 11 – At the Coffee Shop
Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Anna: Che cosa avete fatto stamattina?
What did you all do (have (you all) done) this morning?

Francesca: Abbiamo comprato vestiti. Caterina ha comprato un bel vestito nero e una gonna rossa.

(We) bought clothes. Kathy bought a beautiful black dress and a red skirt.

Anna: Ah… in quale negozio ha comprato queste cose?
Ah… in which store did (she) buy (has (she) bought) these things?

Francesca: Il negozio si chiama Paulina in via Vittor Pisani.
The store named Paulina on Vittor Pisani Street.

Anna: Un negozio carino. E tu, Francesca, non hai comprato niente?
A cute store. And you (fam.), Frances, (you fam.) did not buy (have not bought) anything?

Francesca: No, niente per me oggi… Guarda! Quell'uomo sta guardando te, Anna.
No nothing for me today... Look! (fam.command)
That man is looking at you, Anna.

Anna: È bello. Ti piace, Francesca?
(He) is handsome. (Do) you like him, Frances? (lit. Is he pleasing to you?)

Francesca: Si, mi piace. Ma io sono sposata. Lo conosci?
Yes, I like him. (lit. to me he is pleasing) But I am married.
(Do) (you fam.) know him?

Anna: Forse… dall'università. Che bel viso… e che spalle larghe!
Maybe... from the university. What a nice face and
how well-built he looks! (lit. what wide shoulders he has)

11(Vo)48

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life

Chapter 11 – At the Coffee Shop

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

(Giovanni si dirige verso le donne.)
(John heads (himself) over to the women.)

Giovanni: Buona sera, signorine. Scusate, posso sedermi con voi?
Good evening, young ladies. (Will you all) Excuse (me), may I sit with you all?

Anna: Buona sera. Accomodati!
Good evening. Make yourself (fam. command) comfortable!

Giovanni: Tre belle amiche. Io sono Giovanni. E voi?
Three pretty girlfriends. I am John. And you all (are)?

Anna: Mi chiamo Anna. Questa è Francesca, e lei è la cugina di suo marito dall'America.

My name is Ann. This is Frances, and she is her husband's cousin (lit. the cousin of her husband) from America.

Giovanni: Piacere di conoscervi. Anna, credo che ci siamo già visiti. Ci siamo mai incontrati in questo bar prima?

Pleasure to meet you all. Ann, (I) believe we have already met (seen) each other. Have (we) ever met each other in this bar before?

Anna: Forse. Mi piace questo posto. È vicino all'univeristà. Lavori qui vicino?
Maybe. I like this place. (lit. This place is pleasing to me.) It is near the university. (Do) (you fam.) work around here?

Giovanni: Si. Lavoro alla facoltà di ingengneria. Sono professore.
Yes, (I) work in the engineering department. (I) am (a) professor.

Francesca: Conosci l'ingegnere Rossi?
(Do) (you fam.) know (the) engineer Rossi?

Giovanni: Si, conosco Rossi molto bene.
Yes. (I) know Rossi very well.

Francesca: Mio marito è professore d'italiano, ed* è amico dell'ingegnere Rossi.
My husband is (a) professor of Italian, and is (a) friend of engineer Rossi.

11(Vo)49

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 11 – At the Coffee Shop
Dialogue (cont'd - 4)

Giovanni: Quanto è piccolo il mondo! Anna, tu - che fai?
What a small world! (lit. How small is the world!)
Ann, you (fam.) – what (do) (you fam.) do?

Anna: Io sono una studentessa. Studio arte all'università.
I am a student. (I) study art at the university.

Giovanni: Interessante... *(Lui guarda il suo orologio.)* Accidenti! Sono le tre!
Devo correre ora. Forse sarò qui domani, alle due.

Interesting... *(He looks at his watch.)* Darn! It's 3 o'clock!
(I) must run now. Perhaps (I) will be here tomorrow, at 2 (PM).

Giovanni *(ad Anna):* Perché non ci incontriamo qui e beviamo un caffé, parliamo, e poi facciamo una passaggiata... Va bene?

(to Ann): Why don't (we) meet each other here and drink (a) coffee, talk, and then take a walk... Sound good?

Anna: Si, domani alle due va bene.
Yes, tomorrow at two is good.

Giovanni: Allora, ci vediamo domani... Ciao ragazze!
(Well, alright) then, we'll see each other tomorrow... Bye girls!

Tutti: Ciao!
Bye!

Francesca: Anna, lui sembra bravo, bello, intelligente, speciale...
Anna, he seems (like) a good person, good-looking, smart, special...

Caterina: E ha un viso bellissimo!
And (he) has a very handsome face!

Anna: Si, mi piace molto!
Yes, (I) like him a lot!

*To make conversation flow more smoothly, add the letter **-d** to **a (to/at)** or **e (and)** to make **"ad"** or **"ed,"** when each is followed by a word that begins with the same vowel. 11(Vo)50

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Adjectives of Personality

Here is a list of positive human characteristics for your best friend or true love:

bravo(a)	upright/well-behaved/talented	intelligente	intelligent/smart
buono(a)	good		
bello(a)	good-looking/handsome/pretty		
felice	happy	saggio(a)	wise
allegro(a)	cheerful	raffinato(a)	refined
gentile	nice/kind/polite	dolce	sweet
piacevole	agreeable	carino(a)	pretty/cute
simpatico(a)	likeable/friendly	bello(a)	handsome/beautiful
onesto(a)	honest	diverso(a)	different
sincero(a)	sincere	speciale	special

Italians often use these terms of endearment for their female love. Listen closely and you can hear these phrases in the movies!

cucciola mia	my little puppy (to a female)
cucciolo mio	my little puppy (to a male)
tesoro mio	my treasure (to a woman or a man)
stella mia	my star (to a woman or a man)

And, now for some negative human characteristics that one may encounter:

cattivo(a)	bad/mean	stupido(a)	stupid
triste	sad	sciocco(a)	silly
arrabiato(a)	angry	pazzo(a)	crazy
scortese	rude	matto(a)	crazy
crudele	cruel	brutto(a)	ugly
antipatico(a)	disagreeable/nasty	noioso(a)	boring
falso(a)	dishonest/fake	pigro(a)	lazy
bugiardo(a)	liar	vigliacco(a)	coward

11(Vo)51



La Scala Opera House Museum and Caffè, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Making Friends

So, now you are in Italy, and have decided to stay for awhile. You may meet someone you want to get to know better. What to say to them to "break the ice"? Or, maybe you are just trying to enjoy a coffee, and someone introduces themselves. What to say if you are interested? Here are some well-known pick-up lines translated into Italian (some just for fun and others more serious) and some replies – if you are interested – or not!

Let's get to know one another:

Scusa…	Excuse me… (familiar)
Credo che ci siamo già visiti prima?	Haven't we seen (already met) each other before?
…da qualche parte?	…around here?
Penso di conoscerti già.	I think that I've met you before.
Hai degli occhi molto belli!	You have beautiful eyes!
Tu hai il viso della Madonna.	You have a beautiful face. (lit. the face of Mother Mary)
Che cosa fai…	What are you doing…
…per il resto della tua vita?	…for the rest of your life?

Or, a little less flowery:

È libero questo posto?	Is this seat free?
Ti dispiace se mi siedo qui?	Would you mind if I sit here?
Posso sedermi con te?	May I sit with you?
Ti piace questo posto?	Do you like this place?
Ti stai divertendo?	Are you enjoying yourself?
Con chi sei?	Who are you with?
Sono da sola(o).	I am alone (female/male).
Sono con un'amica/un amico.	I am with a friend. (female friend/male friend)
Sto aspettando qualcuno.	I am waiting for someone.
Sei sposata(o)?	Are you married? (to female/male)
Sei single?*	Are you single?
Sei divorziata(o)?	Are you divorced? (to female/male)
Cosa prendi?	What are you having?
Posso offrirti qualcosa da bere?	May I offer (to) you something to drink?
Vuoi qualcosa da bere?	Do you want something to drink?
Vuoi qualcosa da mangiare?	Do you want something to eat?
Vuoi fare una passeggiata?	Do you want to go for a walk?

*Although the English word **single** is commonly used in spoken Italian, the words used on official Italian forms for **single** are **nubile** for a **woman** and **celibe** for a **man**. 11(IP)39

Important Phrases - Making Friends (cont'd - 2)

Let's get together… This is a good time to memorize those Italian prepositions!

Perché non ci vediamo?	Let's get together. (lit. Why don't we get together/see each other?)
Posso avere il tuo…	May I have your….
numero di telefono?	telephone number?
indirizzo email?	email address?
Hai tempo domani?	Do you have time tomorrow?
Posso rivederti domani?	May I see you again tomorrow?
Sei libera(o) domani,	Are you free (to female/male) tomorrow,
domani sera,	tomorrow night,
la settimana prossima?	next week?
Vuoi andare al ristorante?	Do you want to go to a restaurant?
al bar?	Do you want to go to a (coffee) bar?
al caffé?	Do want to go to a cafe?
in pizzeria?	Do you want to go to a pizzeria?
Posso invitarla/ti a cena?	May I invite you (pol.)/(fam.) to dinner?
Ti piacerebbe/Vuoi…	Would you like to/Do you want to…
andare in piazza?	go to the piazza?
andare in chiesa?	go to church?
andare al cinema?	go to the movies?
andare al concerto?	go to the concert?
andare allo spettacolo?	go to the show (performance)?
andare alla mostra?	go to the show (exhibit)?
andare al museo?	go to the museum?
andare a ballare?	go dancing?
Ti piacerebbe/Vuoi …	Would you like to/Do you want to…
venire con noi…	come with us…
in spiaggia / al mare?	to the beach / to the sea?
in montagna?	to the mountains?
in campagna?	to the countryside?

And the answer is… no (politely)!

Mi dispiace, ma…	I am sorry, but…
domani non posso.	I can't tomorrow.
domani non va bene.	tomorrow is not good.
Ho molto (lavoro) da fare.	I have a lot (of work) to do.
Sono occupata(o) domani sera.	I am busy (female/male) tomorrow night.
Ho un altro impegno.	I have another commitment.
Ho un altro appuntamento.	I have another appointment.
Ho un ragazzo/una ragazza.	I have a boyfriend (girlfriend).
Ho un fidanzato/una fidanzata.	I have a boyfriend/fiancé (girlfriend/fiancée).

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Making Friends (cont'd - 3)

If you need to leave someone's company because you are not feeling well...

Non mi sento bene.	I don't feel well.
Sono molto stanca(o).	I am very tired. (female/male)
Ho (un gran) mal di testa.	I have (a severe/bad) headache.
Non sono sicura(o) se posso...	I am not sure (female/male) if I can...
Chiamami più tardi/domani.	Call me a little later/tomorrow.
Devo (proprio) andare adesso.	I (really) have to go now.
Vorrei tornare a casa.	I want to go back home.

And the answer is... no (not so politely)!

Ho di meglio da fare.	I have better things to do.
Lasciami in pace!	Leave me in peace!
Lasciami stare!	Leave me alone! (lit. Leave me be!)
Vai, cammina!	Go, (take) a walk!
Vai via!	Go away!

And the answer is... yes!

Penso di si.	I think so.
Si, sono libera(o).	Yes, I am free (female/male).
È stato molto gentile a invitarmi.	It was very nice (of you polite) to invite me.
È molto gentile.	That is very nice (of you polite).
Che bell'idea!	What a wonderful idea!
Che bello!	How nice!
Mi piacerebbe molto.	I would like (it) very much.
Volentieri!	I'd love to! (lit. certainly, gladly)
Dove ci incontriamo?	Where should we meet (each other)?
Posso venire a prenderla/ti?	Can I pick you (pol.)/(fam.) up? (lit. get you)
A che ora posso venire a prenderti?	At what time can I pick you (fam.) up?
La vengo a prendere alle otto.	I (will) come to pick you (pol.) up at 8 (o'clock).
Vengo a prenderti alle otto.	I (will) come to pick you (fam.) up at 8 (o'clock).
La/Ti chiamerò alle otto.	I will call you (pol./fam.) at 8 (o'clock).
Ci vediamo al ristorante.	We (will) see each other at the restaurant.
Ci vediamo al bar.	We (will) see each other in the bar.
Non vedo l'ora di vederti!	I can't wait to see you! (idiomatic expression)
La ringrazio molto.	(I) thank you very much. (polite)
Ti ringrazio molto.	(I) thank you very much. (familiar)

11(IP)41

Cultural Note - Italian Coffees

Italian-style **coffee,** or **espresso,** has become so popular in America today that confronting the list of coffees available in an Italian bar may not be as intimidating as it once was. The list of specialty coffees offered by a coffee bar is usually displayed on a large sign behind the counter, opposite where one stands to place an order. Most Italians pay at the counter and then drink their coffee standing up at the bar, often fairly quickly, before proceeding on to their next appointment. Space is at a premium all over Italy, and most coffee bars have only a few small tables; so, for the luxury of a seat, the price for the same coffee is slightly more. But, even with the higher fee, as a visitor, it is always nice to sit down at a table with a friend, order from a waiter, and have the coffee and any pastries or sandwiches you may want brought to you. Then, relax and enjoy while watching the world go by!

If you want an Italian coffee, keep in mind that the general "rule" followed by most Italians: **cappuccino** in the mornings, usually before 10 - 11 AM, and **espresso** later in the day. Or, if you like your coffee the American way, order a **caffè americano** any time. Here is a list with a little information about the coffees that Italians – and now Americans – have come to love.

Espresso – **Espresso** means **fast** or **quick**, and refers to the method of brewing the coffee. The classic espresso takes 7 grams of freshly, finely-ground, dark roasted coffee beans, filtered with just the right amount of hot water under high pressure to fill an espresso cup half of the way to the top. There will be a layer of **crema** (foam) on the top as the result of the high pressure those large, gleaming, stainless steel coffee shop machines can generate to make the coffee.

Add sugar, or for a **caffè corretto,** a shot of brandy or one of the other liquors always found on the shelves of coffee bars. For a **caffè lungo,** extra water is added to fill the espresso cup to the top. For a **ristretto,** less water is used for the same amount of coffee grounds, to ¼ of the cup.

Cappuccino - **Cappuccino** is so named because the **milk froth** (schiuma) that tops the drink is reminiscent of the white hood that tops the black habit worn by the Italian Capuchin monks, although now-a-days most Italians ignore this fact and just think of **cappuccino** as a name for the coffee drink! The classic **cappuccino** calls for three equal parts of espresso coffee, milk, and milk froth, and is served in a large coffee cup. The milk froth is traditionally made by steaming low-fat milk with the wand attachment on the espresso machine. Gently stir in some sugar if you like, and sprinkle the froth with cocoa powder, cinnamon or nutmeg. If you want a smaller coffee drink with milk later in the day, foam can be added to an espresso for a speckled drink called **caffè macchiato** that is served in an espresso cup.

11(IP)42

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Common Suffixes of Nouns and Adjectives

The meaning of a noun or adjective can be altered in Italian by attaching particular endings, or suffixes, to the original word. For instance, there are certain endings that can be added to a word in order to emphasize how small or endearing someone or something is. There are also endings that have the opposite effect, and emphasize the largeness of a person or a thing. In this case, the connotation may be positive; for instance, suffixes can be used to emphasize the importance of an individual. In other cases, the connotation is negative if emphasis is given to a characteristic considered to be bad or unflattering.

In theory, these endings can be added to any noun or adjective, but in practice, only certain words are used in this way, so it is best to listen to native speakers and use only words that are familiar to you. Here are some common examples. Simply drop the final vowel of the noun or adjective to be modified, and add the following endings:

The endings **-ino(a)** and **-etto(a)** in Italian render the ideas of **smallness** and **endearment**.

cara	dear	carina	=	cute
casa	house	casetta	=	cute little house
piccolo(a)	small	piccolino(a)	=	very small/cute
povero(a)	poor	poverino(a)	=	poor thing
sorella	sister	sorellina	=	dear little sister

The ending **-one** in Italian renders the idea of **largeness** and **importance**, but can also be used to make a negative trait more prominent as well.

bacio	kiss	bacione	=	big kiss
cena	dinner	cenone	=	big/important dinner
		cenone di Natale		Christmas dinner
		cenone di Capodanno		New Year's Eve dinner
chiacchiera	gossip	chiacchierone	=	gossiper/chatterbox/long-winded
mamma	mama	mammone		mama's boy
naso	nose	nasone	=	big nose
pigro(a)	lazy	pigrone	=	very lazy/couch potato

The endings **-accia** and **-accio** in Italian are negative endings, used to indicate that something or someone is or has become **bad**.

giornata	day	giornataccia	=	bad day
parola	word	parolaccia	=	dirty word
ragazzo	boy	ragazzaccio	=	bad boy
tempo	weather	tempaccio	=	very bad weather

11(G)39

Grammar Note – Cognates
Adjectives Ending in **-oso**

Many adjectives that describe personality traits are cognates that end in **-oso** in Italian, which corresponds to the English **-ous**.

ambizioso(a)	=	ambitious
corragioso(a)	=	courageous
curioso(a)	=	curious
generoso(a)	=	generous
nervoso(a)	=	nervous
spiritoso(a)	=	funny/witty/facetious

Grammar Note - Friendship and More

l'amicizia	friendship
fare amicizia	to make friends
tutti e due/entrambi	both of us
l'amico	the friend (male)
gli amici	the friends (male group or male + female group)
l'amica	the friend (girl)
le amiche	the girlfriends
il mio migliore amico	my best friend*
il mio amico del cuore	my close friend*
l'amore*	love
innamorato(a)*	in love
Mi vuoi bene?	Do you love me/care for me?
Mi ami?*	Do you love me?
Si, ti voglio bene.	Yes, I love you/care for you.
Si, ti amo.*	Yes, I love you.
Ti amerò per sempre.*	I will love you forever.
Voglio stare con te per sempre.	I want to stay with you forever.

*Italians will often refer to many "close friends," but only one person can be a "best friend."
***Use these phrases with the verb **amare** for romantic love. Use the other phrases for family and friends. 11(G)40

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Prepositions that Combine with the Definite Article

Throughout our dialogues, we have been combining prepositions, those small words that mean **at, from, of, in,** and **on (a, da, di, in, su),** with the many forms of the Italian definite article **the (il, lo, la, l', i, gli, le).** The translations state correctly what the combined words mean, but until now we have not discussed how those combinations came about. The table that follows lists all possible combinations of the prepositions with the definite articles. Don't be intimidated! There are simple rules for these changes! For instance, **di** changes to **"de"** and **in** changes to **"ne"** before combining with the definite article,; these forms are given in brown. Also, the letter **–l** needs to be doubled for the **lo, la, l'** and **le** forms. As always, just listen carefully to the new words that are formed!

Prepositions that Combine with the Definite Article

a + art. = at the	da + art. = from the	di + art. = of/from/in the	in + art. = in the	su + art. = on the
a + il = al	da + il = dal	di + il = del	in + il = nel	su + il = sul
a + lo = allo	da + lo = dallo	di + lo = dello	in + lo = nello	su + lo = sullo
a + la = alla	da + la = dalla	di + la = della	in + la = nella	su + la = sulla
a + l' = all'	da + l' = dall'	di + l' = dell'	in + l' = nell'	su + l' = sull'
a + i = ai	da + i = dai	di + i = dei	in + i = nei	su + i = sui
a + gli = agli	da + gli = dagli	di + gli = degli	in + gli = negli	su + gli = sugli
a + le = alle	da + le = dalle	di + le = delle	in + le = nelle	su + le = sulle

The preposition **con,** which means **with** is *occasionally* combined with the definite article (as in **"Madonna col Bambino"** portraits in Italian galleries). The preposition **per,** which means **for,** is used to describe actions that have been completed. For ongoing actions that have started in the past, use the preposition **da.** The prepositions **tra** and **fra** are interchangeable, and also mean **for,** or take the place of **in,** in order to relate a time-frame for a future action. **Per, tra,** and **fra** are *never* combined with the definite article.

Prepositions that Do Not Combine with the Definite Article

con + art. = with the	per + art. = for the	tra + art. = for the/in the (time)	fra + art. = for the/in the (time)
con il/con + il = col	per il	tra il	fra il
con lo	per lo	tra lo	fra lo
con la	per la	tra la	fra la
con l'	per l'	tra l'	fra l'
con i	per i	tra i	in i
con gli	per gli	tra gli	in gli

Grammar Note - Relative Superlatives

Relative superlatives are descriptions that refer to **the most** or **the least,** and are often rendered in English with the ending **-est**. In Italian, the equivalent to **the most** is **il più** or **la più,** for masculine and feminine nouns respectively. The equivalent to **the least** is **il meno** or **la meno.** The relative superlatives *always precede the adjective* they modify.

When the adjective to be modified comes *before the noun*, the relative superlative phrases are used with the definite article, as given above. If the adjective to be modified comes *after the noun*, the definite article **(il, la)** is omitted from the relative superlative phrase. In the second case, the definite article will already be in front of the noun for proper grammar! See the examples below for how this works.

Also, notice that instead of the word **in,** Italians use **di** with comparisons, which is often combined with the definite article, as we have just learned how to do in the last grammar section!

Milano è la più bella città d'Italia.	Milan is the most beautiful city in Italy.
- or -	
Milano è la città più bella d'Italia.	Milan is the city (which is) the most beautiful in Italy.
Caterina è la meno alta della famiglia.	Kathy is the least tall in the family.
Pietro è il piu alto della famiglia.	Peter is the tallest in the family.

Grammar Note - Absolute Superlatives

The absolute superlative ending **–issimo** for adjectives translates into the English word **extremely,** but can also mean **very,** and is also used to convey the idea that something is **really** good, big, etc. Remember from Chapter 6 how **molto bene** and **benissimo** translated into **very well** and **really well?**

The absolute superlative ending of each adjective will change to reflect the gender and number of the noun modified, from **–issimo** to: **-issima, -issimi,** or **-issime.** The last vowel of the adjective is dropped before adding these endings; **buono** will become **buonissimo, grande** will become **grandissimo,** and **bella** will become **bellissima.**

Il caffè in Italia è buonissimo.	The coffee in Italy is really/extremely good.
I palazzi a Milano sono grandissimi.	The buildings in Milan are really/extremely big.
Milano è una bellissima città.	Milan is a very beautiful city.
Le fontane sono bellissime.	The fountains are really beautiful. 11(G)42

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Second Conjugation
Modal Verbs **Dovere, Potere** and **Volere**

A modal verb is an auxiliary, or helping verb, that gives additional information about the main verb in the sentence. The function of a modal verb is to describe the possibility, necessity, or desire that the subject possesses in order to act. Modal verbs describe *if* the subject **must** do something – **dovere,** or **can** do something – **potere,** or **wants** to do something – **volere.** See the next page for more complete definitions and rules of usage.

All three modal verbs end in **–ere,** and so are second conjugation verbs. Also, all three conjugations are irregular, except for the **voi** form of each.

Dovere – to have to/to must		
io	devo	I have to/must
tu	devi	you (familiar) have to/must
Lei lei/lui	deve	you (polite) have to/must she/he has to/must
noi	dobbiamo	we have to/must
voi	dovete	you all have to/must
loro	devono	they have to/must

Potere – to be able to/to can		
io	posso	I am able to/can
tu	puoi	you (familiar) are able to/can
Lei lei/lui	può	you (polite) are able to/can she/he is able to/can
noi	possiamo	we are able to/can
voi	potete	you all are able to/can
loro	possono	they are able to/can

Volere – to want		
io	voglio	I want
tu	vuoi	you (familiar) want
Lei lei/lui	vuole	you (polite) want she/he wants
noi	vogliamo	we want
voi	volete	you all want
loro	vogliono	they want

Grammar Point - How to Use Modal Verbs

1. The verb **dovere** is used to express a **necessity, obligation,** or **duty**.

2. The verb **potere** is used to express the **physical possibility** or **impossibility** of something, **the capacity to do something**, to ask **permission,** or when one wants to **ask a question politely**. Do you remember how we learned to use the phrase **"Può…?"** to ask politely, **"Could you?"** when making a request (see the "Important Phrases" sections of Chapters 5 and 6)? Well, now you know that the word **può** in these polite phrases comes from the verb **potere!**

3. The verb **volere** is used to express a **wish** or an **intention,** as we learned in Chapter 4.

Modal verbs are most often used to modify infinitive verbs. **I must, I can,** or **I want,** are therefore followed by an action. No preposition is needed to link these verbs.

Io devo studiare italiano molto.	I must study Italian very much.
Io posso imparare l'italiano.	I can learn Italian.
Io voglio andare in Italia.	I want to go to Italy.

Modal verbs may also be used without adding an infinitive verb or an object afterwards in the negative in order to express the simple ideas below:

Devo.	I must.
Non posso.	I can't.
Non ne posso più!	I can't take it anymore!
Non voglio.	I don't want to.

The modal verb **volere** can also be followed by a noun – the object of our desire, as in the conditional **vorrei (I would like)** or **vorremmo (we would like)**. Anna orders lunch in our dialogue by saying : **"Vogliamo tre espressi,"** but when the waitress is not a friend, always use the conditional tense at a restaurant (more on this in Chapters 16-18).

Grammar Point - Modal Verbs with Reflexive Forms

If a modal verb is used to modify a reflexive verb, the reflexive pronoun **(mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si)** will be attached to the infinitive form of the reflexive verb as usual, *or* can come before the modal verb.

Devo svegliarmi alle sei domani.	(I) must get (myself) up at 6 AM tomorrow.
Mi devo svegliare alle sei domani.	(I) must get (myself) up at 6 AM tomorrow. 11(V)64

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - Passato Prossimo with Avere

Up until this point, we have been speaking only in the present tense – that is, about what is happening in the "here and now." But, what if we want to refer back to an event that has happened in the recent past, such as this morning, yesterday, or last year? Well, then we will have to learn how to form the **passato prossimo,** also known as the **present perfect tense.** The **passato prossimo** also translates into the English **simple past tense;** in effect, when we learn this one type of past tense in Italian, we can substitute it for two types of past tenses in English! This will be reflected in the translations for the verb tables to follow. To avoid confusion, we will always use the Italian name for this tense.

To get started speaking in the **passato prossimo** verb tense, we must first learn how to form a past participle. Then, we combine the past participle with **avere** conjugated in the present tense.

Passato Prossimo = avere present tense + past participle

Here is how it works: To form the past participle, first, drop the **-are, -ere,** or **-ire** from the infinitive form of the verb, and add the following endings to the stems:

Forming the Past Particle	
Verbs that end in are	stem + ato
Verbs that end in ere	stem + uto
Verbs that end in ire	stem + ito

Then, conjugate **avere** in the present tense to reflect the speaker. Finally, add the past participle, and you have made a **passato prossimo** tense of the verb!

We have used this past tense throughout our dialogue for this chapter. Below is an excerpt from when Francesca relays to Anna what has happened that morning using the past participle **comprato** to form the **passato prossimo** form of the past tense. See the next page for examples of full conjugations of the regular **-are, -ere,** and **-ire** verb forms.

Anna: Allora. Che cosa avete fatto stamattina?
Now. What did you all do (have (you all) done) this morning?

Francesca: Abbiamo comprato vestiti.
Caterina ha comprato un bel vestito nero e una gonna rossa.
(We) bought clothes. Kathy bought a beautiful black dress and a red skirt.

Anna: In quale negozio ha comprato queste cose?
In which store did she buy (has (she) bought) these things?

Past Tense - **Passato Prossimo** with **Avere** (cont'd)

Avere comprato – to have bought/bought			
io	ho	comprato	I have bought I bought
tu	hai	comprato	you (familiar) have bought you (familiar) bought
Lei/lei/lui	ha	comprato	you (polite) have bought/she/he has bought you (polite) bought/she/he bought
noi	abbiamo	comprato	we have bought we bought
voi	avete	comprato	you all have bought you all bought
loro	hanno	comprato	they have bought they bought

Avere venduto – to have sold/sold			
io	ho	venduto	I have sold I sold
tu	hai	venduto	you (familiar) have sold you (familiar) sold
Lei/lei/lui	ha	venduto	you (polite) have sold/she/he has sold you (polite) sold/she/he sold
noi	abbiamo	venduto	we have sold we sold
voi	avete	venduto	you all have sold you all sold
loro	hanno	venduto	they have sold they sold

Avere finito – to have finished/finished			
io	ho	finito	I have finished I finished
tu	hai	finito	you (familiar) have finished you (familiar) finished
Lei/lei/lui	ha	finito	you (polite) have finished/she/he has finished you (polite) finished/she/he finished
noi	abbiamo	finito	we have finished we finished
voi	avete	finito	you all have finished you all finished
loro	hanno	finito	they have finished they finished

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - **Passato Prossimo**
Irregular Past Participles

Well, it seemed easy enough to form those regular past participles, didn't it? Unfortunately, though, many, many Italian – and English – past participles are irregular, and just need to be memorized.

Frequently used verbs with irregular past participles are given in the list below, with the infinitive form in the left green column and the past participle in the right green column. Most are **-ere** verbs. Don't try to memorize them all right away; just try to recognize the different past particles when you hear them, and later it will become more natural to use these verbs as you start to speak in the past tense.

accendere	to turn on	acceso	turned on
aprire	to open	aperto	opened
chiedere	to ask	chiesto	asked
chiudere	to close	chiuso	closed
condividere	to share	condiviso	shared
conoscere	to know	conosciuto	known
cuocere	to heat up/cook	cotto	cooked
decidere	to decide	deciso	decided
dire	to tell/say	detto	told
dividere	to divide	diviso	divided
fare	to make/do	fatto	done
friggere	to fry	fritto	fried
includere	to include	incluso	included
leggere	to read	letto	read
mettere	to put/place	messo	placed
morire	to die	morto	dead
muovere	to move	mosso	moved
nascere	to be born	nato	born
offrire	to offer	offerto	offered
perdere	to lose/miss	perso	lost/missed
permettere	to permit	permesso	permitted
prendere	to take/get/catch	preso	taken/got/caught
ridere	to laugh	riso	laughed
rispondere	to answer	risposto	answered
rompere	to break	rotto	broken

11(V)67

Past Tense - Passato Prossimo
Irregular Past Participles (cont'd)

salire	to go up	salito	gone up
scegliere	to choose	scelto	chosen
scendere	to go down/get off/out	sceso	gone down/gotten off/out
scoprire	to find	scoperto	found
scrivere	to write	scritto	written
smettere	to stop	smesso	stopped
sorridere	to smile	sorriso	smiled
spegnere	to turn off	spento	turned off
spingere	to push	spinto	pushed
succedere	to happen	successo	happened
vedere	to see	visto	seen
vincere	to win	vinto	won
vivere	to live	vissuto	lived

Past Tense - Passato Prossimo
Regular Past Participles with Dovere, Potere and Volere

The past participles of the modal verbs are regular, and are given below:

dovere	to have to/must	dovuto	had to
potere	to be able to/can	potuto	was able to/could
volere	to want to	voluto	wanted to

So, how do we put together the **passato prossimo** using the modal verbs to form a sentence? **Avere** or **essere** is conjugated in the present tense, the modal verb past participle follows, and finally, the infinitive verb after that. Examples for **avere** with the modal verbs are given below. See the next chapter for examples using **essere**.

Passato Prossimo with Modal Verbs
avere present tense + past participle modal verb + infinitive verb

Caterina ha dovuto imparare l'italiano.	Kathy had to learn Italian.
Anna ha potuto parlare con Giovanni.	Anna was able to speak with John.
Paolo ha voluto mangiare la pizza.	Paul had wanted to eat the pizza.

11(V)68

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 11

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Essere Passato Prossimo	Avere (to have)	Avere Passato Prossimo
io	sono	+*******	ho	+*****
tu	sei	+*******	hai	+*****
Lei/lei/lui	è	+*******	ha	+*****
noi	siamo	+*******	abbiamo	+*****
voi	siete	+*******	avete	+*****
loro	sono	+*******	hanno	+*****

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Avere (to have)	-are past participle	-ere past participle	ire past participle
io	ho	+ato	+uto	+ito
tu	hai	+ato	+uto	+ito
Lei/lei/lui	ha	+ato	+uto	+ito
noi	abbiamo	+ato	+uto	+ito
voi	avete	+ato	+uto	+ito
loro	hanno	+ato	+uto	+ito

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Essere (*******)	-are past participle	-ere past participle	ire past participle
io	****	+***	+***	+***
tu	***	+***	+***	+***
Lei/lei/lui	*	+***	+***	+***
noi	*****	+***	+***	+***
voi	*****	+***	+***	+***
loro	****	+***	+***	+***

Verb Tables for Chapter 11 (cont'd)

Modal Verbs Present Tense	Dovere (to have to)	Potere (to be able to can)	Volere (to want)
io	devo	posso	voglio
tu	devi	puoi	vuoi
Lei/lei/lui	deve	può	vuole
noi	dobbiamo	possiamo	vogliamo
voi	dovete	potete	volete
loro	devono	possono	vogliono

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Avere (to have)	Dovere past participle	Potere past participle	Volere past participle
io	ho	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
tu	hai	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
Lei/lei/lui	ha	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
noi	abbiamo	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
voi	avete	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
loro	hanno	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Essere (to be)	Dovere past participle	Potere past participle	Volere past participle
io	****	+*****	+******	+******
tu	***	+*****	+******	+******
Lei/lei/lui	*	+*****	+******	+******
noi	*****	+*****	+******	+******
voi	*****	+*****	+******	+******
loro	****	+*****	+******	+******

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - **Potere**

Potere, as we have seen, means **to be able to/can,** and gives added meaning to the verb that follows it. It is also used to ask a question politely, as we have learned in our "Important Phrases," sections from Chapters 5 and 6. There are additional uses for the word **potere,** which we will cover briefly here.

There is an expression, **"a più non posso,"** which is always placed at the end of a sentence to describe something that was done in the past to the best of one's ability, and translates as, **"as hard as I could."** Also, **potere** can also be used in reference to **control,** or **power** one person has over another. Watch for even more idiomatic expressions when we cover the conditional verb form of this verb in Unit 3.

Posso entrare?	May I come in?
Posso uscire?	May I leave?
Si può fumare qui?	Can one smoke here?/Is smoking allowed here?
Puoi farmi un favore?	Could you do me a favor? (polite)
Fammi un favore!	Do me a favor! (fam. command)
Posso darti una mano?	Can I give you a hand?
Che cosa posso fare per Lei?	What can I do for you?
Faccio quello che posso.	I am doing what I can./I am doing my best.
Non ne posso più.	I can't take it anymore./I've had it!
Può darsi.	Maybe./Possibly.
Ho corso a più non posso.	I ran as fast as I could.
Ho lavorato a più non posso.	I worked as hard as I could.
Ho mangiato a più non posso.	I ate as much as I could.
avere potere	to have power
dare potere	to give power
il potere mondiale	the world power
il potere del denaro	the power of money
il potere della mente	the power of the mind
la mancanza di potere	the lack of power

11(IE)23



Mercanti Caffè, via dei Mercanti, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - The Euro - Bills

Euro banknotes and coins have been circulating in Italy, one of the original members of the European Union, since 2002. This is good for the American traveler, since this system is much easier to understand than the former system based on the **lira**. The word **euro** is the Latin word for 100, and 100 euro cents make 1 euro. There are coins up to 2 euros and notes from 5 to 500 euros. Notice that in Italian, the word **euro** is invariable, and so does not have a plural form, the way that it does in English. The symbol for the euro is **€**. It is pronounced in Italian something like, "ehoo-roh."

The images on the euro banknotes represent the seven ages of European development. The front of each euro note shows windows and gateways in order to emphasize the theme of the future, and the back features bridges to suggest the connections between the countries in the union. All euro banknotes have the same design in all European Union countries, with the architecture featured a composite of known structures in Europe. Each bank note has a distinctive color as well.

Starting in 2013, the European Central Bank has introduced a second series of notes with new images and enhanced security features, under the "Europa" series.

After converting your money, you may receive bills in the following denominations.

5 Euro (Gray)
Classical Period

10 Euro (Red)
Romanesque Period

20 Euro (Blue)
Renaissance Period

50 Euro (orange)
Renaissance Period

100 Euro (green)
Baroque and Rococo Period

200 Euro (yellow)
Age of Iron and Glass Architecture

500 Euro (purple)
20th Century Architecture

11(N)10



Stresa on Lago Maggiore
Central Piazza

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life

Chapter 12 – Phone Conversations

Dialogue

Caterina will join Pietro and his family on their annual trip to Stresa, a small town on Lago Maggiore, just north of Milan, in Unit 3. But, the family hasn't made hotel reservations yet. Francesca has a headache, and asks Caterina to do this for her. See if you can follow the conversation between Caterina and the **owner of the hotel (proprietario dell'albergo)** when she tries to make reservations. Notice how often our helping verbs are used.

This conversation is a little more complicated than usual, as the family will be traveling during the week of the **Ferragosto** holiday. At this time of year, many Italians will be closing shop and putting up signs that say, **"chiuso per ferie" ("closed for Ferragosto")** to take a two-week long vacation.

Francesca:	Caterina, fammi un favore! Mi fa male la testa. Puoi telefonare all'hotel a Stresa per la nostra vacanza?
	Kathy, (you fam. command) do me a favor! I have a headache. Can (you fam.) telephone the hotel in Stresa for our vacation?
Caterina:	Non lo so. Il tuo italiano è migliore. E io non ho mai telefonato in italiano. (I) don't know. Your Italian is better. And I have never made a telephone call in Italian.
Francesa:	Prova! Devi cominciare a telefonare. Try! (You fam.) must begin to (use) the telephone.
Caterina:	Va bene... Qual'è il numero di telefono dell'albergo? Very well... What is the telephone number for the hotel?
Francesca:	Grazie! Ecco il numero di telefono e le date. Thank you. Here is the telephone number and the dates.

(Caterina fa una telefonata.)
(Kathy makes a telephone call.)

Proprietario:	Pronto. Il Grand Hotel. Chi parla, per favore? Hello. The Grand Hotel. Who (is) speak(ing), please? *(polite greeting)*
Caterina:	Mi chiamo Caterina. My name is Kathy. 12(Vo)53

Unit 2 – City Life
Chapter 12 – Phone Conversations
Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Proprietario: Che cosa posso fare per Lei?
What can (I) do for you (pol.)?

Caterina: Vorrei fare una prenotazione.
(I) would like to make a reservation.

Proprietario: Quando vuole venire, signorina?
When (do) (you pol.) want to come, Miss?

Caterina: In agosto, fra una settimana.
In August, in a week.

Proprietario: Per quanto tempo?
For how long?

Caterina: Dal quindici al ventidue agosto.
From the 15(th) to the 22(nd) of August.

Proprietario: Una settimana... Ma, è Ferragosto! Lei è troppo in ritardo!
One week... But, (it) is Ferragosto! You are very late!

Caterina: Che vuole dire?
What (do) (you pol.) mean? (lit. What do you want to say?)

Proprietario: È una vacanza annuale, una grande festività religiosa in Italia il quindici di agosto. Possiamo essere al completo.

(It) is an annual holiday, a big religious holiday in Italy August 15. (We) may be completely booked.

Caterina: Può controllare se avete camere disponibili, per favore?
Could (you pol.) check if (you all) have rooms available, please?

Proprietario: Si, si. Di quante camere ha bisogno?
Yes, yes. How many rooms (do) (you pol.) need?

12(Vo)54

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 2 – City Life

Chapter 12 – Phone Conversations

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Caterina: Ho bisogno di due camere. Una camera matrimoniale e una camera singola. Con bagno o doccia, per favore.

(I) need two rooms. One (with a) double bed and one (with a) single bed. With (a) bath or shower, please.

Proprietario: Mi dispiace, ma ho solamente dal sedici al ventidue di agosto disponibile.
I'm sorry but (I) only have from (the) 16 (th) to the 22 (nd) of August available.

Caterina: Va bene. Può mettere un letto supplementare nella camera matrimoniale? Abbiamo un bimbo.

Very well. Could (you pol.) put an additional bed in the double bed room? (We) have a baby.

Proprietario: Ma si, certo.
But, yes, certainly.

Caterina: Possiamo avere camere vicine?
Can (we) have adjoining rooms?

Proprietario: Forse. Quando arrivano tutti, domanda alla reception.
Perhaps. When everyone arrives, (you pol.) ask at (the) reception.

Caterina: Mi può dire, quale sono le tariffe per le due camere?
Could (you pol.) tell me, what are the rates for the two rooms?

Proprietario: La camera matrimoniale costa cento euro per notte e la camera singola costa ottanta euro.
The double room costs 100 euros a night and the single room costs 80 euro.

Caterina: È tutto incluso nel prezzo? Anche la colazione?
Is everything included in the price? Also breakfast?

Proprietario: Si, il prezzo include la colazione continentale.
Yes, the price includes a continental breakfast. 12(Vo)55

Unit 2 – City Life

Chapter 12 – Phone Conversations

Dialogue (cont'd - 4)

Caterina: Devo pagare in anticipo?
(Do) (I) have to pay in advance? (lit. Must I pay in advance?)

Proprietario: No. Ma abbiamo bisogno del numero della carta di credito.
No, but (we) need the number of the credit card.

Caterina: Ho capito. Un momento, Le passo mia cugina Francesca…
(I) (have) understood. One moment, (and) (I) (will) put you (pol.) through to my cousin Frances...



Public Phone Booth Behind the Duomo, Milan

12(Vo)56

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - The Telephone

il telefono	telephone
il telefono pubblico	public telephone
il telefonino/il cellulare	cell phone
la segreteria telefonica	answering machine
il messaggio in segreteria	message left on an answering machine
la casella vocale	voicemail
squillare	to ring out loud (as in a telephone or door bell)
uno squillo	ringing tone indicating telephones are connected
Rispondi al telefono!	Answer/Pick up the phone! (fam. command)
Metti giù il telefono!	Hang up the phone! (fam. command)
dare un colpo di telefono	to give a hit/call with the telephone (slang)
la linea	the (telephone) line
il segnale di libero	dial tone
il segnale di occupato	busy signal
La linea è libera.	The (telephone) line is free.
La linea è occupata.	The (telephone) line is busy.
Resti in linea!	Hold the line! (pol. command)
È caduta la linea.	The line dropped/disconnected.
il numero di telefono	the telephone number
il numero sbagliato	the wrong number
il numero di fax	the fax number
il prefisso telefonico	area code (for US phone numbers)/country code
fare il prefisso	dial the area code/country code
fare una telefonata	to make a telephone call
telefonare	to make a telephone call
fare uno squillo	to make a telephone call
fare il numero	to dial the number
il numero verde	the toll free number (lit. the green number)
il/la centralista	operator

Vorrei fare una telefonata collect.	I would like to make a collect call.
Vorrei fare a carico destinario.	I would like to make a collect call.
Vorrei fare una telefonata interurbana.	I would like to make a long distance call.

12(Vo)57



Back Entryway to Piazza San Marco, Venice

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Making a Telephone Call

Making a telephone call to a friend at their house might go something like this:

Pronto. Sono Caterina.	Ready (for hello). I am Kathy.
Pronto. Sono io!	Ready (for hello). It's me! (lit. It is I!)
Posso parlare con Pietro?	May I speak with Peter?
È Pietro in casa?	Is Peter at home?
C'è Pietro?	Is Peter there?

When calling a business associate at their office, you might say:

Pronto. Sono il signor Rossi.	Ready (for hello). I am Mr. Rossi.
Vorrei parlare con la signora Manzini.	I would like to speak with Mrs. Manzini.
Può passare il direttore, per piacere?	Can you put me through to (give me) the director? (pol.)
Me lo può passare?	Can you put me through to him? (pol.)

A receptionist at a business might answer the phone with the following questions:

Pronto. Che cosa posso fare per Lei?	Hello. What can I do for you? (pol.)
Posso aiutarla?	May I help you? (pol.)
Chi parla?	Who is speaking? (pol.)
Chi chiama?	Who is calling? (pol.)

When requesting to speak to a business associate, you may hear the following replies:

Resti in linea, per favore.	Hold, please. (pol. command)
Mi dispiace,	I'm sorry,
...il direttore è occupato.	...the director is busy.
...il direttore non c'è oggi.	...the director is not in today.
...il direttore è (appena) uscito(a).	...the director has (just) stepped out. (male/female)
...il direttore è in riunione.	...the director is (attending) in a meeting.
Glielo/Gliela passo.	I'll put through/give him/her to you. (pol.)

Less formal replies for calls made to a home:

Si, aspetta un momento.	Yes, wait one moment.
Si, aspetta un attimo.	Yes, wait a second.
Te lo passo.	I'll put him/her through to you. (fam.)
No, non è in casa.	No, (he/she) is not at home.
No, non c'è.	No, (he /she)is not here.

12(IP)43

Important Phrases - Making a Telephone Call (cont'd)

If you want to try to get some information or leave a message, you might ask:

Quando torna lui/lei?	When (will) he/she return?
Sa quando torna lui/lei?	(Do) you know when he/she (will) return? (pol.)
Può dirgli/dirle di chiamarmi?	Can you tell (to) him/her to call me? (pol.)
Può dirgli/dirle che ho chiamato?	Can you tell (to) him/her that I called? (pol.)
Può prendere un messaggio?	Can you take a message? (pol.)
Posso richiamare più tardi?	Can I call back later?
Richiamerei (un po') più tardi.	I would like to call back (a little) later.
Richiamerò (un po') più tardi.	I will call back (a little) later.

Ending a telephone conversation with someone you know:

Ci sentiamo…	We will speak to each other… (lit. hear each other)
piu tardi/dopo/presto.	later/later/soon.
Devo scappare!	I must run! (lit. escape/leave quickly)
Richiamami!	Call me back! (fam. command)
Chiamami!	Call me! (fam. command)
Fatti sentire!	Let me hear from you! (lit. Make yourself heard!)

If you don't understand the reply or are having trouble hearing the Italian, you might say:

Non capisco bene.	I don't understand well.
Parla più lentamente, per favore.	Speak more slowly, please.
Può/puoi ripetere?	Can you (pol./fam.) repeat?
Che vuole/vuoi dire?	What do you (pol./fam.) mean to say?
Come si dice?	How does one say (it)?
Che ha/hai detto?	What did you (pol./fam.) say?
Che significa?	What (does that) mean?
Non ti sento molto bene.	I don't hear you very well.
Parla a voce più alta.	Speak a little louder.
Mi senti ora?	Do you hear me now?
Si, ti sento ora.	Yes, I hear you now.

12(IP)44

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases – Leaving/Sending a Message

Phrases you may hear on an answering machine:

La segreteria telefonica di…	The answering machine of...
Non posso/possiamo rispondere al telefono ora.	I/We cannot answer the phone now.

Lasciate il vostro messaggio, e il vostro nome, la data, e l'ora della vostra chiamata...
Leave your message, and your name, telephone number, date, and time of your call...

...e il vostro numero di telefono	...and your telephone number
...dopo il segnale acustico.	...after the beep.

Vi richiamerò/richiameremo presto.	I/We will call you all back soon.

How to leave a message:

Sono la signora Manzini.	I am Mrs. Manzini.
Sono Caterina.	I am Kathy.
Vorrei parlare di…	I want to talk about…
Possiamo parlare di…	Can we talk about…
Oggi è lunedì tre agosto, alle dieci.	Today is Monday, August third, 10 AM.
Il mio numero di telefono è...	My telephone number is...

For today's world where cell phones make voicemail a common occurrence, some additional phrases:

la segreteria telefonica	voicemail
la casella vocale	voice mailbox
il messaggio	message
l'SMS	text message/instant message
il messaggio di testo	text message
mandare un messaggio	to send a text or an instant message to message someone
spedire un messaggio	to send a text or an instant message
inviare un'email/una posta elettronica	to send an email
La mia amica mi ha mandato un SMS.	My friend sent a text/instant message to me.
È arrivato un messaggio.	You have a message. (lit. A message has arrived.)
Ho ricevuto un messaggio.	I have (received) a message.

12(IP)45

Important Phrases – Making/Checking/Changing a Reservation

Here is some vocabulary you will need to know to make hotel reservations in Italian, with sample sentences. See the grammar and verb sections later in this chapter for a detailed explanation on the use of these vocabulary words and phrases.

la camera	room
la stanza	room
la camera singola	room with a single bed
la camera matrimoniale	room with a double bed
le camere adiacenti	adjacent rooms
il letto	bed
il letto supplementare	additional bed
disponibile	available
al completo	completely booked/full

la prenotazione	reservation
Ho una prenotazione.	(I) have a reservation.
prenotare	to make a reservation
Ho prenotato...	(I) have made a reservation...
riservare	to make a reservation
È riservato...	(It) is reserved...
l'ordine	order
ordinare	to order
Ho ordinato...	(I) have ordered...
annullare	to cancel (a reservation or order)
Ho annulato...	(I) have cancelled...
cambiare	to change
Ho cambiato...	(I) have changed...
controllare	to check
Ho controllato	(I) have checked...
confermare	to confirm
Ho confermato...	(I) have confirmed...

Vorrei/Desidero...	I would like/I want to...
...fare una prenotazione.	...make a reservation.
...annullare una prenotazione.	...cancel a reservation.
...cambiare una prenotazione.	...change a reservation.
...controllare una prenotazione.	...check a reservation.
...confirmare una prenotazione.	....confirm a reservation.
...ordinare la prima colazione.	...order breakfast.
Si, la camera è riservata.	Yes, the room is reserved.
Lei ha una stanza riservata per sabato.	You (pol.) have a room reserved for Saturday.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Telephone Calls To and Within Italy

When planning your trip to Italy, hotel reservations can be made over the internet or in the traditional way, with a telephone call. In order to call Italy from the United States or Canada, first dial the international access code; this is the number 011. (From Europe, the international access code is 00). Then dial 39, which is the country code for Italy. The Italian number follows, which will be either 8 or 9 digits separated by dashes, such as 012–345–678. So, in order to dial Italy from the United States, you would need to enter the following pattern of numbers:

011 / 39 / 012-345-678

All land lines in Italy will start with a zero, so make sure to dial this number if it is given! Italian cell phone lines begin with the number 3, and toll free lines begin with 80. Italian telephone numbers that begin with 80 can be dialed from any phone in Italy, including a pay phone, without incurring a fee. Each toll-free number is referred to in Italian as **"il numero verde,"** or, **"la linea verde,"** for, **"the green number,"** or **"the green line."**

When in Italy, just dial any Italian number in its entirety. The area codes are included in the number, and must always be dialed. Occasionally, an Italian telephone number may be listed with a **"+"** sign before it. This is just a reminder to dial the international access and country code if you are not in Italy.

There are emergency phones every two kilometers on the **autostrada** in Italy. Emergency phone numbers are only three digits. Dial 113 for the police if you want to speak in English. Road service is 116. This number will connect you directly to the nearest **Automobil Club d'Italia (ACI)** office, and the operator there can arrange for assistance with a tow truck or give advice about the location of the nearest repair shop or supplier for automobile parts. To call for an ambulance dial 118.

When you have finally arrived in Italy, if you want to call home, dial Europe's access code, 00, then the United States country code, which is 1, and finally the area code and local telephone number in the United States, such as (312) 123-4567. So, in order to dial Chicago in the United States from Italy, you would need to enter the following pattern of numbers:

00 / 1 / (312) 123-4567

12(IP)47

Cultural Note - Telephone Calls to and within Italy (cont'd)

It may be helpful (and less expensive) to bring a laptop computer to Italy if you are planning to make calls back home, as many hotels and most homes in Italy have internet access. If you and your contact at home set up Skype or Google Talk prior to your trip, the telephone calls are free, and include video if both computers have cameras. The software for these programs can be downloaded from the websites www.skype.com and www.google.com/talk.

Another option for frequent callers is to add an international option to a cell phone already in use. This will incur an additional charge for the time it will be used internationally. Be careful to check with the carrier to determine if additional roaming fees will be incurred if your phone has internet access. If so, it may be wise to turn off the roaming function on your cell phone, and only use the internet in locations that offer free WiFi. Many cell phones cannot be used to call here from overseas, though, so a call to the carrier is warranted before leaving to see if the phone itself needs to be upgraded as well. The international option can be discontinued once it is no longer needed.

Here is a simple and quick way to enable a limited amount of communication by cell phone if you happen to have an old cell phone that still works: first, before traveling, have the phone unlocked and take out the SIM card. Then, after arriving in Italy, purchase a TIM card from a tobacco shop **(tabaccheria).** TIM cards can be purchased for small amounts, such as 25 or 50 euros, and the phone service provided can be used for up to one year. They can also be renewed at the same shop if needed. The TIM card allows one to make and receive local calls in Italy and to receive international calls. This process will assign the phone a new number, so friends and family will need to be notified of this new number. When the TIM card is removed and replaced by the old SIM card the phone (should) revert back to the old number and can be used again back home.

What to do if in Italy without computer or cell phone? The cheapest option is usually to purchase an **International Phone Card** **(Carta Telefonica Prepagata Internazionale).** These can be found at news stand kiosks and tobacco shops **(tabaccheria).** These cards can be used at public payphones (although public payphones have been phased out, except at train stations and some tourist locations, and one in working order is not easy to find), as well as from hotel phones. Follow the instructions for use given on the card, which should include a box to scratch off to find a PIN number. When calling from a hotel, there should be a free phone number listed to call first (beginning with 80), after which the PIN number is entered, and then the telephone number you wish to call. Incoming calls to a hotel are usually free, but be sure to verify this at the hotel when you arrive.

12(IP)48

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Making, Checking, and Changing a Reservation

Both Italian verbs **prenotare** and **riservare** translate into English as, **"to book/to make a reservation."** Their corresponding nouns are **la prenotazione** and **la riservazione.** Although both nouns translate as the English word **reservation,** the use of each Italian word varies with the situation.

Most commonly, when asking to make a reservation at a hotel, on a train, or at the theater, Italians use the word **prenotazione,** with the verb **fare,** as Caterina does when she says during her telephone conversation, **"Vorrei fare una prenotazione,"** for, **"I would like to make a reservation."**

When boarding a train or entering a theater with a ticket that has a reserved seat, Caterina would have **"un biglietto con la prenotazione,"** or, **"a ticket with the reservation."** If Caterina wants to tell someone she is checking her seat to make sure she is in the right place, she would use the verb **controllare,** as in, **"Controllo il biglietto con la prenotazione,"** for, **"I am checking the ticket with the reservation."** Remember **il controllore** from Chapter 5, whose job it is to check tickets on passenger trains?

However, the actual room in the hotel or seat on the train or theater is referred to as reserved with the past tense, as in, **"Il posto è riservato."** The seat has been booked, and no one else can use it. The word **riservato** can also be used as an adjective. If someone else had made a **prenotazione** before Caterina, her request might be denied due to **una camera riservata, una stanza riservata,** or **un posto riservato!**

Now, what would happen if Caterina had to cancel a reservation she has made for a trip? She would call the hotel and use the verb **annullare,** and say, **"Vorrei annullare una prenotazione,"** for, **"I would like to cancel a reservation."** If she had placed an order for something that needed to be cancelled, Caterina would say, **"Vorrei annulare un ordine."** Or, if a reservation needed to be changed, she could use the verb **cambiare,** as in, **"Vorrei cambiare una prenotazione."**

And what should we do if we want to confirm a reservation? Just say, **"Vorrei confermare una prenotazione."** Finally, instead of **vorrei,** one could use also use the verb **desidero** for **I would like.** Also, as always be polite and add **per favore** to the end of the sentence!

12(G)43

Grammar Note – Cognates
Adjectives Ending in **–zione, -za, -izziare, –ia, -ica**

The ending **–zione** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–tion** in English. All nouns with this ending are feminine and take the definite article **la.** Make the plural as usual, by changing the **–e** at the end of the noun to an **–i** and use the definite article **le,** as in **"le lezioni."**

applicazione	=	application*
attenzione	=	attention
informazione	=	information
lezione	=	lesson
nazione	=	nation
prenotazione	=	reservation
situazione	=	situation

The ending **–za** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–ce** in English.

eleganza	=	elegance
importanza	=	importance
influenza	=	influence
violenza	=	violence

The ending **–izzare** in Italian is equivalent to the endings **–ize** or **-yze** in English.

analizzare	=	analyze
organizzare	=	organize
simpatizzare	=	sympathize

The ending **–ia** in Italian is equivalent to the ending **–y** in English.

archeologia	=	archeology
biologia	=	biology
famiglia	=	family
filosofia	=	philosophy
fisiologia	=	physiology
geologia	=	geology
psicologia	=	psychiatry

The ending **–ica** in Italian is equivalent to the endings **–ic** or **–ics** in English.

musica	=	music
politica	=	politics
repubblica	=	republic

***In order to describe the process of filling out a form to apply for a position, do not use **applicazione**. Instead, use the phrase **"fare una domanda."** A work application would be **"la domanda di lavoro."**

12(G)44

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – Comparatives of Equality

When comparing *two different nouns* – people, places or things – *using the same adjective or adverb*, to state that *their description is equivalent*, use the following phrases below:

Cosi and **tanto** are in parentheses in the examples that follow, as these words can be omitted in conversation.

Comparison of Two Nouns with Equialent Descriptors	
(cosi)… come	as… as
(tanto)…. quanto	as much/as well… as

Milano è (cosi) bella come Roma.	Milan is as beautiful as Rome.
La mia Camaro va (tanto) bene, quanto la tua Ferrari.	My Camaro runs as well as your Ferrari.

****

When comparing *what two different people have*, *using the same noun*, to state that one person has *something that is equivalent* to what the other person has, use the following phrases below:

This pattern will usually appear with the verb **avere,** in order to describe what both people **have**. Note that **tanto** must always be used and must agree in gender and number with the noun that it modifies.

Comparison of Two Equivalent Nouns	
tanto(a,i,e)…. quanto	as much as/as many as

Caterina ha tante amiche quanto Anna.	Kathy has as many friends as Anna.
Pietro ha tanti parenti quanto Caterina.	Peter has as many relatives as Kathy.

12(G)45

Grammar Note - Comparatives of Superiority and Inferiority

When comparing *different characteristics* of the subject in a sentence, where *one characteristic is better or worse than the other*, use following phrases below. This pattern works for comparisons with adjectives, adverbs, and infinitive verbs.

Comparison of Different Characteristics of the Subject	
più... che	more... than
meno... che	less... than

La casa è più grande che bella.	The house is more large than beautiful.
Caterina ha meno amici che parenti.	Kathy has fewer friends than relatives.
Mi piace più studiare che lavorare.	I like studying more than working.

****

In order to compare *two different nouns*, i.e. people, places or things, where *one has a superior or inferior characteristic*, use the following phrases below. Note that **di** will combine with the definite article **(il, la, lo,** or **l')** as usual if the definite article is needed in the sentence.

works for comparisons with adjectives, adverbs, and infinitive verbs.

Comparison of Two Different Nouns	
più... di	more... than
meno... di	less... than

La casa di Pietro è più grande della casa di Caterina.	Peter's house is larger than Kathy's house.
Pietro ha più soldi di Caterina.	Peter has more money than Kathy.
Caterina ha meno soldi di Pietro.	Kathy has less money than Peter.

Questo vestito è più elegante del tuo vestito.
This dress is more elegant than your dress.

12(G)46

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Adjectives with Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

Some of the most commonly used Italian adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms. Use these additional forms when speaking figuratively; that is, about things that cannot be directly measured, or about relationships between relatives. The idea of a younger or older relative is expressed with the comparative form given after the noun, as in **sorella minore**. For the relative supurlative forms, note from the examples below that the person or thing that is the best is always included at the end of the sentece.

The usual ways of expressing these ideas, with **più** or **il/la più,** that we learned in the "Relative Superlatives" section in Chapter 11 are used with these adjectives *if* talking about size that can be directly measured and also when speaking of moral qualities.

Adjective		Comparative		Relative Superlative	
buono	good	migliore	better	il migliore	the best
cattivo	bad	peggiore	worse	il peggiore	the worst
grande	big	maggiore	older	il maggiore	the oldest
piccolo	small	minore	younger	il minore	the youngest

The rules may seem a little complicated, but after enough time spent listening to Italian, which form to use will sound natural. Here are some examples:

Susanna è la sorella minore di Caterina.
Susan is the younger sister of Kathy.

Pietro è un buono studente, ma Caterina è migliore.
Peter is a good student, but Kathy is better.

Francesca è la migliore studentessa.
Frances is the best student.

Il Lago Maggiore è più grande del Lago di Como.
Lake Maggiore is bigger than Lake Como.

Lago Garda è il più grande lago in Italia.
Lake Garda is the biggest lake in Italy.

12(G)47

Grammar Note - Adverbs with Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

Some of the most commonly used Italain adverbs have irregular comparative and superlative forms that are frequently used in Italy. They are listed below.

You will notice that the relative superlative forms for these adverbs ("the best," "the worst," "the most," and "the least") have been entirely left out of the adverb chart below. To express **"the best,"** in our example sentences, our irregular adjective **"il migliore"** is used instead of an irregular adverb, and this requires the use of a different sentence structure as well. Why, you may ask? Well, this is just to keep up with the way "the best" is expressed in Italian – which again, reflects a different way of thinking!

Use **di più** or **di meno,** rather than simply **più** or **meno** when the second term of the comparison is not expressed.

Adverb		Comparative	
bene	well	meglio	better
male	badly	peggio	worse
molto	very	più/ di più	more
poco	a little	meno/ di meno	less

Caterina parla italiano bene.	Kathy speaks Italian well.
Francesca parla italiano meglio di Caterina.	Frances speaks Italian better than Kathy.
Francesca parla italiano megio di tutti.	Frances speaks Italian better than everyone.
L'italiano di Francesca è il migliore.	Frances' Italian is the best. (English: Frances speaks Italian the best.)

A Pietro piace molto mangiare la pizza.	Peter really likes to eat pizza.
Pietro mangia più pizza di Caterina.	Peter eats more pizza than Kathy.
Pietro mangia di più.	Peter eats more.
Pietro mangia più pizza di tutti.	Peter eats more pizza than everyone. (English: Peter eats the most pizza.)

Michele mangia poco pizza al'ristorante.	Michael eats a little pizza at the restaurant.
Michele mangia meno pizza di Caterina.	Michael eats less pizza than Kathy.
Michele mangia di meno.	Michael eats less.
Michele mangia meno pizza di tutti.	Michael eats less pizza than everyone. (English: Michael eats the least pizza.)

12(G)48

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - Passato Prossimo with Essere

In some cases, it is necessary to use **essere** instead of **avere** to form the Italian **passato prossimo (present perfect)**. Verbs that take **essere** are usually verbs that describe coming and going (directional movement, as in from one place to another), or are related to birth, growing-up, and change. Reflexive verbs and verbs of being/living also take **essere**. We do not always make the same distinction in English, and the Italian verbs that take **essere** will need to be committed to memory (see the list in the next section). Also, remember that *the **passato prossimo** also translates into the English simple past tense*!

Passato Prossimo action/reflexive verbs = essere present tense + past participle

To make the **passato prossimo** past tense with **essere,** we must first form the past participle. Below is a table from Chapter 11 that we have already used for forming regular past participles with the **-are, -ere,** and **–ire** verb forms, with the addition of the endings **–a, -i,** and **–e** that will be needed to correspond to the gender/number of the subject that is always necessary when **essere** is used.

Forming the Past Particle	
Verbs that end in are	stem + ato(a) (i,e)
Verbs that end in ere	stem + uto(a) (i,e)
Verbs that end in ire	stem + ito (a) (i,e)

The general method is identical to what we have already learned: conjugate **essere** to reflect the speaker, add the past participle, and you have again made the **passato prossimo**! There is one additional step that needs to be taken, however. Remember that whenever we use the linking verb **essere,** which means **to be,** the phrase that follows this verb will reflect directly back to the subject. For verbs that take **essere** for the **passato prossimo,** then, *the past participle must agree in gender and number with the subject doing the action*. Hence the additional endings in our table above. Some examples:

For masculine and feminine singular, we would have:

Pietro è andato.	Peter has gone.
Caterina è andata.	Kathy has gone.

For a group of men or a group of men and women, the masculine plural **-i** ending applies.

Pietro e Michele sono andati.	Peter and Michael have gone.
Pietro e Caterina sono andati.	Peter and Kathy have gone.

If the group contains only women, the feminine plural **-e** ending is used.

Caterina e Francesca sono andate.	Kathy and Frances have gone.	12(V)71

Past Tense - Passato Prossimo with Essere (cont'd)

Essere andato – to have gone/went			
io	sono	andato(a)	I have gone I went
tu	sei	andato(a)	you (familiar) have gone you (familiar) went
Lei/lei/lui	è	andato(a)	you (polite) have gone/she/he has gone you (polite) went/she/he went
noi	siamo	andati(e)	we have gone we went
voi	siete	andati(e)	you all have gone you all went
loro	sono	andati(e)	they have gone/they went

Essere caduto – to have fallen/fell			
io	sono	caduto(a)	I have fallen I fell
tu	sei	caduto(a)	you (familiar) have fallen you (familiar) fell
Lei/lei/lui	è	caduto(a)	you (polite) have fallen/she/he has fallen you (polite)fell/she/he fell
noi	siamo	caduti(e)	we have fallen we fell
voi	siete	caduti(e)	you all have fallen you all fell
loro	sono	caduti(e)	they have fallen they fell

Essere partito – to have left/left			
io	sono	partito(a)	I have left I left
tu	sei	partito(a)	you (familiar) have left you left
Lei/lei/lui	è	partito(a)	you (polite) have left/she/he has left you (polite) left/she/he left
noi	siamo	partiti(e)	we have left we left
voi	siete	partiti(e)	you all have left you all left
loro	sono	partiti(e)	they have left they left

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - **Passato Prossimo**
Verbs that Take **Essere**

Here is a list of the most common action verbs that take **essere** when forming the **passato prossimo** in order to describe going from one plance to another. The infinitive form is in the first column and the corresponding past participle is listed in the third column; the irregular past participles from our list in Chapter 11 that take **essere** are recopied here in red. It should be noted again that *all reflexive verbs*, as well as **piacere,** take **essere**.

accadere	to happen	accaduto(a)(i,e)	happened
andare	to go	andato(a)(i,e)	went
arrivare	to arrive	arrivato(a)(i,e)	arrived
cadere	to fall	caduto(a)(i,e)	fell
cambiare	to change	cambiato(a)(i.e)	changed
cominciare+	to begin	cominciato(a)(i,e)	began
diventare	to become	diventato(a)(i,e)	became
entrare	to enter	entrato(a)(i,e)	entered
finire+	to finish	finito(a)(i,e)	finished
iniziare+	to begin	iniziato(a)(i,e)	began
morire	to die	morto(a)(i,e)	dead
nascere	to be born	nato(a)(i,e)	born
partire	to leave	partito(a)(i,e)	left
passare*	to pass through	passato(a)(i,e)	past
piacere	to be pleasing to	piaciuto(a)(i,e)	pleased
restare	to remain	restato(a)(i,e)	remained
rompere	to break	rotto(a)(i,e)	broken
salire*	to go up	salito(a)(i,e)	went up
scendere*	to do down	sceso(a)(i,e)	went down
succedere	to happen	successo(a)(i,e)	happened
uscire	to go out	uscito(a)(i,e)	went out
venire	to come	venuto(a)(i,e)	came

+Some verbs, such as **cominciare, finire,** and **iniziare** take **avere** *except* when the subject is a thing, rather than a person. So, as we have learned in Chapter 11, **"Io ho finito il libro," "Tu hai finito il libro,"** and **"Lei/lui ha finito il libro,"** *but*, **"Il film è finito,"** for, **"The film is finished."** Notice that in the last example, the verb itself completes the sentence and refers back to the subject. (**Finire** is categorized as transitive in all of the examples except the last, when it is intransitive, but don't worry about these terms!)

*Some verbs, such as **passare, scendere,** and **salire** take **avere** when used with a direct object, as in, **"Io ho sceso le scale,"** for, **"I have gone down the stairs."** Otherwise, they use **essere; "Lui è sceso,"** for, **"He has gotten off."** 12(V)73

Grammar Point - Reflexive Verbs with the **Passato Prossimo**

All reflexive verbs form the **passato prossimo** with **essere**. Simply put the reflexive pronoun *before* **essere** and follow **essere** with the past participle, as usual. Remember to change the ending of the past participle to reflect the gender of the person doing the action. See the example below with **divertirsi (to enjoy oneself),** which we covered in Chapter 9, when Caterina was at a party. With all the good times a visitor to Italy can expect, **divertirsi** is an essential verb to know in several different tenses!. Notice that the translation in English uses the verb **to have,** while Italian uses **to be**. So, remember to think in Italian in this case!

Essersi divertito – to have enjoyed oneself			
io	mi sono	divertito(a)	I have enjoyed myself I enjoyed myself
tu	ti sei	divertito(a)	you (familiar) have enjoyed yourself you(familiar) enjoyed yourself
Lei/lei/lui	si è	divertito(a)	you (polite)/she/he have/has enjoyed herself/himself you (polite)/she/he enjoyed herself/himself
noi	ci siamo	divertiti(e)	we have enjoyed ourselves we enjoyed ourselves
voi	vi siete	divertiti(e)	you all have enjoyed yourselves you all enjoyed yourselves
loro	si sono	divertiti(e)	they have enjoyed themselves they enjoyed themselves

Grammar Point - Modal Verbs with **Essere** and the **Passato Prossimo**

We have seen how to use the modal verbs **dovere, potere,** and **volere** if the **passato prossimo** is formed with **avere**. The sequence to use is the same with **essere**; **essere** is conjugated to reflect the speaker, the past participle ofthe modal verb is added, and then the infinitive of the verb finishes the verb phrase.

Passato Prossimo with Modal Verbs
essere present tense + past participle modal verb (o,a,i,e)+ infinitive verb

There is one catch, though. Remember that we must change the past participle of the verbs that follow **essere** to reflect the gender of the speaker. *In this case, the past participle is formed from the modal verb, so the ending of the modal verb must change*!

Pietro è voluto partire alle sei stasera.
Peter wanted to leave at 6 tonight.
Caterina è dovuta andare a fare la spesa ieri.
Kathy had to go grocery shopping yesterday. 12(V)74

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - **Passato Prossimo**
Avere and **Essere** Past Participles

There are situations where reference to a specific period of time in the past is given when the **passato prossimo** **(present perfect)** form of **avere,** which is **avere avuto** **(had/has had),** or **essere,** which is **essere stato** **(was/has been),** will be used. Here are two examples:

Caterina ha avuto molte cose da fare stamattina.
Kathy had/has had many things to do this morning.

Pietro è stato a casa di sua madre tutto il giorno. / Pietro è stato in Germania una volta.
Peter was at his mother's house all day. / Peter has been to Germany one time.

Grammar Point - Single Negative with the **Passato Prossimo**

To make a statement negative when using the **passato prossimo,** simply put **non** *before* the verb **avere** or **essere**. Notice that in English, the negative is instead put in between the two verbs.

Caterina non ha avuto molte cose da fare stamattina.
Kathy has not had many things to do this morning.

Pietro non è stato a casa di sua madre oggi. / Pietro non è stato in Germania.
Peter was not at his mother's house today. / Peter has not been to Germany.

Grammar Point - Double Negative with the **Passato Prossimo**

To form a double negative with the **passato prossimo,** again put **non** before the auxiliary verb **avere** or **essere**. Then insert **mai** *between* the auxiliary verb and the past participle. Notice that **stato** changes to **stata** in our last example, for the feminine subject.

Caterina non ha mai avuto molte cose da fare la mattina.
Kathy has not ever (never) had anything to do in the mornings.

Caterina non è mai stata alla casa nuova di suo cugino.
Kathy has not ever been (never been) at her cousin's new house.

12(V)75

Verb Tables for Chapter 12

Auxiliary Verbs	Essere (to be)	Essere Passato Prossimo	Avere (to have)	Avere Passato Prossimo
io	sono	+stato(a)(i,e)	ho	+avuto
tu	sei	+stato(a)(i,e)	hai	+avuto
Lei/lei/lui	è	+stato(a)(i,e)	ha	+avuto
noi	siamo	+stato(a)(i,e)	abbiamo	+avuto
voi	siete	+stato(a)(i,e)	avete	+avuto
loro	sono	+stato(a)(i,e)	hanno	+avuto

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Avere (to have)	-are past participle	-ere past participle	ire past participle
io	ho	+ato	+uto	+ito
tu	hai	+ato	+uto	+ito
Lei/lei/lui	ha	+ato	+uto	+ito
noi	abbiamo	+ato	+uto	+ito
voi	avete	+ato	+uto	+ito
loro	hanno	+ato	+uto	+ito

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Essere (to be)	-are past participle	-ere past participle	ire past participle
io	sono	+ato(a)(i,e)	+uto(a)(i,e)	+ito(a)(i,e)
tu	sai	+ato(a)(i,e)	+uto(a)(i,e)	+ito(a)(i,e)
Lei/lei/lui	è	+ato(a)(i,e)	+uto(a)(i,e)	+ito(a)(i,e)
noi	siamo	+ato(a)(i,e)	+uto(a)(i,e)	+ito(a)(i,e)
voi	siete	+ato(a)(i,e)	+uto(a)(i,e)	+ito(a)(i,e)
loro	sono	+ato(a)(i,e)	+uto(a)(i,e)	+ito(a)(i,e)

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 12 (cont'd)

Modal Verbs Present Tense	Dovere (to have to)	Potere (to be able to can)	Volere (to want)
io	devo	posso	voglio
tu	devi	puoi	vuoi
Lei/lei/lui	deve	può	vuole
noi	dobbiamo	possiamo	vogliamo
voi	dovete	potete	volete
loro	devono	possono	vogliono

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Avere (to have)	Dovere past participle	Potere past participle	Volere past participle
io	ho	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
tu	hai	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
Lei/lei/lui	ha	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
noi	abbiamo	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
voi	avete	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
loro	hanno	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto

Past Tense Passato Prossimo	Essere (to be)	Dovere past participle	Potere past participle	Volere past participle
io	sono	+dovuto(a)(i,e)	+potuto(a)(i,e)	+voluto(a)(i,e)
tu	sai	+dovuto(a)(i,e)	+potuto(a)(i,e)	+voluto(a)(i,e)
Lei/lei/lui	è	+dovuto(a)(i,e)	+potuto(a)(i,e)	+voluto(a)(i,e)
noi	siamo	+dovuto(a)(i,e)	+potuto(a)(i,e)	+voluto(a)(i,e)
voi	siete	+dovuto(a)(i,e)	+potuto(a)(i,e)	+voluto(a)(i,e)
loro	sono	+dovuto(a)(i,e)	+potuto(a)(i,e)	+voluto(a)(i,e)



Obelisk in Villa Medici Garden, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions – Dovere and Volere

As we have seen in Chapter 11, the primary definitions of **dovere** are **to have to/must,** in reference to something that needs to be done. The following phrases that use **dovere** may come in handy when talking about what you have to do, or did do, during a typical day.

Devo fare molte cose.	I have to do many things.
Ho dovuto fare...	I had to do...
...molti servizi.	...a lot of errands.
...dei servizi.	...some errands.
...molti giri per...	...a lot of running around for...
Devo correre.	I have to run.
Devo scappare.	I have to rush off. (lit. escape or run away)

The idea of necessity associated with **dovere** can also be extrapolated to express **a duty, a job, an obligation,** or **a task** that needs to be done.

il senso del dovere	the sense of duty
la dedizione al dovere	the dedication to duty
Faccio il mio dovere.	I do my duty.
Fai il tuo dovere.	You do your duty.
A chi di dovere...	To whom it concerns/to whom is responsible... (introduction to a letter)
Mi sento in dovere di...	I feel obliged to...

The verb **volere** is used to **politely offer something** to another person. It can also be used to describe **how long it has taken** to do something. In this last situation, **volere** is conjugated in a manner similar to **piacere,** but don't worry about the grammar for now...

Vogliamo sederci?	Shall we sit down?
Non vuole accomodarsi?	Won't you make yourself comfortable/sit down?
Vuoi chiudere la porta?	Would you mind closing the door?
Prendine quanto(a) vuoi.	Help yourself./Take as much (of it) as you like.
Ne vuoi ancora?	Would you like some more (of it)?
Ci vuole molto tempo.	It takes a lot of time.
Ci vogliono molte ore.	It takes many hours.

And, finally, **voglia** is a noun that can be used to describe what you feel like doing:

Io ho voglia di...	I feel like doing...
Che tu lo voglia o no.	Whether you like it or not.

12(IE)25

Idiomatic Expressions - Commands Using **Fare**

We will now revisit the verb **fare,** as this verb often comes up when someone needs to/must do something, or requests that someone else do something. To ask for a favor politely, you could use the (by now, well-known) verb **può** with **fare** to make the phrase, **"Può farmi un favore?"** for, **"Could you do me a favor?"** In our dialogue from this chapter, Francesca makes the same request of Caterina using the familiar command form of this phrase, as they both know each other very well, with, **"Fammi un favore!"** for, **"Do me a favor! Piacere** also works interchangeably with **favore** in this expression, as in, **"Fammi un piacere!"**

Notice that, when attaching a direct object to the familiar command verb **fa,** the first letter of the direct object is doubled. This holds true for **mi, ti, lo, la, ci,** and **vi**. Below are some commonly used expressions which combine the command form of **fare** with direct object pronouns.

Fammi un favore!	Do me a favor!
Fammi un piacere!	Do me a favor!
Fatti vedere!	Come and see me! (lit. Make yourself seen!)
Fatti sentire!	Call me! (lit. Make yourself heard!)
Fallo!	Do it!

Fammi can also be used in an idiomatic way, with the meaning, **"let me,"** when followed by an infinitive verb, such as, **"Fammi vedere,"** for, **"Let me see,"** or, **"Fammi chiamare,"** for, **"Let me call."**

Fammi vedere…	Let me see…
Fammi chiamare…	Let me call…

Two additional important familiar commands with direct objects that we have encountered in Chapter 8 are given here again:

Dimmi!	Tell me!
Dammi!	Give me!

12(IE)26

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com



The Old Market, Rome

Numbers - The Euro - Coins

The euro coin series comprises eight different denominations: 1, 2, 5, 10, 20 and 50 euro cents, €1 and €2. The euro coins have a common side and a national side. The common side of the euro coins shows the symbol of the European Union or a map of Europe (for coins minted after 2004), in order to symbolize the unity of the EU. The national side of the euro coins have designs specific to each country, surrounded by the twelve stars of the European Union around the edge of the coin. The denomination is stamped in the middle with the description **euro** or **euro cent**.

If you have a €2 coin with an unusual national side, it may be a commemorative coin. Commemorative coins have been issued since 2004 by individual countries to commemorate historical events or recent events of historical importance. Each country decides to issue and then designs their own commemorative coins. The European Central Bank approves the volume of commemorative coins that may be issued and also regulates the volume of all common euro coins.). Only the €2 coin can be made into a commemorative coin.

Remember, 100 euro cents make 1 euro. After converting your money, you may receive coins in the following denominations.

2 Euro

1 Euro = (100 Euro cents)

50 Euro cent

20 Euro cent

10 Euro cent

5 Euro cent

2 Euro cent

1 Euro cent

12(N)12

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com





Unit 3 –

At the Hotel and Restaurant





 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 13 – Arriving at the Hotel

Dialogue

In Unit 3, we follow Caterina as she joins her Italian relatives for a summer vacation on the shores of Lago Maggiore, the largest lake just north of Milan. Pietro drives his family to the Grand Hotel in the lakeside town of Stresa, where Caterina has made reservations for their stay over the phone the week before (see Chapter 12 and the note at the end of this dialogue). The family arrives at the hotel in the evening, and Pietro finds out that their stay will cost a little more than they had originally planned. When they are shown to their rooms, the family again makes some unfortunate discoveries, although by the end of the dialogue all is made right by the friendly **hotel manager (l'albergatrice).**

Watch for the use of the **passato prossimo** past tense in this dialogue, as well as another important past tense form we will introduce later in this chapter, the **imperfetto.**

L'albergatrice: Buona sera. Posso aiutarvi?
Good evening. May (I) help you all?

Pietro: Si. Abbiamo prenotato due camere la settimana scorsa per stanotte.
Yes. (We) have reserved two rooms last week for tonight.

L'albergatrice: Qual'è il Suo nome, per favore?
What is your (pol.) name, please?

Pietro: Pietro Manzini.
Pietro Manzini.

L'albergatrice: Ah, si! È tutto a posto. Ho una prenotazione per due camere vicine per sei notti.

(Ah, yes!) Everything is ready. (I) have a reservation for two adjacent rooms for six nights.

Pietro: Qual'è il prezzo per notte?
What is the price per night?

L'albergatrice: Centocinquanta per la camera matrimoniale con culla e cento per la camera singola.

One hundred fifty for the room with double bed with (a) crib and one hundred for the single room. 13(Vo)59

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 13 – Arriving at the Hotel

Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Caterina: Mi scusi, ma c'è qualcosa di più economico? Le tariffe dovrebbero essere cento e ottanta.

Excuse me (pol.), but is there something cheaper? The rates should be one hundred and eighty.

L'albergatrice: Ma, chi Le ha detto questo informazione?
But, who said (has told to you, fem. pol.) this information?

Caterina: L'albergatore. Non conosco il suo nome.
The hotel owner. (I) don't know his name.

L'albergatrice: Mi dispiace, ma lui ha sbagliato. Ha dimenticato i costi aggiuntivi per il letto supplementare e l'IVA. (lit. l'imposta valore aggiunto)

I am sorry, but he has made a mistake. (He) forgot the additional costs for the extra bed and the IVA. (value added tax; pronounced *leeva*)

Pietro: O.K. Le prendiamo. È troppo tardi. Mentre nostro figlio dormiva, abbiamo guidato per molte ore. Siamo tutti molto stancchi.

O.K. (We) (will) take them. It is very late. While our son was sleeping, (we) drove for many hours. We are all very tired.

L'albergatrice: Per piacere, compili questo modulo e firmi qui. Abbiamo bisogno del numero di targa della Sua auto* e del numero della carta di credito.

Please, fill out this form and sign here. (pol. commands). (We) need the license plate number of your (pol.) car and the credit card number.

Pietro: Va bene... Ho finito.
Very well... (I) have finished.

*From the feminine **automobile**. 13(Vo)60

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 13 – Arriving at the Hotel

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

L'albergatrice: Grazie. Le camere sono in fondo al corridoio. Sequitemi.
Thank you. The rooms are down the hallway. (You all) Follow me.

Francesca: Avete una cassaforte nella camera?
(Do) (you all) have a safe in the room?

L'albergatrice: Si. È tutto come a casa Sua. Ecco la cassaforte.
Ecco il minibar, l'aria condizionata, la TV via cavo con i canali italiani e americani, e accesso a internet. Se lo desidera, abbiamo il servizio di lavanderia.

Yes, everything is like (at) your (pol.) home. Here is the safe.
Here is the minibar, the air-conditioning, the cable TV with the Italian and American channels and internet access. If (you pol.) want (it), (we) have laundry service.

Michele: Mamma, la televisione non funziona!
Mama, the television doesn't work!

L'albergatrice: No, funziona bene. *(a Michele):* Guarda! Ecco il telecomando della TV. Premi il tasto – questo qui.

No, (it) works well. *(to Michael:)* Look! (fam. command to a child) Here is the remote control for the TV. (You fam. command) press the key – this one here.

Pietro: Mi dispiace, ma in bagno non c'è l'acqua calda.
I'm sorry, in the bath there is no hot water.

L'albergatrice: Si, il rubinetto era rotto. L'idraulico mi ha detto che l'ha riparato ieri. Lo chiamo di nuovo.

Yes, the faucet was broken. The plumber told me that (he) repaired it yesterday. (I) (will) call him again.

13(Vo)61

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 13 – Arriving at the Hotel

Dialogue (cont'd - 4)

Pietro: E può chiamare la cameriera per domani, presto.
And, could (you pol.) call the maid for tomorrow, early.

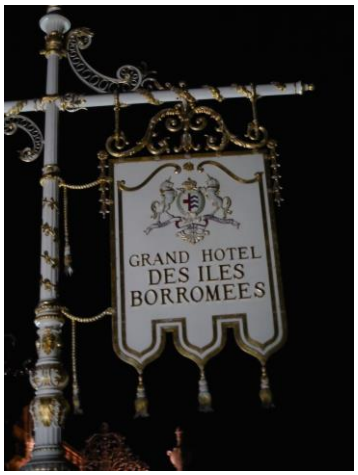
L'albergatrice: Certamente, signore. Ci penso io!
Certainly, sir. (I) (will) take care (of it)!

(*a Caterina):* E la Sua camera , è di Suo gradimento?
(*to Kathy):* And your (pol.) room, is (it) to your (pol.) liking?

Caterina: La mia camera è a posto.
My room is made up well.

Benessimo! Ora andiamo a letto perché è tardi e siamo stanchi.
Spegniamo la luce e diciamo buona notte a tutti!

Very well! Now let's go to bed because it is late and we are tired.
Let's turn off the light and let's say good night to everybody!



Note: There are many "Grand Hotels" in Italy and throughout the world. And, as every traveler soon discovers, some are more "grand" than others. This dialogue was not meant to reflect negatively on any particular hotel, but to provide conversational phrases that might be needed if everything does not go exactly as planned on a trip. For a wonderful stay on Stresa, the largest hotel is Il Grand Hotel des Iles Borromees, with room rates just a bit different from those listed for practice in our dialogue! 13(Vo)62

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - At the Hotel

il viaggiatore	traveler (masc.)
la viaggiatrice	traveler (fem.)
l'albergo	hotel
l'albergatore	hotel manager (masc.)
l'albergatrice	hotel manager (fem.)
la pensione	boarding house/bed and breakfast
l'ostello (della gioventù)	youth hostel
il pernottamento*	overnight stay*
la pensione completa	room and board (includes 3 meals a day)
la mezza pensione	room, breakfast, and 1 meal (1/2 board)
il bed and breakfast	bed and breakfast hotel
il/la receptionist	receptionist
la reception	front desk (reception)
il faccchino	porter
il portiere/il portinaio	doorman/porter
il concierge	concierge
la portineria	concierge/caretaker
il servizio di portineria	concierge services
il parcheggiatore	parking attendant
il parcheggio	parking attenant
servizio in camera	room service
la cameriera	maid
il portone	main entrance
l'atrio	lobby
l'ingresso	entrance
l'entrata	entrance
l'uscita	exit
l'uscita di emergenza	emergency exit
l'uscita di sicurezza	fire exit
divieto di uscita	no exit
l'ascensore	elevator
le scale	stairs
il corridoio	hallway
il salone	hotel dining room
la piscina	swimming pool
la sauna	sauna
la vasca idromassaggio	jacuzzi
il campo da golf	golf course
il campo da tennis	tennis court
la vista	view

13(Vo)63

Vocabulary - In the Hotel Room

la televisione/la TV	television	il comodino	night table
la TV via cavo	cable TV	l'orologio	clock
la TV via satellite	satellite TV	la radiosveglia	clock-radio/
il canale	TV channel		alarm clock
il telecomando	remote control		
la pila/la batteria	battery	accendere	to turn on (a light)
la chiave	key	spegnere	to turn off (a light)
la chiave magnetica	key card	controllare	to check/take care of
la serratura	lock	caricare	to charge a battery
lo stereo	stereo	rifare la camera	to make-up a room
il telecomando dello stereo	stereo remote control	collegare	to connect
il lettore DVD	DVD player	funzionare	to function
l'accesso a internet	internet access	rompere	to break
la conessione	the connection	riparare	to repair
il collegamento ad internet	connection to the internet		
il lavandino	bathroom sink		
il rubinetto	faucet		
l'acqua calda	hot water		
l'acqua fredda	cold water		
la tapparella	blind		
il gabinetto	toilet bowl		
la carta igenica	toilet paper		
il sapone	soap		
l'aria condizionata	air conditioning		
il riscaldamento	heating		
la cassaforte	safe		
l'elettricità	electricity		
l'attaco electtrico	electric outlet		
la spina	electric plug		
l'asciugacapelli	hair dryer	-	
il rasoio electtrico	electric razor		
il ferro arricciacapelli	curling iron		
la piastra per capelli	hair straightener		
lo sciampo	shampoo		
la lozione	lotion		
la lozione per le mani	hand lotion		
la lozione dopobarba	after shave		
la spazzola	brush		
lo spazzolino dei denti	toothbrush		
il dentifricio	toothpaste		
il pettine	comb		

13(Vo)64

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Italian Holidays

Every day in the Italian calendar is filled with celebrations of life and culture. Any visitor who spends a little time in Italy will invariably come upon a parade, festival, or religious gathering in the vibrant piazzas and streets of the Italian towns. For instance, in the **Piazza della Signoria** in Florence, on any given weekday afternoon, a parade of Florentine flag bearers dressed in Renaissance clothing may suddenly march through the piazza, accompanied by musical instruments of the period, and go through their paces. Below are the national and important religious holidays of Italy, with customary greetings for the most popular. Whatever time of year you choose to visit, celebrations await!

Boune Feste! – Happy Holidays!
Auguri di buon… – Best wishes of (for a) happy…

December 31		
L'ultimo dell'anno **La notte di San Silvestro**	New Year's Eve	Refers to the last day of the year; December 31st is the Feast day of Saint Silvestro for the Catholic Church.
January 1		
Capodanno	New Year's Day	**Buon anno nuovo! –** Happy New Year! **Felice anno nuovo! –** Happy New Year!
Jan 6		
Epifania	Epiphany	Wise men visited Jesus on this day. By tradition, gifts are exchanged and brought to children by a friendly witch called **La Befana**.
February 14		
San Valentino	Valentine's Day	**Buon San Valentino! –** Happy Valentine's!
February (variable)		
Carnevale	Carnival	Celebration prior to Lent that begins two Fridays before Ash Wednesday **(Mardi Gras)**. Costumes with masks paraded in the streets are especially popular in Venice.

13(IP)49

Cultural Note - Italian Holidays (cont'd - 2)

March 8

Festa della Donna	Women's Day	Men in Italy give mimosa flowers to the special women in their lives as a sign of respect. Now an international holiday, which is thought to have begun in the early 1900s and became popular after World War II, but the original celebration of women in Italy in the month of March dates back to Roman times.

March 17

La Festa del Unità (L'Unità) Celebration of Italian Unity	National holiday of the Unification of Italy by Giuseppe Garibaldi and Count Camillo Benso di Cavour, announced to be official March 17, 1861.

March 19

Festa di San Giuseppe Feast of St. Joseph	Auguri, Papà! – Best wishes, Dad! Celebration of fathers on this day, along with Joseph, the father to Jesus, with church services and a feast of special fried foods.

April 1

Pesce d'Aprile	April Fool's Day	The name comes from a favorite prank **(uno scherzo)** of taping a drawing of a fish to someone's back. The origin of the day dates back to Roman mythology and involves the sea.

April (variable)

Pasqua	Easter	Buona Pasqua! – Happy Easter!
Pasquetta	Easter Monday	Buona Pasquetta! – Happy Easter Monday!

April 25

Festa della Resistenza Liberation Day	Day of liberation from German occupation by the allies in 1945.

May 1

Festa dei Lavoratori	Labor Day	For Italy and most of Europe, Labor Day is celebrated May 1st. There is an older worker's holiday in Italy, **Il Calendimaggio,** in which agricultural workers took a day of rest and celebrated on May 1st (May Day) in anticipation of the long hours of hard work in the fields that would take place in the summer.

13(IP)50

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Italian Holidays (cont'd - 3)

May (second Sunday)

Festa della Mamma	Mother's Day	Auguri, Mamma! – Best wishes, Mom! The celebration of motherhood has been present since ancient times. American peace activist Julia Ward Howe began the Mother's Day celebration in May 1870 that was made into a national holiday in the United States in 1914 and first celebrated in Italy in 1957 by Don Othello Migliosi in Tordibetto.

June 2

Festa della Repubblica	National Day	National holiday to celebrate the day Italy became a republic in 1946. Giuseppe Garibaldi, who unified the Italian states, died June 2,1882.

August 15

Ferragosto	Assumption Day	Buon Ferragosto! – Happy Ferragosto! Mary, mother of Jesus, ascends into heaven. This religious celebration is central to the secular August vacation season of several weeks.

November 1

Ognissanti Il giorno dei morti	All Saints Day Day of the Dead	The traditional religious celebration of the deceased, that is now known as Halloween in the United States.

December 8

Immacolata Concezione Immaculate Conception		The religious day to celebrate the idea that Jesus was conceived by Mary through God.

December 24

Vigilia di Natale	Christmas Eve	Traditionally a night of celebration, with a large dinner **(cenone)** and afterwards midnight mass at local churches. The Pope also gives a special mass in St. Peter's Square at the Vatican.

December 25

Natale	Christmas	Buon Natale! – Merry Christmas! Religious day of celebration of Jesus' birth. Italians go to church on this day and exchange presents, up to the Epiphania in January.

Christmas greetings	Tanti auguri di Natale
Christmas gift	Regalo di Natale
Christmas greeting card	Il biglietto di auguri Natalizi 13(IP)51



Stresa on Lago Maggiore
The Regina Palace Hotel

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - **Tutto** and ***Ogni***

Tutto and **ogni** are adjectives that are similar in meaning. In many situations, either word can be used. However, the rules of grammar are different for each.

Ogni means **each/every,** and is an invariable adjective. We use this word quite a bit in conversation, as people often make reference to things done every day, or **"ogni giorno."** See below for more examples, and notice that it is never necessary to change the ending of the word **ogni**.

ogni settimana	every week
ogni mese	every month
ogni anno	every year

Tutto differs from **ogni** in that the ending will change, as with most adjectives, to reflect the gender and number of the noun that is being described. The meaning will change from the singular to the plural as well. **Tutto/tutta** means **the whole**. **Tutti/tutte** means **all/every**. The definite article **(il, la, l', i, gli, le)** is always included in the sentence if **tutto** is used. Here are some examples that use **tutto**.

tutto il giorno.	the whole day
tutta la domenica	all Sunday
tutti i ragazzi	all the boys
tutte le ragazze	all the girls

Grammar Note - Indefinite Pronouns **Tutto** and **Tutti**, **Entrambi** and **Entrambe**

Tutto and **tutti** are also used as indefinite pronouns. When referring to a group of things, use **tutto** for **everything**. When referring to a group of people, use **tutti** for a group of men and women, or only men, to mean **everybody/all**. Use **tutte** to refer to a group of women. A familiar email greeting, **"Ciao a tutti!"** can be used for, **"Hello everybody!"** to address a group of friends before relaying a message or the news of the day.

Tutti is also used in special expressions that refer to groups of two or more people:

tutti e due	both	entrambi i ragazzi	both (the) boys
tutti insiemi	all together	entrambe le ragazze	both (the) girls

A more formal way to say **both** is to use the word **entrambi** for an all male group or mixed male and female group and **entrambe** for an all female group. **Entrambi** and **entrambe** can also be used in general to refer to masculine and feminine plural nouns respectively.

Grammar Note - Expressions of Past Time

Now that we are learning how to speak in the past tense, we may want to use some of these expressions to refer to recent or more remote past events. We've already encountered some of these phrases back in Chapter 2 when discussing the days of the week. Remember that the days of the week are masculine, except for **domenica (Sunday),** which is feminine.

Notice from the list below that **ieri (yesterday/last)** is used to refer to specific times during the day. **Ieri** is invariable (the ending does not change). The ending for **scorso (last)** is gender specific (the ending changes to reflect the gender of the noun it describes).

stamattina	this morning
ieri	yesterday
l'altro ieri	the day before yesterday
ieri mattina	yesterday morning
ieri pomeriggio	yesterday afternoon
ieri sera	yesterday evening
ieri notte	last night
scorso(a)	last
l'anno scorso	last year
il mese scorso	last month
la settimana scorsa	last week
lunedì scorso	last Monday
martedì scorso	last Tuesday
mercoledì scorso	last Wednesday
giovedì scorso	last Thursday
venerdì scorso	last Friday
sabato scorso	last Saturday
domenica scorsa	last Sunday

13(G)50

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - **Imperfetto**

The **imperfetto** past tense, like the **passato prossimo,** refers to the recent past, and is useful when describing events that happened frequently in the past without a specific time frame. The **imperfetto** in Italian translates into **"used to,"** or **"was/were…ing,"** as well as the **simple past tense**. Let's learn how to form this tense, which is actually quite easy, as the same endings are added to the stems for all Italian verbs!

To change any infinitive verb into the **imperfetto** past tense, first drop the **-re** from the **-are, -ere,** or **-ire** ending. This will give stems that will have the last letters as: **a, e,** and **i**. Then, just add the following endings to the stems for all three conjugations: **vo, vi, va, vamo, vate, vano.**

Imperfetto Endings	
io	vo
tu	vi
Lei/lei/lui	va
noi	vamo
voi	vate
loro	vano

Let's see how this works by conjugating some familiar verbs listed in the table below. When pronouncing these verbs, for the **io, tu,** and **lei/lui** forms, the red vowel in each word indicates not only the ending of the stem of the verb, but also the syllable that is stressed. Therefore, the stressed syllable will be the one *just prior to the ending* we add. For the **noi** and **voi** forms, the stress falls on the first syllable of the ending that is added instead. As with the present tense, revert back to putting the stress on the root vowel for the **loro** form! The stressed syllables are underlined in the table below.

Imperfetto Conjugations			
	Abitare (used to live) (was/were living)	Vedere (used to see) (was/were seeing)	Dormire (used to sleep) (was/were sleeping)
io	abitavo	vedevo	dormivo
tu	abitavi	vedevi	dormivi
Lei/lei/lui	abitava	vedeva	dormiva
noi	abitavamo	vedevamo	dormivamo
voi	abitavate	vedevate	dormivate
loro	abitavano	vedevano	dormivano

Past Tense - **Imperfetto** (cont'd)

So, when to use the **imperfetto** past tense? Italians mainly use this tense to express an action *that was done habitually in the past but is no longer being done*. For instance, can you think of some things that might take place every day? Read the paper, go to school, go to work, or eat breakfast, lunch and dinner? If you want to talk about how you **used to do** these things in the past, use the **imperfetto!** Notice from the examples below that these sentences may have one of the adverbs of frequency included, which we remember are:

Adverbs of Frequency	
di solito	often times
spesso	very often
quasi sempre	almost always
sempre	always

Di solito, io finivo la classe all'una il lunedì.
Often times, I used to finish the class at one o'clock on Mondays.

Quando ero piccolo, andavo a casa di mia nonna molto spesso.
When I was small, I used to go to my grandmother's house very often.

Quasi sempre mi sentivo male quando viaggiavo in barca.
I almost always used to feel sick when I traveled by boat.

The other translation of this tense, **was/were -ing,** refers to *an action performed in the past without mention of a particular starting or ending time.* This is especially important if two things have happened in the past, in which case the **imperfetto** is used for the first action in order to describe the setting at the time of both actions. In this case, the completed action is given in the **passato prossimo.** From our dialogue:

Mentre il bimbo Michele dormiva, abbiamo guidato per molte ore.
While the baby Michael was sleeping, we drove for many hours.

Finally, use this form of past tense with the verbs of **thinking, believing, knowing** and **feeling: pensare, credere, sapere** and **sentire,** when referring to situations in the past:

Pensavo che...	I thought that ...
Credevo che...	I believed that...
Non sapevo che...	I didn't know that...
Mi sentivo male.	I was feeling badly.

13(V)80

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense – Imperfetto
Irregular Verbs – Bere, Dire, Fare

The verbs **bere, dire,** and **fare** have irregular stems in the **imperfetto,** although the endings are regular, as for all forms of this tense. Here are the complete conjugations for these important verbs:

	Bere (used to drink) (was/were drinking)	Dire (used to say) (was/were saying)	Fare (used to do/make) (was/were doing/making)
io	bevevo	dicevo	facevo
tu	bevevi	dicevi	facevi
Lei/lei/lui	beveva	diceva	faceva
noi	bevevamo	dicevamo	facevamo
voi	bevevate	dicevate	facevate
loro	bevevano	dicevano	facevano



Entry to the Hotel Grand des Iles Borromees

13(V)81

Past Tense – Imperfetto
Auxiliary Verbs – Avere and Essere

The verb **avere** has a regular conjugation in the **imperfetto** past tense, although the other auxiliary verb, **essere,** has an irregular conjugation. Here are both for (easy) memorization. The **imperfetto** form of these verbs is used to describe something that one **had/used to have** or how someone or something **was/used to be.** Notice again that one past tense form in Italian translates into two past forms in English! These past tense verbs are also used to describe general physical and mental states of being.

Avere – used to have/had		
io	avevo	I used to have I had
tu	avevi	you (familiar) used to have you (familiar) had
Lei lei/lui	aveva	you (polite) used to have/had she/he used to have/had
noi	avevamo	we used to have we had
voi	avevate	you all used to have you all had
loro	avevano	they used to have they had

Pietro ha una macchina rossa. Peter has a red car.
Pietro aveva una macchina rossa. Peter used to have/had a red car.

Essere – used to be/was,were		
io	ero	I used to be I was
tu	eri	you (familiar) used to be you (familiar) were
Lei lei/lui	era	you (polite) used to be/were he/she used to be/was
noi	eravamo	we used to be we were
voi	eravate	you all used to be you all were
loro	erano	they used to be they were

Francesca è bella. Frances is beautiful.
Francesca era bella. Frances used to be/was beautiful.

13(V)82

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - Imperfetto vs. Passato Prossimo

Here is a table to clarify the differences of the uses of the **passato prossimo** and the **imperfetto** past tense verb forms. Both will describe actions or events that have taken place in the past. The circumstances that surround each event determine the form to use.

Passato Prossimo	Imperfetto
Past action that took place once.	Past action that was habitual; done several times.
Stamattina ho telefonato a mia mamma. This morning I called my mother.	Telefonavo a mia mamma ogni mattina. I used to call my mother every day.
Past action that was performed a specific number of times.	Past action that took place over an extended period of time.
Sono andata dal medico per tre giorni di fila. I went to the doctor for three days in a row.	Andavo dal medico raramente quando ero giovane. I went to the doctor rarely when I was young.
Past action that was performed within a definite time period.	Past action that was performed within an indefinite time period, without a specific beginning and ending mentioned.
L'anno scorso è andato a scuola. Last year he went to school.	Da giovane, andava volentieri a scuola. When he was young, he used to go to school gladly.
Past states of being/having of a person or a thing in a specific time frame.	Past states of being/having of a person or a thing (**essere** or **avere** used alone).
Ieri ho avuto fame tutto il giorno. Yesterday I had hunger all day long. (English: I was hungry.) Caterina è stata molto felice il giorno del suo compleanno. Kathy was very happy on her birthday.	Io avevo fame. I used to have/had hunger. (English: I used to be/was hungry.) Caterina era felice. Kathy used to be/was happy.
In a compound sentence that involves two actions performed in the past, the completed action (usually given second) uses the **passato prossimo**.	In a compound sentence that involves two actions performed in the past, the setting, or the ongoing situation (usually given first), uses the **imperfetto**.
Mentre nostro figlio dormiva, abbiamo guidato per molte ore.	
While our son was sleeping, we drove for many hours.	

Verb Tables for Chapter 13

Verb Endings	Past Tense Imperfetto	Future Tense	Conditional Tense
io	vo	*	**
tu	vi	**	****
Lei/lei/lui	va	*	****
noi	vamo	***	****
voi	vate	***	****
loro	vano	****	******

Auxiliary Verb Avere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to have)	Future Tense (*********)	Conditional Tense (**********)
io	avevo	****	*****
tu	avevi	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	aveva	****	*******
noi	avevamo	******	*******
voi	avevate	******	*******
loro	avevano	*******	*********

Auxiliary Verb Essere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to be)	Future Tense (*******)	Conditional Tense (********)
io	ero	****	*****
tu	eri	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	era	****	*******
noi	eravamo	******	*******
voi	eravate	******	*******
loro	erano	*******	*********

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions - Fa and Expressions of Past Time

Fa is an adverb that means **ago**. In another context, of course, **fa** is also the third person singular of **fare,** and carries the meanings of, **he/she does/makes**. The use of **fa** as an adverb is understood from the context, as below, in these frequently used expressions:

Quanto tempo fa?	How long ago?
tempo fa	awhile ago
poco tempo fa	a short time ago/a little while ago
un po' di tempo fa	a little while ago
qualche tempo fa	some time ago
molto tempo fa	a long time ago
tanto tempo fa	a long time ago
di tanto in tanto	from time to time
un'anno fa	one year ago
molti anni fa	many years ago
dieci anni fa	ten years ago
un mese fa	one month ago
molti mesi fa	many months ago
due mesi fa	two months ago
una settimana fa	one week ago
molte settimane fa	many weeks ago
due settimane fa	two weeks ago
un giorno fa	one day ago
due giorni fa	two days ago
un'ora fa	one hour ago
due ore fa	two hours ago
alcuni minuti fa	some minutes ago
poc'anzi	a moment ago

3(IE)27



Entrance to the Hotel Grand Des Iles Borromees

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Telling Time with Reference to the Past

In order to ask and tell the time with reference to the past, we will need to use the **imperfetto** conjugation of the verb **essere** with the expressions that we have already learned in Chapter 4. Here are the expressions for telling time again.

"What time was it?" translates to both the singular and plural, as: **"Che ora era?"** or **"Che ore erano?" (lit.) What hour was (it)/What hours were (there)?**

To answer this question, choose the appropriate singular or plural Italian word for the number of hours there were/time it was: **ora (hour)** or **ore (hours)**. Then add the feminine definite article that applies for each: **l'** or **le**. So, for one o'clock, the answer will be **l'ora** and for two o'clock through midnight, the answer will be **le ore**. There is no specific translation for the English phrase "o'clock" in Italian, although the phrase **"in punto"** is occasionally used to mean **"on the dot"** if one wants to emphasize that the exact time is being given.

In the following two examples below, the subjects **l'ora** and **le ore** have been included, along with the phrase **in punto** to make Italian sentences with a structure similar to English using the past tense. However, these examples would never be used in Italy; the subject is always left out in Italian and these sentences are for reference only.

(L'ora) era l'una (in punto).	(The hour) was (at) the one (on the dot).
(Le ore) erano le due (in punto).	(The hours) were (at) the two (on the dot).

In practice, the expressions used to describe the time in Italian are much shorter than those given above, and we are left with the following true Italian phrases for one o'clock to twelve o'clock noon, in the past tense, as below:

Era l'una.	(It) was	one.
Erano le due.	(They) were	two.
Erano le tre.	(They) were	three.
Erano le quattro.	(They) were	four.
Erano le cinque.	(They) were	five.
Erano le sei.	(They) were	six.
Erano le sette .	(They) were	seven.
Erano le otto.	(They) were	eight.
Erano le nove.	(They) were	nine.
Erano le dieci.	(They) were	ten.
Erano le undici.	(They) were	eleven.
Erano le dodici.	(They) were	twelve.

3(N)14

Numbers - Telling Time with Reference to the Past (cont'd)

Here are the expressions we've previously learned to describe the special hours of midnight and noon in the past tense, along with those used to describe the times 15, 30, and 45 minutes after the hour.

la mezzanotte	midnight	Era mezzanotte.	It was midnight.
il mezzogiorno	noon	Era mezzogiorno.	It was noon.

un quarto	a quarter (15 minutes)
mezzo	a half (30 minutes)
tre quarti	three quarters (45 minutes)

So, let's put these expressions together, and again go through some examples of how to tell time, but now with reference to the past. For practice, students can pass a cardboard clock around the table, and set different times for their friends, and ask, **"Che ora era?"** or, **"Che ore erano?"**

Remember the use of the 24 hour clock for official timetables, and to subtract for times greater than 45 minutes past the hour, as we learned previously in Chapter 5.

12,00 (AM)	Era mezzanotte.	It was midnight.
1,15	Era l'una e un quarto.	It was one fifteen (AM).
2,30	Erano le due e mezzo.	It was two thirty (AM).
3,45	Erano le tre e tre quarti.	It was three forty-five (AM).
10,50	Erano le undici meno dieci.	It was ten minutes to eleven (AM).
12,00 (PM)	Era mezzogiorno.	It was noon.
13,15	Erano le tredici e cinquanta.	It was thirteen hundred 15 hours.
14,30	Erano le quattordici e trenta.	It was fourteen hundred 30 hours.
15,45	Erano le quindici e quarantacinque.	It was fifteen hundred 45 hours.
22,50	Erano le ventitre meno dieci.	It was 10 minutes to twenty two hundred hours.

3(N)15

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 14 – On the Beach at Last!

Dialogue

It is a sunny morning in Stresa several days after Caterina and Pietro's family have arrived at the hotel, and many families are now at the beach enjoying their **Ferragosto** holiday. The national Italian holiday of **Ferragosto (Feast of the Assumption)** is actually only one day, August 15. This is a religious holiday in modern Italy, but after church services the family is free to relax and enjoy the summer weather. If they can, most Italians take a few days or a couple of weeks off around this important day to return to their town of origin or to go for a traditional family vacation at the beach or in the mountains.

Caterina begins a conversation with a girl in **the cabana (la cabina)** next to her on the beach, **Elena (Helen),** while waiting for the family to join her. We have the opportunity with this dialogue to talk about the weather in both the present and the **imperfetto** past tense. Notice the use of the word **da** to mean **for** in order to indicate an action that occurred in the past but is still ongoing. Use **per** to mean **for,** in order to describe an action in the past that has been completed, along with the **passato prossimo.**

Caterina: Oggi è cosi bello in spiaggia, no? È sereno. C'è il sole. Non fa molto caldo.

Today is so beautiful at the beach, no? It is clear. It is sunny. (lit. There is sun.) It is not too hot.

Elena: Si. Mi piacciono tanto i giorni d'estate. Sono Elena. Piacere.

Yes. I like the days of summer very much. (I) am Elena. Pleased (to meet you).

Caterina: Mi chiamo Caterina. Piacere mio.
My name is Kathy. (The) pleasure is mine.

Elena: Mio marito, Tommaso, e mia figlia Concetta, sono andati a fare il bagno. Veniamo qui ogni anno. Come hai trovato quest'albergo?

My husband, Tom, and my daughter Connie, went for a swim. (We) come here every year. How (did) (you fam.) find (out about) this hotel?

14(Vo)65

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 14 – On the Beach at Last!

Dialogue (cont - 2)

Caterina: La mia famiglia è stata in quest'albergo, cinque anni fa, per una settimana, quando avevo vent'anni.
My family stayed in this hotel, 5 years ago, for a week, when (I) was 20 years old.

Sono tornata in Italia per venire a trovare mio cugino Pietro e la sua famiglia.
(I) have returned to Italy for a visit with my cousin Peter and his family.

Elena: Ma non ho visto nessuno con te questa mattina.
But (I) didn't see anyone with you this morning.

Caterina: Sono in albergo. Arriveranno presto. Mio nipote, Michele, ha fatto quel castello di sabbia là, ieri.

(They) are in the hotel. (They) will arrive soon. My nephew, Michael, made the sand castle over there, yesterday.

La settimana scorsa, il giorno di Ferragosto, è stato il suo compleanno. Lui ha tre anni.
Last week, on Ferragosto, (it) was his birthday. He is three years (old).

Elena: Molto bene! Tanti auguri a lui! Da quanto tempo stai viaggiando in Italia?
Wonderful! Best wishes (for a happy birthday) to him! For how much time (how long) (have) (you fam. been) traveling in Italy?

Caterina: Sto viaggiando in Italia da un mese.
(I) (have been) traveling in Italy for a month.

Elena: Da quando sei a Stresa?
Since when (have) (you fam.) been staying in Stresa?

Caterina: Sono a Stresa dal sedici agosto.
(I've) been staying in Stresa since August 16th.

14(Vo)66

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 14 – On the Beach at Last!

Dialogue (cont - 3)

Elena: Forse ci vediamo ancora in spiaggia. Concetta e Michele possono giocare insieme. Ora devo andare.

Perhaps (we) (will) see each other again on the beach. Connie and Michael can play together. Now, (I) must go.

Caterina: Spero di vederti ancora. Fatti vedere! Ciao!
(I) hope to see you again.
Let me see you again! (lit. Make yourself seen!) (idiomatic expression) Bye!

(*In un attimo...*)
(In a moment...)

Francesca: Ciao, Caterina. Chi era la donna con cui parlavi?
Hi, Kathy. Who was the woman with whom you (fam.) were speaking?

Caterina: Si chiama Elena. L'ho conosciuta questa mattina.
Her name is Elena. (I) met her this morning.

Francesca: Per quanto tempo hai parlato con Elena?
For how much time (how long) (did) (you fam.) speak with Elena?

Caterina: Parlavo con lei da pochi minuti quando sei arrivato tu.
Lei è molto simpatica. Speriamo di vederci dopo.

(I) was speaking with her for a few minutes when you arrived.
She is very nice. (We) hope to see each other later.

14(Vo)67

Vocabulary - On the Beach

l'isola	island
la scogliera	cliff
il mare	sea/ocean
le onde	waves
il faro	lighthouse
il porto (di mare)	sea port
il porto d'entrata	port of entry
la nave	ship
la barca	boat
il remo	oar/paddle
la barca a vela	sail boat
la barca a remi	row boat
la barca da pesca	fishing boat
la canna da pesca	fishing reel
la rete	net
il lago	lake
la spiaggia	beach
la cabina	cabana
la borsa da spiaggia	beach bag
il pallone da spiaggia	beach ball
la sabbia	sand
il castello di sabbia	sand castle
il secchiello	pail
la paletta	small shovel
la bandiera	flag
l'ombrellone	beach umbrella
il telo da spiaggia	beach towel
la crema solare	suntan lotion
il sudore	sweat
la brezza oceanica	ocean breeze
il gabbiano	sea gull
il granchio	crab
la conchiglia	sea shell/clam shell
la conchiglia d'ostrica	oyster shell
la conchiglia di strombo	conch shell

il picnic	picnic
lo zaino	backpack
il reef	reef
la barriera corallina	coral reef
il boccaglio	snorkel/mouthpiece
l'immersione	scuba diving
la mascera	mask
le pinne	flippers
il motoscafo	motor boat
lo sci nautico	water ski
lo sci d'acqua	water ski

pescare	to fish
fare il windsurf	to windsurf
fare lo sci d'acqua	water skiing
bagnarsi	to get wet/swim
andare a fare il bagno	to go for a swim
nuotare	to swim
nuotare con il boccaglio	snorkeling

14(Vo)68

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - The Weather

le prevsioni del tempo	weather forecast

la temperatura	temperature
il grado	degree
sereno(a)	clear, without clouds
mite	mild
coperto(a)	covered/overcast
nuvoloso(a)	cloudy
la nuvola	cloud
bagnato(a)	wet
la pioggia	rain
la tempesta	storm
il tuono	thunder
il lampo	lightening flash
l'arcobaleno	rainbow
il vento	wind
la brezza	cool breeze
l'aria	air
il caldo	the heat
l'umidità	humidity
afoso(a)	muggy/humid
il freddo	the cold
fresco(a)	fresh
l'ombra	shade
l'alba	sunrise
il sole	sun
il raggio	ray
il crepuscolo	dusk
il tramonto	sunset
buio(a)	dark
la luna	moon
luminoso(a)	luminous/bright
la stella	star
lucente	shining
il cielo	sky/heavens
azzurro(a)	sky blue

illuminare	to light up (sky)
soffiare	to blow (wind)
splendere	to shine (sun)

14(Vo)69



Stresa on Lago Maggiore
Promenade Along the Lake

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Ferragosto

What is the perfect Ferragosto holiday? Ask any Italian this question, and the answer will no doubt involve fond memories of past holiday traditions of family and food, and, often a passionate description of their usual family get-away to the sea or mountains. Ferragosto is known as a holiday for fun and relaxation for the entire family. As one of the oldest and well-loved holidays in Italy, most Italians have high expectations of the fulfillment that comes with their Ferragosto celebration.

The official beginning of the holiday is August 15, which the Catholic church has adopted as its own with the Feast of the Assumption (a celebration of Mother Mary's ascension into heaven to join her son, Jesus). This church tradition is thought to have been started in 580 A.D., by the Byzantine Emperor Maurice, but the holiday traditions practiced today actually date back to the Roman festival of Consuali, which itself is said to have been begun by Romulus, the founder of Rome. During Consuali, all Roman workers and animals were granted days of rest prior to the hard working days of the fall harvest. During the Roman empire, in 18 BC, Emperor Augustus expanded the tradition by making ferie Augusti (Augustus' holidays) special days set aside to pay tribute to the Roman gods, and extended the holiday to involve the entire month of August. The holiday was considered a special time for all of Roman society, and during these days all classes of Romans were able to mingle and celebrate together.

Over the centuries, many towns have adopted special traditions for this time period, such as the famous horse race, or Palio, in Siena, which takes place on August 16th, and ancient ceremonies of renewal, which involve bonfires or bathing. The tradition of going in montagne or al mare (to the mountains or to the sea) probably began with this idea of spiritual and physical renewal. Mussolini made Ferragosto a national holiday, and brought the idea of vacationing for most of the month of August into the 20th century. Companies today still close in Italy for several days surrounding the official start of the holiday on August 15th, and most Italians will close shop and take at least a week off in August if they are able. It is customary to pack a picnic lunch with foods that are cool and refreshing during the hot month of August, such as watermelon (cocomero) or other fresh fruit, cold beverages, fresh vegetables and cold pasta or rice dishes.

14(IP)53



Stresa on Lago Maggiore
Promenade

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Nessuno

Nessuno means **nobody, no one,** or **not anyone**. **Nessuno** can precede the verb when it is used as the subject of the sentence. The verb that follows will be in the third person singular **(lei, lui)** form and helping verbs are often used as part of the idea being conveyed.

Nessuno vuole lavorare oggi.
Nobody wants to work today.

When **nessuno** is not the subject of the sentence, the sentence must begin with **non** for a double negative construction.

Non ho visto nessuno. I did not see anyone.

Nessuno can also be used as an adjective, with the meaning of **none** or **any**. In this case, **nessuno** will be placed *before* the noun, and its ending will have to change according to the gender of the noun it modifies. Because of its **"uno"** ending, to change **nessuno,** we need to follow the rules for the indefinite article **un**. See below for the different forms.

Masculine Indefinite Article	
un	consonants
uno	s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn
un	vowel

Feminine Indefinite Article	
una	consonants
un'	vowel

Masculine Forms of Nessuno	
nessun	consonants
nessuno	s+consonant, z, ps, gn, pn
nessun	vowel

Feminine Forms of Nessuno	
nessuna	consonants
nessun'	vowel

The noun that **nessuno** describes must be in the singular form. The full sentence starts with **non,** for a double negative construction. Notice that in Italian there is no need to use the indefinite article **a (un,uno,una, un')** between the verb and noun, as we do in English.

Non ho nessun letto. I have no bed. (I don't have a bed/any beds.)

Non ho nessuno specchio. I have no mirror. (I don't have a mirror.)

Non ho nessuna sedia. I have no chair. (I don't have a chair.)

Non ho nessun'idea. I have no idea. (I don't have any idea.)

14(G)51

Grammar Note - The Weather

Common expressions to describe the weather are given below. In Italian, the weather conditions are described in the third person singular, with the reference to "it" left out, as usual. Notice that in Italian the same word means both **time** and **weather** – **tempo.**

il tempo	the weather
piovere	to rain
Piove.	(It) is raining./It rains.
Viene a piovere.	(It) is going to rain. (lit. Here comes the rain.)
nevicare	to snow
Nevica.	(It) is snowing.
Viene a nevicare.	(It) is going to snow. (lit. Here comes the snow.)
tirare	to cast/throw
Tira vento.	(It) is windy.
C'è sole.	It is sunny. (lit. There is sun.)
C'è nebbia.	It is foggy. (lit. There is fog.)
È nuvoloso.	It is cloudy.
È sereno.	It is clear.

For a more general assessment of the weather, Italians use the ever popular verb **fare** in the third person singular, which you will remember is **fa.** In English, the verb **to be** is used to directly refer to **"it,"** meaning **"the weather,"** and how **"it"** actually **"is"** outside. Instead, Italians speak of what **weather "it" is making** with the verb **fa.**

Che tempo fa?	What/How is the weather? (lit. What weather does it make?)	
Fa caldo.	It is hot.	(lit. It makes heat.)
Fa fresco.	It is cool.	(lit. It makes cool.)
Fa freddo.	It is cold.	(lit. It makes cold.)
Fa bel tempo.	It is nice weather.	(lit. It makes nice weather.)
Fa bello.	It is nice out.	(lit. It makes nice weather.)
Fa brutto tempo.	It is bad weather.	(lit. It makes bad weather.)
Fa brutto.	It is bad outside.	(lit. It makes bad weather.)

14(G)52

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Past Tense - Imperfetto with Dovere, Potere, Volere

We have learned that the **imperfetto** past tense most often refers to the recent past and is useful when a specific time frame is not given. First, let's review how to form this tense, which is actually quite easy, as the same endings are added to all three conjugations.

To make the **imperfetto** past tense, just drop the **-re** ending from the infinitive verb. This will give stems with the last letters of: **a, e,** and **i,** for the **-are, -ere,** and **-ire** verbs respectively. Then add the following endings to the stems for all three conjugations: **vo, vi, va, vamo, vate, vano.**

Imperfetto Endings	
io	vo
tu	vi
Lei/lei/lui	va
noi	vamo
voi	vate
loro	vano

The conjugations of the helping, or modal verbs, **dovere, potere,** and **volere** are given below for the **imperfetto.** These are regular conjugations. Notice, however, that the meaning of **dovere** and **potere** in the **imperfetto** *can differ* from the meaning when conjugated in the **passato prossimo**. Compare both past tense forms in the table below.

Imperfetto Conjugations			
	Dovere (to have to/must)	Potere (to be able to/can)	Volere (to want)
	-	-	-
Passato Prossimo	(had to)	(was able to)	(wanted to)
	avere/essere+dovuto	avere/essere+potuto	avere/essere+voluto
	-	-	-
Imperfetto	(supposed to)	(could have)	(wanted to)
io	dovevo	potevo	volevo
tu	dovevi	potevi	volevi
Lei/lei/lui	doveva	poteva	voleva
noi	dovevamo	potevamo	volevamo
voi	dovevate	potevate	volevate
loro	dovevano	potevano	volevano

14(V)85

Grammar Point - The Weather in Past Tense

Common expressions that describe the weather in the past use both the **imperfetto** as well as the **passato prossimo**. When using the **passato prossimo,** the verbs **piovere, nevicare,** and **tirare** can be conjugated using *either* **avere** *or* **essere,** as in:

Ieri ha piovuto per due ore. Yesterday, it rained for two hours..
or
Ieri è piovuto per due ore. Yesterday, it rained for two hours..

The expressions we have already encountered are given below in the **imperfetto** in the first column and in the **passato prossimo** in the second column. Notice the different meanings for each type of past tense. The words **gia (already)** and **appena (just)** are commonly used with the **passato prossimo** to give additional information.

Pioveva.	It was raining.	Ha già piovuto.	It already rained.
Nevicava.	It was snowing.	Ha appena nevicato.	It has just snowed.
Tirava vento.	It was windy.	Ha tirato vento tutto il giorno.	It was windy all day.
C'era sole.	It was sunny.		
C'era nebbia.	It was foggy.		
Era nuvoloso.	It was cloudy.		
Era sereno.	It was clear.		

We have also learned in our grammar section earlier in this chapter that when speaking about **"the weather,"** Italians speak of what **weather "it" is making,** often with the verb **fare**. The third person **imperfetto, faceva,** is used, unless ofcourse, referring to a specific time frame, in which case the **passatto prossimo, ha fatto,** should be used.

Che tempo faceva?	What was the weather?	(lit. What weather did it make?)
Come era il tempo?	How was the weather?	

Faceva caldo.	It was hot.	(lit. It made heat.)	Ha fatto caldo tutto il giorno.
Faceva fresco.	It was cool.	(lit. It made cool.)	Ha fatto fresco ieri.
Faceva freddo.	It was cold.	(lit. It made cold.)	Ha fatto freddo quest'inverno.

Faceva bel tempo.	It was nice weather.	(lit. It made nice weather.)
Faceva bello.	It was nice outside.	(lit. It made nice weather.)

Faceva brutto tempo.	It was bad weather.	(lit. It made bad weather.)
Faceva brutto tempo.	It was bad outside.	(lit. It made bad weather.)

14(V)86

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Point - **Imperfetto** vs. **Passato Prossimo**
Final Summary

Here is the final summary to clarify the differences of the uses for these two past tense verb forms. Both will describe actions or events that have taken place in the past, but the circumstances that surround each event will determine which form to use. Throughout Chapters 13 and 14, the use of the **imperfetto** to describe time, age, and the weather in the past was discussed. The **imperfetto** is also sometimes used by waiters in a restaurant (see Chapter 18), as a way to express desire.

Finally, when describing two actions that have happened in the past, the **imperfetto** should be used *along with* the **passato prossimo!** Use the **imperfetto** to describe the setting first, by referring to the time or weather, for instance, or by referring to a simultaneous action without giving a specific time frame. Then, describe the completed action that is actually the focus of the sentence with the **passato prossimo.** An example of this is found when Caterina says to Pietro, **"Parlavo con lei da pochi minuti quando sei arrivato tu,"** for, **"I was speaking with her for a few minutes when you arrived."**

Passato Prossimo	Imperfetto
Past action that took place once.	Past action that was habitual; done several times.
Past action that was performed a specific number of times.	Past action that took place over an extended period of time.
Past action that was performed within a definite time period.	Past action that was performed within an indefinite time period, without a specific beginning and ending mentioned.
Past states of being/having of a person or a thing in a specific time frame.	Past states of being/having of a person or a thing (**essere** or **avere** used alone).
In a compound sentence that involves two actions performed in the past, the completed action (usually given second) uses the **passato prossimo.**	In a compound sentence that involves two actions performed in the past, the setting, or the ongoing situation (usually given first) uses the **imperfetto.**
Describing the weather in the past in a specific time frame.	Describing the weather, telling time, and describing age with reference to the past.

Verb Tables for Chapter 14

Verb Endings	Past Tense Imperfetto	Future Tense	Conditional Tense
io	vo	*	**
tu	vi	**	****
Lei/lei/lui	va	*	****
noi	vamo	***	****
voi	vate	***	****
loro	vano	****	******

Auxiliary Verb Avere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to have)	Future Tense (*********)	Conditional Tense (**********)
io	avevo	****	*****
tu	avevi	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	aveva	****	*******
noi	avevamo	******	*******
voi	avevate	******	*******
loro	avevano	*******	*********

Auxiliary Verb Essere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to be)	Future Tense (*******)	Conditional Tense (********)
io	ero	****	*****
tu	eri	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	era	****	*******
noi	eravamo	******	*******
voi	eravate	******	*******
loro	erano	*******	*********

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 14 (cont'd)

Dovere	Past Tense Imperfetto (supposed to)	Future Tense (*********)	Conditional Tense (*********)
io	dovevo	****	*****
tu	dovevi	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	doveva	****	*******
noi	dovevamo	******	*******
voi	dovevate	******	*******
loro	dovevano	*******	*********

Potere	Past Tense Imperfetto (could have to)	Future Tense (*******)	Conditional Tense (**********)
io	potevo	****	*****
tu	potevi	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	poteva	****	*******
noi	potevamo	******	*******
voi	potevate	******	*******
loro	potevano	*******	*********

Volere	Past Tense Imperfetto (wanted to)	Future Tense (**********)	Conditional Tense (*********)
io	volevo	****	*****
tu	volevi	*****	*******
Lei/lei/lui	voleva	****	*******
noi	volevamo	******	*******
voi	volevate	******	*******
loro	volevano	*******	*********







Scenes from the Beach on Lido Island, Venice

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Idiomatic Expressions – "Quanti anni aveva?"

In Chapter 3, we learned the Italian expressions that correspond to, "How old are you?" and "How old is he/she?" If you remember, these expressions use the auxiliary verb **avere** to describe how many years one has accumulated throughout their life. Also, we learned to drop the final vowel for the following numbers that come before **anni** in the response: numbers that end in **uno,** or when counting by tens with numbers that end in the letter **–i (venti)** and **–a (trenta, quaranta,** etc**).**

Quanti anni hai?	How many years do you have?	(How old are you?)
Ho quarant'anni.	I have 40 years.	(I am 40 years old.)
Quanti anni ha?	How many years does he/she have?	(How old is he/she?)
Ha quarant'anni.	He/she has 40 years.	(He/she is 40 years old.)

In order to refer to someone's age in the past tense, as in, "How old were you?" and "How old was he/she?" at a specific time in his or her life, use the **imperfetto** form of **avere.** We can also use this form to refer to objects, such as that old car Pietro was driving before he finally bought a new one!

Quanti anni avevi?	How many years did you have?	(How old were you?)
Aveva vent'anni?	I had 20 years.	(I was 20 years old.)
Quanti anni aveva?	How many years did he/she have?	(How old was he/she?)
Aveva vent'anni.	He/she had 20 years.	(He/she was 40 years old.)

Quanti anni aveva la vecchia macchina di Pietro?
How many years did Peter's old car have? (How old was Peter's car?)

La vecchia macchina aveva cinque anni.
It had 5 years. (It was 5 years old.)

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com



A Gondola Ride in Venice

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Da Quanto Tempo?/Da Quando?

There are special expressions to be learned in Italian if one wants to question "how long" or "since when" something has been going on. These expressions refer to the past and the present at the same time. In Italian, the present tense form of **stare** with the gerund ("ing" form) of the action verb is used for both the question and the answer. In English, we use the past tense of the verb with the gerund for a more complicated and longer phrase.

The Italian phrase always starts with the word **da,** which in this case means **for,** to describe *an action that is still going on* and has not yet been completed, and is followed with the present tense.

Use **per,** the word that means **for** in Italian, when *the action has been completed*, and follow with the past tense.

Da	+quanto tempo/da quanti... anni,mesi	+present tense stare	+ gerund?
For	+how much/many time... years/months	+have you been	+ gerund?

So, when Caterina makes a new friend at the hotel in our dialogue, the question Elena asks to get to know her better, and the answer, are as follows:

Elena:	Da	+quanto tempo	+stai viaggiando... in Italia?
	For	+how much time/how long	+(have you been) travel(ing)in Italy?
Caterina:	Sto viaggiando in Italia		da un mese.
	(I have been) travel(ing) in Italy		for one month.

And, when Elena wants to know how long Caterina has been in Stresa, she asks the following, again in the present tense, and Caterina answers:

Elena:	Da	+quando	+sei... a Stresa?
	Since	+when	+(have you been)... in Stresa?
Caterina:	Sono a Stresa		dal sedici agosto.
	(I have been) stay(ing) in Stresa		since August 16th.

14(N)16

Numbers - **Da Quanto Tempo?/Da Quando?** (cont'd)

So, when in Italian do we use the **imperfetto** when referring to something that has been going on in the past? The **imperfetto** is used when one action was started in the past and was still in progress at the same time another action was completed.

An example of this situation occurs in our dialogue. Pietro asks Caterina how long she and Elena had been talking. Since this action has been completed, he uses **per** with the **passato prossimo.**

Pietro: Per quanto tempo hai parlato con Elena?
For how long were you talking with Elena?

Caterina's answer now must combine two actions that occurred almost simultaneously in the past – her conversation with Elena, which lasted an indefinite amount of time, and Pietro's arrival, which occurred once and was completed. So, Caterina uses the **imperfetto** to describe her talk with Elena and the **passato prossimo** to describe Pietro's action.

Caterina: Parlavo con lei da pochi minuti quando sei arrivato tu.
(I) was speaking with her for a few minutes when you arrived.

In effect, the **imperfetto** has been used to set up, or give the setting of a particular point in time by describing what was going on in the surrounding area when something else was also happening. In many instances, this might involve a brief description of the weather or mention of the time of day, which we have learned commonly uses the **imperfetto.** Then, the completed action that will be the focus of the sentence is easily described in the second part of the sentence with the **passato prossimo.**

Now that we have completed learning about the **imperfetto,** keep the list of uses of the **passato prossimo** vs. the **imperfetto** from the verb section in this chapter for easy reference. Practice using the different forms of the past tense by relaying simple stories from your day to your family and friends, and soon both verb forms will come naturally and become easy to remember (really)!

14(N)17

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 15 – Sightseeing!

Dialogue

For this dialogue, we listen in on a discussion between Pietro, Francesca, and Caterina, while they are having breakfast at the outdoor **cafe (caffè)** of their hotel in Stresa. They talk about the weather the day before, using the **imperfetto** past tense. Then, they make their **sightseeing (giro turistico)** plans for the day based on the current weather. It should be noted that Isola Bella is a small island within Lago Maggiore and is not far from Stresa by boat. The island is composed almost entirely of the Palazzo Borromeo and its classic Italianate garden. Finally, they decide to ask **the concierge (il portiere)** for directions to the 18th Century Villa Ducale, which is in Stresa proper. Only after obtaining directions does the family find out that the villa is closed to the public that day – since it is Monday!

Caterina:	Ieri c'era il sole ed era sereno. Ma oggi tira vento. Yesterday (it) was sunny and (it) was clear. But today (it) is windy. (lit. it makes wind.)
Francesca:	Si. È anche nuvoloso. Forse nessuno vuole andare a fare un giro turistico oggi. Yes. (It) is also cloudy. Perhaps no one wants to go sightseeing today.
Pietro:	No, non è nulla. Fra poco sarà bello. No, (it) doesn't mean anything. In a little while, (it) will be nice.
Francesca:	Allora, volete andare all'Isola Bella? Il giardino è fantastico! Then, (do) (you all) want to go to Isola Bella? The garden is fantastic!
Caterina:	No, non voglio andare in barca con il vento, le onde... forse potremmo andare alla Villa Ducale. Hanno i dipinti del Rinascimento là. No, (I) don't want to go in (a) boat with the wind, the waves... perhaps (we) could go to Villa Ducale. They have paintings from the Renaissance there.
Francesca:	Hai ragione. Ma dov'è la villa? (You fam.) are right. But where is the villa?
Caterina:	Non lo so. Domandiamo al portiere. (I) don't know. Let's ask the concierge. 15(Vo)71

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 15 – Sightseeing!

Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

(Dopo pochi minuti….
(After a few minutes….)

Caterina *(al portiere):*	Mi scusi, ma, mi può dire dov'è la Villa Ducale*?
(to the concierge):	Excuse me (pol.), but, can (you pol.) tell me where the Villa Ducale is?
Il portiere:	Ma, certo! È molto famosa. È in Corso Umberto Primo.**
	But, certainly! (It) is very famous. (It) is on Umberto the First Street.
Francesca:	È lontano da qui?
	Is (it) far from here?
Il portiere:	No, è circa quindici minuti a piedi.
	No, (it) is about 15 minutes (walking) by foot.
Francesca:	Come si arriva a Corso Umberto?
	How (does) one arrive at (get to) Umberto Street?
Il portiere:	Di fronte all'albergo, prendete la via Lago fino alla fine. Poi, girate a destra. Andate dritto verso est in via Cavei. Conoscete via Cavei?
	In front of the hotel, (you all) take Lago Street to the end. Then, (you all) turn to the right. (You all) go due east on Cavei Street. (Do) (you all) know (are you all familiar with) Cavei Street?
Francesca:	Ah… sapevo che via Cavei è la strada dove ci sono molti negozi di moda a Stresa. Ho comprato gli occhiali da sole lì.
	Ah… (I) found out (learned) that Cavei street is the street where there are many fashionable shops in Stresa. (I) bought sunglasses there.

15(Vo)72

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 15 – Sightseeing!

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Il portiere: Si, va bene. Allora. Quando avete visto la chiesa all'angolo di via Cavei, scendete le scale davanti alla chiesa. Dietro la chiesa c'è la Villa Ducale.

Yes, good. Now. When (you all) have seen the church at the corner of Cavei Street, go down the stairs in front of the church. Behind the church (there) is the Villa Ducale.

Caterina: A che ora chiude il museo?
At what time (does) the museum close?

Il portiere: Di solito, il museo chiude alle diciannove. Ma oggi non è aperto. È lunedì!
Usually, the museum closes at 1900 hours (7 PM). But today, (it) is not open. It is Monday!

***Note that the Villa Ducale (formerly Casa Bolongaro) now houses the International Centre for Rosminian Studies, and is not actually an art museum, as implied by the dialogue. The building, with many frescos, a library, and its surrounding gardens, is open to the public, though. The address is correct, but the directions are fictional, and for purposes of this dialogue only!

****Umberto I**, written out as **Umberto Primo**, refers to **Umberto the First of Italy,** who became king of Italy in 1878, and was assassinated in 1900. Umberto I's son, Victor Emmanuel III, succeeded him. Victor Emmanuel III had a long reign, although he acted primarily as a figurehead during his later years as king. Victor Emmanuel III is known for having the fascist leader Benito Mussolini arrested and then abdicating the throne on June 5, 1944, the day after the allies liberated Rome at the end of World War II. 15(Vo)73

Vocabulary - Sightseeing

il/la turista	tourist
i turisti/le turiste	tourists
l'agenzia turistica	travel agency
la guida turistica	tourist guide
il giro	tour/excursion
il giro turistico	sightseeing tour
la passeggiata	the walk
la gita	outing/excursion
l'avventura*	adventure
avventuroso(a)	adventurous
la visita	visit/tour
la cartina	map
l'itinerario	itinerary/schedule
il programma	plan/program
l'orario	schedule
il duomo	cathedral
la cattedrale	cathedral
la chiesa	church
il monastero	monestary
il campanile	bell tower
la villa	mansion
il castello	castle/fortress/mansion
la storia	history
storico(a)	historic
il racconto	story/account
la cultura	culture
antico(a)	ancient/antique
le rovine	ruins
l'architecttura	architecture
la città vecchia	old town
il ponte vecchio	the old bridge (Florence)
la fontana	fountain
l'arco	arch
il monumento	monument
il giardino botanico	botanical garden

il museo	museum
la galleria	art gallery/arcade/museum
la galleria	gallery/covered shopping mall
l'opera	job/creative work/musical theater
in concerto	in concert
l'arte	art
la mostra	show/exhibit
il dipinto	painting
la pittura	painting
il quadro	picture
il ritratto	portrait
l'affresco	fresco (painting on a wall)
la scultura	sculpture

il Rinascimento	Renaissanc
il Cinquecento	16th Century
il Risorgimento	19th Century
	nationalization of Italy
il Novecento	20th Century

la zona dei negozi	shopping area
l'area pedonale	pedestrian area (no cars)

la macchina fotografica	camera
la fotografia/la foto	photograph
fotografare	to take a picture
fare una foto	to take a picture

suonare	make a sound/ring (phone)
	to play an instrument

*Additional definitions include: **an ordeal, escapade, affair** or **fling,** as in a **summer fling (avventura estiva)** or a **one-night stand (avventura di una notte).** 15(Vo)74

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Finding One's Way/Directions

Most Italians are quite friendly and helpful to tourists, especially if a polite phrase is used to initiate the conversation, such as,**"Mi scusi…"** or **"Per favore…"** Once you have someone's attention, the word, **"Può?" ("Could you?"**from **potere),** when followed by an infinitive verb, will enable you to ask politely for whatever you need. Some examples we learned in Chapters 5 and 6 include the phrases, **"Mi può dire?" ("Could you tell me?")** and **"Mi può portare?" ("Could you take me?").** **"Puo chiamare...?"** means, **"Could you call…?"** a taxi, for instance, or a person. We revisit this polite word **può** in the list below as we ask for directions! The polite word **"Sa..?" ("Do you know?"** from **sapere)** is also useful to ask someone if they know about the information we need. And, of course, a nice way to end the conversation would be to say, **"Mille grazie!"**

Mi scusi, mi può dire…	Excuse me, could (you pol.) tell me…
…dov'è il duomo?	….where is the cathedral?
…dov'è la galleria?	….where is the shopping mall?
Sa dov'è il museo?	(Do you pol.) know where the museum is?
Cerco/Cerchiamo…	I am looking for/We are looking for…
Ho/Abbiamo bisogno di indicazioni.	I/We need directions.
Ho/Abbiamo bisogno di un'informazione.	I/We need information.
Sa come arrivare a…?	(Do you pol.) know how to get to…?
Vado bene per…?	Am I going the right way for…?
No, sta andando nella direzione sbagliata.	No, you are going in the wrong direction.
È lontano da qui?	Is it far from here?
È vicino da qui?	Is it close to here?
A quanta dista?	How far is (it)?
Quant'è lontano da…?	How far is (it) from…?
A quanti chilometri è da…?	How many kilometers is it from…?
Quanto tempo a piedi?	How long (walking) on foot?
Deve camminare per un'isolato.	You must walk for one block.
Deve seguire per…	You must follow for…
Deve proseguire per…	You must continue for…
Mi sono perso(a).	I am lost. (male/female)
Come si arriva a…?	How do I get to…? (lit. How does one arrive at…?)
È questa la strada per…?	Is this the road/street for…?
Come si chiama questa strada?	What is the name of this road/street?
Dove porta questa strada?	Where (does) this road/street go (lit. take me?)
Grazie per l'informazione.	Thank you for the information.
Mille grazie!	Thank you very much! / A thousand thanks!

Cultural Note - Taking in Italian Culture and Shops

Many books have been written about the art and architecture of Italy. Even those who would not normally spend time admiring works of art often find themselves drawn into one of the many museums, historical palaces, or churches in Italy. A complete list would be exhaustive, but for the curious, a short list of some easily recognizable works of art and architecture – and where to find them – is included at the end of this section. As many of you may or may not know, the **Mona Lisa** (la Gioconda), a famous portrait by the Italian genius Leonardo da Vinci, is not on this list, as it is in Paris, at the Louvre!

The **Last Supper** (L'Ultima Cena), da Vinci's most well-known fresco, can, thankfully, still be viewed in Milan despite the destruction of the adjacent walls of the monastery during the bombing of World War II; this is due to the dedication of the townspeople, who protected it with sandbags. The monastery has been rebuilt, and the Last Supper now exists in a climate controlled envirnoment, which protects its fragile paint from heat and humidity. A limited number of visitors is admintted each day through the church of Santa Maria delle Grazie.

The larger museums in Italy often open remain open from 8-9 AM through 7 PM. Smaller museums may close at 1 PM for siesta, and reopen later in the day, around 4 PM, so it is advisable to check the hours of operation. Museums may or may not be closed on Mondays. There may be extremely long lines at some of the most famous museums and sites (the Vatican and the Colosseum in Rome, or the Uffizi gallery in Florence, for instance) but now it is fairly easy to buy tickets ahead of time, either over the internet, by phone, or through tour guides.

Churches are usually open for viewing from early in the morning, about 7-8 AM, until 12:30 PM, and then reopen from 4-7 PM, every day except Sunday (when services are held).

For those who prefer shopping to, or along with, their dose of culture, shops are usually open 9:30 AM to 1 PM, close for lunch, reopen between 3-4 PM and then usually remain open until 8 PM. Most family-run shops are closed on Sundays and may also be closed on Mondays. One of the most famous shopping strips in the world is actually on a bridge - **the old bridge,** or **Ponte Vecchio,** in Florence, where gold and jewelry are found in abundance. And, of course, Venice is known for beautiful glass pieces from the island of Murano and also for wonderful, hand painted masks for **Carnevale** (Mardi Gras). Milan and Rome are known as fashion centers, and it would be difficult to miss the high end shops that line the piazza around the Spanish steps in Rome, but most mid-sized cities in Italy also have an good number of designer boutiques. The greatest discounts are found the last week of July, when almost every shop puts up signs in their window advertising **discounts** (sconti) of 50% or more at the end of the season.

A note on visiting during August – during the weeks of **Ferragosto** in early to mid-August, most small shop owners and restaurant owners will close their businesses and head for the beaches or mountains. Smaller towns may seem deserted to the visitor. It may be best to stay in the country for these weeks in August, as the Italians do! 15(IP)56

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Taking in Italian Culture and Shops (cont'd)

Milan -	Leonardo da Vinci's Last Supper – Church of Santa Maria delle Grazie
	Il Duomo (di Santa Maria Nascente) – fifth largest cathedral in the world
	Lake region – Lago Maggiore and Lago Como
Florence -	Uffizi Gallery of Art
	Michelangelo's statue of David at the Academy Gallery
	Il Duomo (di Santa Maria del Fiore) – third largest cathedral in the world
	Ponte Vecchio (Old Bridge)
	Piazza della Signoria
	Pitti Palace
	Boboli Gardens
	Palazzo Vecchio
Pisa -	Leaning Tower
Siena -	The Palio horserace (August 16)
Rome -	Vatican museum
	St. Peter's Basilica (largest Catholic cathedral in the world)
	Michelangelo's Creation frescos at The Sistine Chapel
	Colosseum / Roman Forum / Baths of Caracalla
	The Trevi Fountain
	The Spanish Steps
	Villa Borghese museum
	Villa Medici
	Pantheon
	Victor Emmanuel Monument
	Piazza Navona
	Piazza del Popolo
Abruzzo	Tivoli Gardens
Naples -	Ruins of Pompeii
	Amalfi Coast
	Island of Capri
Venice -	St. Mark's Square
	St. Mark's Basilica and Campanile
	Doge's Palace
	Grand Canal – gondolas and Rialto Bridge
	Island of Murano – hand-blown, decorative glass
	Island of Burano – handmade lace
	Art Biennal (Biennale Arte)
	Peggy Guggenheim Museum
	Lido beaches
Verona -	Juliet's balcony (from Shakespeare's Romeo and Juliet)
	Castelvecchio
	Lago Garda – largest lake in Italy

15(IP)57



Museo Rosminiano Art Show, Stresa on Lago Maggiore

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - **Niente** and **Nulla**

Niente and **nulla** both mean **nothing**, and are for the most part interchangeable. **Niente** is also used with the meaning of **not… anything**. **Niente** can precede the verb when it is used as the subject of the sentence. The verb that follows will be in the third person singular **(lei/lui)** form.

Niente è buono stasera.
Nothing is good this evening.

When **niente** is not the subject of the sentence, the sentence must begin with **non,** in order to make a double negative construction. **Nulla** can also be used in this way, and is heard in many frequently used expressions, a few of which are given below:

Non ho fatto niente.	I did not do anything.
Buon'a nulla.	Good for nothing.
Non significa nulla.	(It) means nothing.
Per nulla.	Not in the least. (lit. It was nothing.)
Da nulla.	Made from scratch (idiomatic)
Non so nulla di…	I know nothing of…
Non costa nulla.	(It) doesn't cost anything.
Non fare niente.	Don't do anything.

Niente can also be used as an adjective, in which case it is invariable (the ending does not change). The noun it describes must be in the singular form. The full sentence begins with **non,** in order to make a double negative construction. Notice that in Italian **niente** is followed by **di** if placed before an adjective and **da** if placed before an infinitive verb.

Non ho niente di fresco da vendere oggi.	I have nothing fresh to sell today.
Non ho niente da fare oggi.	I have nothing to do today.
Non ho niente da darti.	I don't have anything to give to you.

If one has something – **qualcosa** - rather than nothing, the same rules listed above apply:

Ho qualcosa di fresco da vendere oggi.	I have something fresh to sell today.
Sto cercando qualcosa da mangiare.	I am looking for something to eat.

15(G)53

Grammar Note - Expressions of Future Time

In this chapter, we will learn how to speak in the future tense. We may want to use some of the expressions listed below to refer to specific times in the future. We've already encountered some of these phrases back in Chapter 2 during our discussion of the days of the week. Notice that the ending for **domani (tomorrow)** is invariable (does not change), but the ending of **prossimo (next)** is gender specific (will change to reflect the masculine or feminine form of the noun it is describing).

For events to take place in the near future, conversational Italian often uses the simple present tense. This makes sense if we remember that the present tense can be translated as, "am going to…" and so can be used to describe an event that you are sure will happen in the near future. This is called the "intentional future." When speaking in Italian, then, the future tense is generally reserved for the more remote future, and is also used to emphasize that the event will take place in the future.

stasera	tonight
domani	tomorrow
dopo domani	the day after tomorrow
domani mattina	tomorrow morning
domani pomeriggio	tomorrow afternoon
domani sera	tomorrow evening/tomorrow night

prossimo(a)	next
l'anno prossimo	next year
il mese prossimo	next month
la settimana prossima	next week
la notte prossima	the next night
lunedì prossimo	next Monday
martedì prossimo	next Tuesday
mercoledì prossimo	next Wednesday
giovedì prossimo	next Thursday
venerdì prossimo	next Friday
sabato prossimo	next Saturday
domenica prossima	next Sunday

Notice the use of **fra** in these last phrases to denote the reference to time:

fra poco	in a little while
fra un giorno/un mese/un anno	in one day/one month/one year
fra due/tre… giorni/mesi/anni	in two/three… days/months/years
fra una settimana	in one week
fra due/tre settimane	in two/three weeks

15(G)54

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Adverbial Prepositions and Directions

The following adverbs are often used as prepositions by themselves, or with prepositions, and are useful to know when asking for directions.

vicino a	near/beside/next to
lontano da	far from
là/lì	there
di là	over there
la giù/la su	down there/up there
davanti a	in front of, before
di fronte a	in front of
(di) dietro	behind/after
dentro	in/inside
fuori di	outside/out of
sopra	on top of/above
su	on/upon
sotto	under/below/ underneath

Common phrases used for asking and giving directions are given below. It is customary when asking for directions or information to begin with the polite, **"Mi scusi…"** Also, remember our useful polite phrase, **"Mi può dire…?"** for, **"Could you tell me…?"**

le indicazioni	the directions	nord	north
la via/la calle	road/Venetian street	sud	south
la strada	street	est	east
sull'altro lato della strada	across the street	ovest	west
quella via	that way/that street		
l'isolato	the block		
all'angolo	at the corner	a nord di	north of
dietro l'angolo	around the corner	a sud di	south of
l'incrocio	intersection	a est di	east of
verso	toward	a ovest di	west of
lontano da	away from		
fino alla fine	to the end		
fin che arriva a	until you arrive at	diretto a nord	due north
diritto (davanti a sé)	straight ahead	diretto a sud	due south
sempre diritto	straight ahead	diretto a est	due east
giri a destra	you (pol.) turn to the right	diretto a ovest	due west
giri a sinistra	you (pol.) turn to the left		
scendi	you (pol.) go down		
attraversi	you (pol.) go across		

15(G)55



Tourists Walking Along via Dante, Milan

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Future Tense

The future tense is used in Italian to discuss things that may happen, and also to add emphasis to a future event. Conversational Italian often uses the simple present tense to describe future events that will happen for sure, such as for arrivals and departures of a train or plane. Along these lines, the present tense is also used in Italian to express the "intentional future," which corresponds to the English phrase, "I am going to..." Although the future tense is used less frequently in Italian than in English, it is an important tense, and luckily a fairly simple tense to learn how to conjugate. The endings that take us into the future are the same for all three conjugations, and are always regular!

To change any infinitive verb into the future tense, first drop the final **–e** to create stems that end in the letter **r.** For all **–are** verbs, the **a** that remains in the **–ar** ending of the stem must then be changed to an **e.** This leaves stems with endings as follows for the three conjugations of **-are, -ere,** and **–ire** verbs: **-er, -er,** and **-ir.** Then, add the following endings below to the stems for all three conjugations:

Future Tense Endings	
io	ò
tu	ai
Lei/lei/lui	à
noi	emo
voi	ete
loro	anno

When pronouncing these verbs, the stress will always be on the syllable that begins with the letter **r,** which will be **-ro, -ra,** or **-re**. This will be the *last syllable* of the **io** and **lei/lui** forms, and the *second to last syllable* of the remaining forms. The **io** and **lei/lui** forms are always written with an accent on the final vowel as a reminder.

Future Tense Conjugations			
Future	Abitare (will live)	Vendere (will sell)	Finire (will finish)
io	abiterò	venderò	finirò
tu	abiterai	venderai	finirai
Lei/lei/lui	abiterà	venderà	finirà
noi	abiteremo	venderemo	finiremo
voi	abiterete	venderete	finirete
loro	abiteranno	venderanno	finiranno

Future Tense - Auxilliary Verbs
Avere and **Essere**

The verbs **avere** and **essere** have irregular stems in the future tense, although the endings for each are regular, as are the endings for all verbs in the future tense! The stem for **avere** is **avr** and the stem for **essere** is **sar.** Here are the complete conjugations for both for (easy) memorization, with an example you might recognize from a famous American song sung by Doris Day in Alfred Hitchcock's film, *The Men Who Knew Too Much* from 1956, **"Che sarà, sarà."** The composer, Jay Livingston, originally copied the phrase from an Italian motto he saw carved in a stone castle in a movie from 1954, called *The Barefoot Contessa*. He felt that the Spanish spelling of these words would be more familiar to Americans than the Italian, and so changed the title on the copyrighted lyrics to the Spanish, **"Que sera, sera,"** despite the fact that this phrase does not make grammatical sense in Spanish!

Avere – will have		
io	avrò	I will have
tu	avrai	you (familiar) will have
Lei/lei/lui	avrà	you (polite) she/he will have
noi	avremo	we will have
voi	avrete	you all will have
loro	avranno	they will have

Caterina ha fame. Kathy has hunger. (English: is hungry)
Caterina avrà fame. Kathy will have hunger.
(English: will be hungry)

Essere – will be		
io	sarò	I will be
tu	sarai	you (familiar) will be
Lei/lei/lui	sarà	you (polite) she/he will be
noi	saremo	we will be
voi	sarete	you all will be
loro	saranno	they will be

La casa di Pietro è bella. Peter's house is beautiful.
La casa di Pietro sarà bella. Peter's house will be beautiful.
Che sarà, sarà. Whatever will be, will be. 15(V)92

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Future Tense - Verbs with Irregular Stems
Verbs that Drop the Stem Vowel

The stem vowel for many verbs is often dropped in the future tense to create an irregular future stem. We have just seen this happen with the verb **avere,** which has the irregular stem **avr.** Two of our helping verbs, **dovere** and **potere,** also fall into this category for the future tense. As always, though, the endings for the future tense are regular, as you will see from the following table:

	Andare (will go)	Dovere (will have to)	Potere (should have to)	Sapere (will know)	Vedere (will see)	Vivere (will live)
io	andrò	dovrò	potrò	saprò	vedrò	vivrò
tu	andrai	dovrai	potrai	saprai	vedrai	vivrai
Lei/lei/lui	andrà	dovrà	potrà	saprà	vedrà	vivrà
noi	andremo	dovremo	potremo	sapremo	vedremo	vivremo
voi	andrete	dovrete	potrete	saprete	vedrete	vivrete
loro	andranno	dovranno	potranno	sapranno	vedranno	vivranno

Future Tense - Verbs with Irregular Stems
Verbs that Do Not Change the Letter **A** in the Stem

There are a few very important two syllable **–are** verbs that drop the final **e** from the infinitive, and then simply add the regular future endings onto their short stem. Again, the endings for the future tense will always be regular, as you will see from the following table:

	Dare (will give)	Fare (will do/make)	Stare (will be/stay)
io	darò	farò	starò
tu	darai	farai	starai
Lei/lei/lui	darà	farà	starà
noi	daremo	faremo	staremo
voi	darete	farete	starete
loro	daranno	faranno	staranno

15(V)93

Future Tense - More Verbs with Irregular Stems

The following verbs have irregular stems that create a "double r" when combined with the regular endings. You will notice that our important helping verb, **volere,** falls into this category for the future tense.

	Bere (will drink)	Tenere (will keep/hold)	Venire (will come)	Volere (will want)
io	berrò	terrò	verrò	vorrò
tu	berrai	terrai	verrai	vorrai
Lei/lei/lui	berrà	terrà	verrà	vorrà
noi	berremo	terremo	verremo	vorremo
voi	berrete	terrete	verrete	vorrete
loro	berranno	terranno	verranno	vorranno

Grammar Point - Use of Two Verbs in the Same Sentence with the Future Tense

For compound sentences in Italian, in which the verb for the main phrase is in the future tense, the verb in the subordinate clause is usually in the future tense as well. In other words, most times, when we start out a sentence in the future, we also end the sentence in the future in Italian. The subordinate clause is easily recognized, as it will begin with words like **se (if), quando (when),** or **appena (just, as soon as)**. See below for some examples of how this works:

Viaggerò in Italia se guadagnerò molti soldi quest'anno.
(I) will travel to Italy if (I) (will) earn a lot of money this year.

Avremo molto caldo quando andremo in spiagga.
(We) will be very hot when (we) (will) go to the beach.

Faremo shopping appena arrivremo in centro.
(We) will go shopping as soon as we (will) arrive downtown.

15(V)94

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 15

Verb Endings	Past Tense Imperfetto	Future Tense	Conditional Tense
io	vo	ò	**
tu	vi	ai	****
Lei/lei/lui	va	à	****
noi	vamo	emo	****
voi	vate	ete	****
loro	vano	anno	******

Auxiliary Verb Avere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to have)	Future Tense (will have)	Conditional Tense (*********)
io	avevo	avrò	*****
tu	avevi	avrai	*******
Lei/lei/lui	aveva	avrà	*******
noi	avevamo	avremo	*******
voi	avevate	avrete	*******
loro	avevano	avranno	*********

Auxiliary Verb Essere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to be)	Future Tense (will be)	Conditional Tense (********)
io	ero	sarò	*****
tu	eri	sarai	*******
Lei/lei/lui	era	sarà	*******
noi	eravamo	saremo	*******
voi	eravate	sarete	*******
loro	erano	saranno	*********

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 15 (cont'd)

Dovere	Past Tense Imperfetto (supposed to)	Future Tense (will have to)	Conditional Tense (*********)
io	dovevo	dovrò	******
tu	dovevi	dovrai	********
Lei/lei/lui	doveva	dovrà	********
noi	dovevamo	dovremo	*********
voi	dovevate	dovrete	********
loro	dovevano	dovranno	**********

Potere	Past Tense Imperfetto (could have to)	Future Tense (will be able to)	Conditional Tense (********)
io	potevo	potrò	*******
tu	potevi	potrai	********
Lei/lei/lui	poteva	potrà	********
noi	potevamo	potremo	*********
voi	potevate	potrete	********
loro	potevano	potranno	**********

Volere	Past Tense Imperfetto (wanted to)	Future Tense (will want to)	Conditional Tense (**********)
io	volevo	vorrò	******
tu	volevi	vorrai	********
Lei/lei/lui	voleva	vorrà	********
noi	volevamo	vorremo	********
voi	volevate	vorrete	********
loro	volevano	vorranno	**********

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Talking About Events in Future and Past Tense

When traveling, one often has to ask for a specific time transportation will be arriving or leaving, or what time an event will be starting. Here are some examples of questions you may need to ask, which we have already encountered in the present tense in Chapter 5. Now that we understand the past and future tenses, however, we will revisit these phrases, with examples for each below.

Remember, there is no insertion of the words "does" or "did" in Italian when asking a question, as there is in English. Several of the irregular past participles we have learned will be used in these phrases and combined with either **avere** or **essere** to form the **passato prossimo**. Finally, see the next chapter for an explanation of how to conjugate **cominciare** in the future tense.

A che ora....?	(At) What time (does)....?
A che ora arriva l'aereo?	At what time (does) the airplane arrive? (lit. At what hour arrives the airplane?)
A che ora arriverà l'aereo?	At what time will the airplane arrive?
A che ora è arrivato l'aereo?	At what time (did) the airplane arrive?
A che ora parte il treno?	At what time (does) the train leave?
A che ora partirà il treno?	At what time will the train leave?
A che ora è partito il treno?	At what time (did) the train leave?
A che ora comincia il viaggio?	At what time (does) the trip start?
A che ora comincerà il viaggio?	At what time will the trip start?
A che ora è cominciato* il viaggio?	At what time (did) the trip start?
A che ora inizia il film?	At what time (does) the movie begin?
A che ora inizierà il film?	At what time will the movie begin?
A che ora è iniziato* il film?	At what time (did) the movie begin?
A che ora finisce il film?	At what time (does) the movie end?
A che ora finirà il film?	At what time will the movie end?
A che ora è finito* il film?	At what time (did) the movie end?

*In these two examples, the use of **essere** for the **passato prossimo** may be a little confusing. Just remember our rule to use **essere** when the subject is "it." In these examples, the subjects are **"the trip"** and **"the film,"** and both are things, rather than persons. (Notice how the subject is at the end of the sentence, since we are asking a question.) In technical terms, **essere** is used because the verbs here do not have a direct object (are intransitive) and can stand alone if written as a simple sentence with their subject, as in: **"Il viaggio è cominciato; Il film è iniziato; Il film è finito."**

Numbers - Talking About Events in Future and Past Tense (cont'd)

A che ora apre il museo?	At what time (does) the museum open?
A che ora aprirà il museo?	At what time will the museum open?
A che ora ha aperto il museo?	At what time (did) the museum open?
A che ora chiude il museo?	At what time (does) the museum close?
A che ora chiuderà il museo?	At what time will the museum close?
A che ora ha chiuso il museo?	At what time (did) the museum close?

You will remember that the response to questions asked this way will also use the word **at**, which will be attached to the definite article **(the)**. Use **(l')** for one o'clock or **(le)** for all other hours, in order to agree with the number of hours in the answer.

All'una	At one o'clock
Alle sette	At seven o'clock
A mezzogiorno	At noon
A mezzanotte	At midnight

Here are the full sentence replies for the example questions above, along with a few additional useful sentences in the present, future, and past tenses. The 24 hour clock is used when referring to an official time table.

Il museo apre alle nove.	The museum opens at nine.
Il museo apirà alle nove.	The museum will open at nine.
Il museo ha aperto alle nove.	The museum opened at nine.
Il museo chiude alle dicianove.	The museum closes at 19:00. (7PM).
Il museo chiuderà alle dicianove.	The museum will close at 19:00. (7 PM).
Il museo ha chiuso alle dicianove.	The museum closed at 19:00. (7 PM).
Il ristorante apre a mezzogiorno.	The restaurant opens at noon.
Il ristorante apirà a mezzogiorno.	The restaurant will open at noon.
Il ristorante ha aperto a mezzogiorno.	The restaurant opened at noon.
Il negozio chiude all'una per la pranza pausa.	The store closes at 1(PM) for siesta.
Il negozio chiuderà all'una.	The store will close at 1(PM).
Il negozio ha chiuso all'una.	The store closed at 1(PM).

15(N)19

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 16 – Ordering at the Restaurant

Antipasto and **Il Primo**

Dialogue

We learned in Chapter 14 that it was Michael's birthday on **Ferragosto.** The family now decides to go out for a special birthday dinner at a formal restaurant **(ristorante)** in Stresa. They arrive just when the doors open, at 7 PM, are seated by **the waiter (il cameriere),** and order the appetizers and first course for the start of their evening meal.

In this dialogue, we are really speaking in Italian, with use of the present, past and future tenses, along with our object pronouns! Also, we revist the verb **potere** in several forms when we use **"Puo…?" ("Could you (polite)…?"), "Posso?" ("May I?")** and **"Possiamo?" ("May we…?)** during the meal.

Il cameriere: Benvenuti al Ristorante Lucia! Avete una prenotazione?
Welcome (to a group) to (the) Restaurant Lucia! (Do) (you all) have a reservation?

Pietro: Si. Sono Pietro Manzini. Ho fatto una prenotazione per quattro persone per le sette.

Yes. (I) am Peter Manzini. (I) have made a reservation for four people for 7(PM).

Il cameriere: Molto bene. Seguitemi!
Very good. Follow me! (you all command)

Pietro: Possiamo sederci vicino alla finestra?
May we sit (ourselves) by the window?

Il cameriere: Ma, certo. Questo posto è riservato per voi. Eccoci!
But, certainly. This place is reserved for you all. Here we are!

Il cameriere *(A Pietro):* Si accomodi.
(To Peter): Make (yourself pol.) comfortable.

Francesca: Ho molta fame. Non ho mangiato nulla dopo la colazione oggi. Troppo da fare!

(I) am very hungry (lit. have a lot of hunger). (I) have not eaten anything after breakfast today. Too much to do! 16(Vo)75

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 16 – Ordering at the Restaurant

Antipasto and **Il Primo**

Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Michele: Anch'io ho molta fame, mamma! È molto tardi!
I am also very hungry (lit. have a lot of hunger), Mom! (It) is very late!

Francesca: Michele, sono solo le sette. Tu sei piccolo. Quando sarai grande, cenerai alle otto o alle nove come noi!

Michael, (it) is only 7 (PM). You (fam.) are small. When (you fam.) will be big (grown-up), (you fam.) will eat dinner at 8 or at 9 like us!

Caterina: Hai anche mangiato del cocomero sulla spiaggia oggi Michele, ricordi?

(You fam.) also ate some watermelon on the beach today, Michael, (do) (you fam.) remember?

Pietro: Benissimo! Avremo una grande bella cena, se tutti hanno fame. Cameriere, possiamo avere il menù?

Very well! (We) will have a really nice dinner if everybody is hungry. Waiter, may (we) have (English: see) the menu?

Il cameriere: Si! Eccolo qui, signore.
Yes! Here it is, sir.

Pietro: Bene. Per favore, può portarci dell'acqua naturale?
Great. Please, could you (pol.) bring us some water without gas (lit. natural water).

Il cameriere: Subito, signore.
Right away, Sir.

16(Vo)76

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 16 – Ordering at the Restaurant

Antipasto and **Il Primo**

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

(Tutti guardano il menù.)
(Everyone looks at the menu.)

Pietro: Caterina, che cosa prendi?
Kathy, what (are you fam.) going to have? (lit. going to take?)

Caterina: Prendo prosciutto e melone per antipasto. Risotto alla Milanese per primo.

(I am) going to have prosciutto (cured ham) with melon for (the) antipasto course. Risotto Milanese for (the) first course.

Fancesca: Pietro, vuoi condividere l'antipasto misto con me?
Peter, (do) (you fam.) want to share the assorted antipasto with me?

Pietro: No, voglio i calamari fritti. Puoi convidirli con Michele.
No, (I) want the fried squidi. (You fam.) could share it with Michael.

Francesca: Va bene. Lo condividerò con Michele.
O.K. (I) will share it with Michael.

(Torna il cameriere.)
(The waiter returns.)

Il cameriere: Siete pronti per ordinare? Che cosa avete scelto?
Are (you all) ready to order? What have (you all) chosen?

Pietro: Per antipasto le signore hanno scelto prosciutto e melone e l'antipasto misto. Può portarci un piatto in più per nostro figlio?. Condividerà l'antipasto con mia moglie.

For appetizers, the ladies have chosen the prosciutto and melon and the assorted antipasto. Could (you pol.) bring us an additional plate for our son? (He) will share the antipasto with my wife.

16(Vo)77

Unit 3 – At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 16 – Ordering at the Restaurant

Antipasto and **Il Primo**

Dialogue (cont'd - 4)

Il cameriere: Eccellente. E per Lei, signore? Ha scelto?
Excellent. And for you, sir? Have (you pol.) chosen?

Pietro: Vorrei dei calamari fritti e del pane con l'olio.
(I) would like some fried squid and some bread with olive oil.*

Il cameriere: Buona scelta! A me piacciono molto i calamari fritti!
Good choice! (To me) I like the fried squidi very much!
(lit. To me, the fried squid are very pleasing.)

Il cameriere *(A Pietro):* E come primo? Cosa desiderate?
(To Peter): And for the first course? What (do) (you all) want?

Pietro: Come primo, il risotto per lei e per noi gli spaghetti alla carbonara.
For (the) first course, the rice for her (Kathy) and for us the Spaghetti Carbonara. (spaghetti made the coal miner's way – see the"Vocabulary" section)

Il cameriere: Posso portare anche una bottiglia di vino?
May (I) also bring you all a bottle of wine?

Pietro: Ma, certo. Il vino della casa, per favore.
But, certainly. The house wine, please.

Il cameriere: Subito, signore.
Right away, Sir.

*Most restaurants in Italy, even those in northern Italy, usually serve bread with olive oil, and do not have butter available to serve at the table. If butter is available, it is served unsalted. It is not usually necessary to ask for either olive oil or butter, as whatever is available will either be on the table or will be brought with the bread soon after the waiter has everyone seated.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Ordering at the Restaurant
Table Setting and Drinks

il ristorante	restaurant
la trattoria	family-style restaurant
l'osteria/l'enoteca	tavern/wine shop
il ristoratore	restaurateur (owner)
il cuoco/la cuoca	cook masc./fem.
il capocuoco/lo chef	chef
la scodella/zuppperia	soup bowl
il cameriere	waiter
la cameriera	waitress
il tavolo/la tavola	table/table set for a meal
la tovaglia	tablecloth
il tovagliolo	(cloth) napkin
il piatto	plate
la forchetta	fork
il cucchiaio	teaspoon
il cucchiaio da tavola	tablespoon
il coltello	knife
il bicchiere	glass
il bicchiere da vino	wine glass
la tazza	cup
il piattino	saucer
il sale	salt
il pepe	pepper
lo zucchero	sugar
la zuccheriera	sugar bowl
la panna	cream for coffee
il burro	butter
la burriera	butter dish
il cotello da burro	butter knife
il menù	menu
il piatto del giorno	specialty of the day
la specialità dello chef	the chef's specialty
la specialità della casa	the specialty of the house
la colazione	breakfast or lunch
il pranzo	dinner or lunch
la cena	dinner

*Most restaurants and hotels do not have ice making machines, and so don't put ice into their "iced drinks."

l'antipasto	appetizer
il primo	first course
il secondo	second course
il dolce	dessert
l'acqua	water
l'acqua minerale	mineral water
l'acqua gassata	carbonated water
l'acqua senza gas	non-carbonated
l'acqua naturale	non-carbonated
le bibite	soft drinks
l'aranciata	orange soda
la limonata	lemondade
l'orzata	almond drink
l'amerena	cherry drink
(un) tè freddo	iced tea*
(un) caffè freddo	iced coffee*
(un) tè caldo	hot tea
...con limone	with lemon
...con miele	with honey
il latte	milk
il succo d'arancia	orange juice
la birra	beer
la spuma	froth/foam
(una) birra chiara	light beer
(una) birra scura	dark beer
un apertivo	apértif/cocktail
Campari	bitter liqueur made with herbs and fruit red color, for cocktails (Negroni/Americano)
Aperol	slightly bitter liqueur with low alcohol content, made with herbs and roots, red color, for cocktails (Venetian: Spritz)
Bellini	white peach juice and Prosecco champagne
Cinzano	Italian vermouth

Vocabulary - Appetizers

il pane	bread
una fetta di pane	slice of bread
la bruschetta	toasted bread slices rubbed with garlic (*pronounced: broo/ske/ta)* can be topped with chopped tomatoes or chopped liver, etc.
l'olio (d'oliva)	olive oil
l'aceto	vinegar (Balsamic; aged vinegar from Modena or red wine vinegar)
l'antipasto misto	assorted appetizers
l'insalata verde/mista	assorted/mixed lettuce greens and vegetables
i calamari fritti	fried squid
la panzanella	tomato and bread salad, usually made with left-over bread cubes
l'insalata Caprese	fresh tomato slices, basil, and mozzarella sprinkled with salt and drizzled with olive oil (from the island of Capri)
le olive	olives
le verdure (sott'aceto)	assorted vegetables (pickled)
i peperoni (sott'aceto)	peppers (pickled)
i funghi (sott'aceto)	mushrooms (pickled)
i carciofi (sott'olio)	artichoke hearts (preserved in olive oil)
la caponata	Sicilian cooked eggplant and olive appetizer, served cold
le acciughe	anchovies
la bagna cauda	warm olive oil, garlic and anchovy dip for fresh or boiled vegetables from Piedmont region of Northern Italy
le sardine	sardines
la mortadella	special type of baloney, from the city of Bologna
il salame/i salumi	salami – variety of dried/smoke-cured meats which vary by region
il fritto misto	assorted batter-fried vegetables, assorted fish and seafood, or a combination of both vegetables and seafood
il prosciutto (di Parma)	special air-dried/cured ham from the city of Parma
prosciutto e melone	special cured ham served on top of a cantaloupe slice, often drizzled with balsamic vinegar
lo speck	special smoked ham from the region of Tyrol in Austria, served in Northern Italy
il formaggio	cheese – made from cow, sheep, or goat's milk in Italy (See Chapter 18 for a chart of the most common Italian cheeses with their region of origin.)

16(Vo)80

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Soup, **Pasta** and ***Gnocchi***

il brodo (di pollo/di manzo)	broth (chicken/beef)
i tortellini in brodo	tortellini pasta in broth
la zuppa/la minestra	soup
…di pollo/pesce	…chicken soup/fish soup
…di verdure/patate/lenticchie	…vegetable soup/potato soup/lentil soup
il minestrone/la minestra	thick vegetable soup, often with pasta
la pasta e fagioli	thick soup with white beans and ditalini pasta
la burrida/buridda	fish stews from Sardinia/Genoa
la salsa	sauce

Pasta fresca, fatta in casa – Fresh (egg) pasta, homemade
Made from pasta dough rolled thinly and cut into shape:

le tagliatelle/le fettuccine	long, flat pasta
le pappardelle	wide, long, flat pasta
le lasagne	rectangular shaped, wide pasta for a casserole
le penne	short, rolled tubular pasta with angled ends (lit. pen)
pasta alla chitarra	ancient method from Abruzzo to make spaghetti by rolling dough over a wooden box strung with wires
i ravioli	pasta squares, stuffed with cheese/vegetables/meat
i tortellini	pasta squares, stuffed with cheese/meat, folded and shaped to look like the goddess Venus' navel
i cappeletti	pasta rounds, stuffed with cheese/meat, folded and shaped to look like small hats

Pasta secca – Flour and water (dried) pasta
Made by extrusion of pasta dough from a pasta machine with special molds:

gli spaghetti/uno spaghetto	long strands of round pasta/one strand of pasta
i vermicelli	long, thin strands of round pasta (lit. little worms)
i bucatini	very thick strands of round pasta with a central hole
le linguine	long, flat pasta
i fusilli	spiral-shaped strands of pasta
i maccheroni	macaroni (shaped pasta, made by machine)
i rigatoni	tubular pasta with ridges
gli ziti	tubular pasta without ridges
le conchiglie	shell-shaped pasta
gli gnocchi/uno gnoccho*	small, ridged dumplings made from cooked potatoes combined with flour and water (and sometimes with egg)

***Gnoccho** also means **dummy**.

Vocabulary - Famous Italian **Pasta, Gnocchi** and Rice Dishes

Tagliatelle/Pappardelle con Ragù alla Bolognese	Fresh ribbon pasta with a meat ragout, usually a combination of beef, veal, and sausage meats cooked slowly with finely chopped onion, celery, carrot, and wine, enriched with butter and cream (from Bologna)
Lasagne alla Bolognese	Lasagne pasta layered, with béchamel sauce and Bolognese sauce, and then baked in a casserole (from Bologna)
Spaghetti al Nero (di Seppia)	Spaghetti with cuttlefish (squid) ink sauce (black sauce popular in Venice/Sicily)
Spaghetti all'Aglio e Olio	Spagetti with garlic, oil, and Parmesan cheese (from Rome)
Spaghetti al Sugo	Spaghetti with sauce
Spaghetti al Pomodoro	Spaghetti with fresh or lightly cooked tomatoes
Spaghetti alla Puttanesca	Spaghetti with anchovies and olives, as a prostitute makes
Spaghetti alla Carbonara	Spaghetti with egg and Italian bacon, as a coal-worker makes
Manicotti	Cannelloni pasta (large tubular shape) or crespelle (Italian crepes rolled into a tubular shape), with ricotta cheese filling covered with tomato sauce and baked in a casserole
Gnocchi con Pesto	Potato dumplings with pesto sauce (made from basil leaves, garlic, and pine nuts crushed together with olive oil and Parmesan cheese) (from Genoa)
Gnocchi con Gorgonzola	Potato dumplings with gorgonzola sauce (made from cream and Italian blue cheese)
Bucatini all'Amatriciana	Thick spaghetti with a tomato and guanciale (Italian bacon from the cheek of the pig) sauce from the town of Amatriciana (Roman)
Risotto alla Milanese	Italian starchy, short grain (arborio) rice cooked slowly to become creamy and flavored with saffron
Risi e Bisi	Italian starchy, short grain (arborio) rice cooked to become creamy, with the addition of peas (from Venice)

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Speaking with the Waiter

Here are some expressions that are commonly used when dining in a restaurant. The **io (I)** and **noi (we)** forms of the verbs **potere (to can)** and **volere (to want)** are important to know in this situation, since requests are usually made for oneself or for the entire table. We revisit the verb **"Può?"** for a polite way to say, **"Could you?"** and add **"Posso?"** for **"May I…?"** and **"Possiamo?"** for **"May we…?"** to our list of polite phrases to use when making a request. To the popular **"Io vorrei…"** for,**"I would like,"** we add the conditional plural form, **"Noi vorremmo…"** for, **"We would like…"** See Chapter 18 for the full conjugation of these verbs in the conditional form.

Posso…	May I…
Possiamo…	May we…
…sederci vicino alla finestra?	…sit by the window?
…sederci a un'altro tavolo?	…sit at another table?
…avere il menù?	…see (have) the menu?
Qual'è lo speciale oggi/stasera?	What is the special today/this evening?
Che cosa ha scelto/avete scelto?	What have you/you all chosen?
Vorrei…	I would like…
Vorremmo…	We would like…
…per antipasto, l'insalata mista.	…for the antipasto, mixed salad.
…per primo, le tagliatelle alla bolognese.	…for the first course, tagliatelle with Bolognese meat sauce.
…per secondo, l'osso bucco.	…for the second course, braised veal shank..
…per dolce, solamente frutta.	…for desert, only fruit.
Non posso mangiare niente…	I cannot eat anything…
…fatto con noci/arachidi.	…made with nuts/peanuts.
…molto piccante.	…very spicy.
Questo è troppo caldo.	This is too hot.
Questo è troppo freddo.	This is too cold.
Mi può portare…	Could you bring me…
Ci può portare…	Could you bring us…
…dell'acqua senza gas/naturale?	…some water without gas (natural water)?
…dell'acqua con gas/frizzante?	…some sparkling water?
…del pane/più pane?	…some bread/more bread?
…del sale e pepe?	…some salt and pepper?
…un cucchiaio, un coltello, una forchetta?	…a spoon, a knife, a fork?
…un tovagliolo?	…a napkin?
Cin cin!/Salute!/Alla tua salute!	Cheers! (To your) good health! 16(IP)59

Cultural Note - A Typical Italian Menu

A typical menu at all Italian restaurants open for dinner, from the family run **trattoria,** to the more formal **ristorante** (with a professional chef) consists of several courses. Appetizers are always available to start the meal. The pasta course can be, and often is, the main course for the meal, and is called **"il primo."** If there is time for a longer dinner, or for a celebratory dinner, it is traditional to follow the pasta course with an additional course of fish or meat (usually accompanied by a vegetable) that is called **"il secondo."** And, of course, there is always the option of dessert, or at least coffee at the end of the meal. With all these courses, an Italian dinner may take between 1 ½ and 2 hours! In Italy, meals are a time for gathering with family and friends, and a well-prepared dinner with several courses is considered a part of **"la dolce vita,"** or **"the good life."** Below is a list of the courses that comprise a full Italian meal, as they might appear on a typical menu.

La Cena Italiana	The Italian Dinner
L'Antipasto	Appetizer Course
Il Primo	The First Course
Il Secondo	The Second Course
Il Dolce	The Dessert (Sweet) Course

So, when looking at a menu in an Italian restaurant, expect to see a selection of appetizers **(gli antipasti)** listed first. Each region has its own specialties, which include a wide variety of vegetables (raw, preserved in olive oil or vinegar, or cooked), as well as cold meats or salami and cheeses. Salad can also be served as part of this course, but often is eaten after the secondo, when the main course has been completed. Salads are usually not formally composed, but consist of fresh lettuce and whatever other fresh garden vegetables the chef has on hand that day **(insalata mista).** Hot antipasto may be served, with a variety of fried foods **(fritto misto)** very popular throughout the coastal regions of Italy

Soups are well-loved throughout Italy, and during leaner times they were a mainstay of the lunch and dinner meals. Soup may come after or replace the antipasto course.

Both appetizers and soups are always served with fresh **bread (pane)** typical of the region. Bread in Italy is always wonderful – either with a hard, crunchy crust and a soft center, like a French baguette, or soft throughout but golden brown on top, like a thick pizza **(focaccia).** Thin, crunchy breadsticks **(grissini)** are common throughout northern Italy. Bread in Italy can be eaten as is, or dipped in fresh, extra-virgin olive oil from a bottle that is provided along with the bread when one is seated. Butter – always unsalted – will only occasionally be found on the table as an accompaniment to the bread, and only in northern Italy. So, if butter is not brought to the table with the bread, it probably is not available. When it comes to bread, just follow the local traditions for the best way to enjoy the type of bread each region has to offer!

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - A Typical Italian Menu (cont'd)

Next on our menu, we come to a list of starchy foods, such as pasta, gnocchi or rice for **the first course,** or il primo. The word pasta means **paste** or **dough,** and refers to the method of mixing flour with water or eggs and then kneading the paste that is formed from this simple mixture until the gluten in the flour transforms it into a dough. The dough is rested, then rolled out and stretched, and finally cut into strands or put through a hand-cranked pasta machine at home. Commercial pasta machines, with their metal dyes that shape pasta into its many well-loved forms, and the ability of pasta to be dried and then cooked easily in a pot of salted boiling water, have allowed Italian pasta to become one of the world's most popular dishes. Many restaurants in Italy will have a selection of fresh pastas made daily, and it is the custom to make all sauces from scratch using farm-fresh ingredients. Pasta in Italy is always cooked freshly and served "al dente," which literally means, **"to the tooth"** (a bit firm when chewed). Pasta is served promptly, so it is never soft or mushy. See the "Vocabulary" section in this chapter fora description of some of the most well-known pasta dishes in Italy.

Italian short grain **rice** (riso) when cooked in the Italian way is called risotto, and is often served in northern Italy instead of pasta for the first course. The most popular types of rice grown in Italy are Arborio and Carnaroli. Italian rice is very starchy and is cooked slowly, with constant stirring, to bring out the starch and create a creamy sauce. No milk or cream is added! A variety of vegetables, seafood or saffron can be added, along with a final enrichment of butter and cheese. How "soupy" the final dish turns out varies by region, but the rice itself is always a little firm, despite the constant stirring it takes to create the sauce.

Gnocchi, or **potato dumplings,** look like little pillows and are said to be as light as air. They are popular all over Italy for the first course and can be served with red tomato sauce, basil pesto, or gorgonzola cheese sauce.

Il secondo, or **the second course,** always consists of meat or seafood, and it is with this course that a **vegetable side dish,** or contorno, can be ordered. And, for those who like to finish their meal with something sweet, there is usually a wide array of offerings for the **dessert course,** or il dolce. Whether for an informal meal, a large, important gathering, or a special holiday, there are usually several choices listed on the menu for dessert. Il dolce may consist of fruit, nuts, cheeses, an assortment of pastries or ice cream, and of course, sweet wine (vin santo), liquors and coffee. More about these courses to come in the next two chapters!

16(IP)61



Villa d'Este Hotel Restaurant, Cernobbio on Lago Como

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note – **Nè... Nè** and **Neanche**
Final Summary of Negative Expressions

In the last two chapters, we learned that **nessuno** means **nobody, no one, not anyone** and **niente** and **nulla** both mean **nothing**. **Niente** is also used with the meaning of **not…anything**. **Nè… nè** is the Italian way of expressing the idea of **neither…nor**. Another negative expression, **neanche,** means **not even**.

We have already learned that both **nessuno** and **niente** can precede a verb and become the subject of a sentence. The verb must be in the third person singular **(lei, lui)** form in this case. With the **nè… nè** construction, however, the verb must be in the third person plural **(loro)** from; the first **nè,** which stands for **neither,** is the subject of the sentence, and the second **nè,** which stands for **nor,** precedes the Italian verb. (In English, we have a choice to use a singular verb if each subject is singular *or* a plural verb if one of the subjects, which is given last, is plural!)

Niente è buono stasera.	Nothing is good this evening.
Nessuno è felice stasera.	Nobody is happy this evening.

-but

Nè Caterina nè Anna sono felici stasera.
Neither Kathy nor Anna are happy this evening. (Italian: are happy/English: is happy)

Nè Caterina nè i tuoi cugini sono felici stasera.
Neither Kathy nor her cousins are happy this evening. (Italian and English: are happy)

When **neanche** is used, the sentence must begin with **non** for a double negative construction, similar to what we have learned for **nessuno, niente** and **nulla.** Some summary examples are below:

Non c'era neanche Anna.	Not even Anna was there.
Non ho visto nessuno.	I haven't seen anyone.
Non ho fatto niente.	I did not do anything.
Non è buono a nulla.	Good for nothing. (lit. Not good for anything.)
Dal nulla.	Made from scratch. (idiomatic)

16(G)57

Grammar Note - Disjunctive Pronouns

The disjunctive pronouns are used for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity if two or more persons or things are mentioned in the same sentence. Disjunctive pronouns are placed *after* the verb and commonly used with prepositions, such as: **a (at,to)**, **con (with)**, **per (for)**, or **da (from)**. The exception? **Piacere,** as usual, where the disjunctive pronouns are placed before the verb! Here is our table summarizing the disjunctive pronouns and also some examples that demonstrate how to use them. Disjunctive pronouns have come up frequently in our dialogues. Have you noticed them before?

Disjunctive Pronouns	
me	me
te	you (fam.)
Lei	you (pol.)
lei	her
lui	him
sè	itself, herself, himself yourself
noi	us
voi	you all (fam.)
loro	them
sè	themselves

Tu dici a me?
Are you talking to me?

Si, io sto parlando con te, non con lui.
Yes, I am talking with you, not with him.

Per me, l'Italia è il paese più bello del mondo.
For me, Italy is the most beautiful country in the world.

E per te?
And for you?

A me piace l'America.
I like (the country of) America. (Italian: To me, the country of America is pleasing.)

16(G)58

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Pronoun Summary
Reflexive, Direct, Indirect, and Disjunctive Pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns		Direct Object Pronouns		Indirect Object Pronouns	
mi	myself	mi	me	mi	to me
ti	yourself (fam.)	ti	you (fam.)	ti	to you (fam.)
si	yourself (pol.)	La (L')	you (pol.)	Le	to you (pol.)
si	herself	la (l')	her, it (fem.)	le	to her
si	himself	lo (l')	him, it (masc.)	gli	to him
ci	ourselves	ci	us	ci	to us
vi	yourselves	vi	you all	vi	to you all
si	themselves	le	them (fem.)	gli	to them (fem.)
si	themselves	li	them (masc.)	gli	to them (masc.)
The reflexive, direct, and indirect object pronouns come *before* the verb, or are attached to the end of an infinitive verb after dropping the final infinitive **-e**.					

Disjunctive Pronouns		with prepositions	
me	me	a/con/per me	to/with/for me
te	you (fam.)	a/con/per te	to/with/for you (fam.)
Lei	you (pol.)	a/con/per Lei	to/with/for you (pol.)
lei	her	a/con/per lei	to/with/for her
lui	him	a/con/per lui	to/with/for him
sè	itself, herself, himself yourself	a/con/per sè	to/with/for itself, herself, himself to/with/for yourself
noi	us	a/con/per noi	to/with/for us
voi	you all (fam.)	a/con/per voi	to/with/for you all
loro	them	a/con/per loro	to/with/for them
sè	themselves	a/con/per sè	to/with/for themselves

16(G)59

Grammar Note - Double Object Pronouns

The verb **dare (to give)** is commonly used in conversation while dining and asking for food and other items to be passed around the table. In this situation, it also becomes necessary to say not only *what item* we are giving away, but *to whom* we are giving the item to. In effect, we are combining direct and indirect object pronouns in the same sentence! When both object pronouns refer to the same verb, the word order in Italian and rules are as follows in the table below:

Double Object Pronouns
indirect object pronoun – direct object pronoun – verb
(1) The indirect object pronouns **mi, ti, ci,** and **vi** will change their **–i** to an **–e** *when placed before* the direct object pronouns **lo, la, li, le,** and **ne,** to become **me, te, ce,** and **ve** (see the Chapters 17 and 18 for how to use **ne).**
(2) **Gli** will *add* an **e** , to become **glie** *when placed before* the direct objects **lo, la, li, le,** and **ne.** The direct object will then be added directly to **glie,** to make **glielo, gliela, glieli** and **gliele.** Use **glie** for both men and woman (to replace **le** for women, as well as **gli** for men).
(3) When using a helping verb+ infinitive verb combination, simply drop the **-e** from the end of the infinitive verb, combine the objects in the usual order, and *attach the combined objects to the end of the infinitive verb.*

Let's give this a try by changing some example sentences without pronouns into sentences with pronouns. We will list the English first, and then in Italian, one step at a time, so that by the last example both sentences will contain double object pronouns. Watch the placement of the pronouns, which stay after the verb in English, but take a position *before* the verb in Italian. To help you follow this process, the verbs will be in **green,** as usual, the direct object pronouns will be in **brown,** and the indirect object pronouns in **red.**

Kathy gives the butter to me.		Caterina da il burro a me.
Kathy gives me the butter.		Caterina mi da il burro.
Kathy gives it to me.	Rule (1).....	Caterina me lo da.
The waiter gives the menu to Peter.		Il cameriere da il menù a Pietro.
The waiter gives him the menu.		Il cameriere gli da il menù.
The waiter gives it to him.	Rule (2).....	Il cameriere glielo da.
The waiter gives the menu to Kathy.		Il cameriere da il menù a Caterina.
The waiter gives her the menu.		Il cameriere le da il menù.
The waiter gives it to her.	Rule (2).....	Il cameriere glielo da.
(I) want to give my bread to you.		Voglio dare il mio pane a te.
(I) want to give it to you.	Rule (3).....	Voglio dartelo.

16(G)60

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - The Partitive – Some/Any/A Little Bit

When describing a part of a whole, or an undetermined number of things, we are using the partitve. This idea is rendered in English with the words **some** or **any**, as in **"some of the"** and **"any of the."** For instance, we often use the partitive when talking about portions or quantities of food. As an incidental note, the partitive can be thought of as the plural form of the indefinite article **a**, which, as you will remember is, **un, uno, una,** or **un'.**

In Italian, the partitive is rendered in several ways. In the first method, the preposition **di** combines with the different forms of the definite article **(il, lo, la, l', i, gli, le),** just as when we make the phrase **"of the"** in English. The additional English word **"some,"** as in **"some of the,"** is understood from the context in Italian, although **"some"** is the main part of the phrase communicated in English! Here are the different forms reprinted from Chapter 11 and some example sentences. Can you recognize any of the sentences below from our dialogue?

Some/Any
di + art. = of/from/in the
di + il = del
di + lo = dello
di + la = della
di + l' = dell'
di + i = dei
di + gli = degli
di + le = delle

Vorrei del pane. I would like some (of the) bread.
Vorrei della minestra. I would like some (of the) soup.
Vorrei dell'acqua. I would like some (of the) water.

Vorrei dei piselli. I would like some (of the) peas.
Vorrei delle lasagne. I would like some (of the) lasagna.
Vorrei dello spumante. I would like some (of the) sparkling white wine.
Vorrei degli spaghetti. I would like some (of the) spaghetti.

If in any of these situations, the idea of a small quantity is being emphasized, such as with the phrases **"a little bit,"** or **"a little bit of,"** the partitive can be replaced by the phrase, **"un po' di,"** and the definite article is then omitted. See below:

Vorrei un po' di pane. I would like a little bit of bread.
Vorrei un po' di minestra. I would like a little bit of soup. 16(G)61



Dining at the Grand Hotel des Iles Borromees, Stresa

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - Piacere and the Disjunctive Pronouns

We have been using the verb **piacere** since Chapter 10, when we learned how to describe *things* that we like or are pleasing to us. This involves only the singular and plural forms of the third person conjugation of **piacere** – that is, the conjugations that use the (always omitted) subject pronoun "it."

But, what if we want to describe *people*, and how they are pleasing to each other using **piacere?** Then we will need to learn how to conjugate all the forms of this verb! We can then emphasize who is pleasing to whom using our disjunctive pronouns. The full conjugation of **piacere,** which is an irregular verb in the **io, noi,** and **loro** forms, is now given in the table below, with the irregular forms highlighted in **brown,** and our English way of thinking about the meaning of this verb in **gray**.

Piacere – to like (to be pleasing to)			
io	piaccio	I am pleasing to...	I am liked
tu	piaci	you (fam.) are pleasing to...	you (fam.) are liked
Lei lei/lui	piace	you (polite) are pleasing to... she/he/it ispleasing to...	you (pol.) are liked she/he/it is liked
noi	piacciamo*	we are pleasing to...	we are liked
voi	piacete	you all are pleasing to...	you all are liked
loro	piacciono	they are pleasing to...	they are liked

Now, of course, in order to form a sentence describing who likes whom, we need to mention *to whom* the subject is pleasing to. So, we can use our disjunctive pronouns for the clearest and easiest way to emphasize this point – **to me, to you, to her, to him, to us, to you all, to them (a me, a te, a Lei, a lei, a lui, a noi, a voi, a loro).** Here are some examples, using only the first person, or **io** conjugation of **piacere,** with all of the combinations possible using each of the disjunctive pronouns. We have again used our "trick" of thinking about this verb as meaning "to be pleasing to" in the middle column, with the proper English translation using "to like" with the direct object in the last column. We must really try hard to think in Italian to understand this concept!

Io piaccio a te.	I am pleasing to you (fam.).	You (fam.) like me.
Io piaccio a Lei/lei/lui.	I am pleasing to you (pol.)/her/him.	You (pol.)/she/he likes me.
Io piaccio a voi.	I am pleasing to you all.	You all like me.
Io piaccio a loro.	I am pleasing to them.	They like me.

*The **noi** form can also be spelled **piaciamo**. 16(V)97

Present Tense - **Piacere** and the Disjunctive Pronouns (cont'd)

The possibilities for describing who is liked, and by whom they are liked, are many. Here is an example using the full conjugation of **piacere** and the most commonly used disjunctive pronouns in conversation, **me** and **te**. Notice again from our table how the choice of words and the word order used to express "liking" in Italian is different than in proper English.

Io piaccio a te.	I am pleasing to you.	You (fam.) like me.
Tu piaci a me.	You (fam.) are pleasing to me.	I like you (fam.).
Lei/lei/lui piace a me.	You (pol.) are/she/he is pleasing to me.	I like you (pol.)/her/him.
Noi piacciamo a te.	We are pleasing to you.	You (fam.) like us.
Voi piacete a me.	You all are pleasing to me.	I like you all.
Loro piacciono a me.	They are pleasing to me.	I like them.

Alternatively, we could make the above sentences using the indirect object pronouns **(mi, ti, Le, le, gli, ci, vi,** and **loro),** as we have been doing previously, when describing the things that we like. Remember that the word order differs from English, though, with the indirect object pronoun inserted *before* the verb, rather than after. This method may be a little more difficult for the English speaker, but is the most commonly used method in Italian. Use the disjunctive pronouns in conversation **(a me** or **a te)** when you want to emphasize to whom things or people are pleasing; otherwise, use the direct object pronouns.

Here again are the conjugated forms of **piacere** with the same examples, but this time, with the English translation in the middle and the two different Italian ways of describing how people are liked in the first and third columns. The disjunctive pronouns that will be replaced by the indirect object pronouns are underlined. Notice that in the last column, the Italian phrase usually leaves out the subject pronoun, so this is in parenthesis.

Io piaccio a te.	I am pleasing to you (fam.).	(Io) ti piaccio.
Tu piaci a me.	You (fam.) are pleasing to me.	(Tu) mi piaci.
Lei/ lei/lui piace a me.	You (pol.) are/she/he is pleasing to me.	(Lei/lei/lui) mi piace.
Noi piacciamo a te.	We are pleasing to you (fam.).	(Noi) ti piacciamo.
Voi piacete a me.	You all are pleasing to me.	(Voi) mi piacete.
Loro piacciono a me.	They are pleasing to me.	(Loro) mi piacciono.

16(V)98

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Future Tense - Verbs with Endings of -care, -gare

Remember these verbs from the very first unit of the book? If you recall, in Chapter 4, when we conjugated verbs with **-care** and **-gare** endings in the present tense, in order to keep the "hard c" or "hard g" sound of the infinitive form, we needed to add the letter **h** to the stem. An **h** must be added to the stems for the future tense as well, in order to preserve the original sound of the verb.

To conjugate the following verbs in the future tense, first make the usual change of the letter **a** in the **-care** or **-gare** ending of the infinitive verb to an **e**. Then insert the letter **h** *before* the **e** you have just put into the stem. Drop the final **-e** and add the endings for the future tense as usual. The irregular stems are colored **brown** in the table below.

Say the words below out loud and listen to how this method will keep the conjugated verb forms phonetically correct for each speaker. Remember to stress the **"ro," "ra,"** or the **"re"** syllable of these future verbs.

	Cercare (will look for)	Dimenticare (will forget)	Pagare (will pay)	Toccare (will touch)
io	cercherò	dimenticherò	pagherò	toccherò
tu	cercherai	dimenticherai	pagherai	toccherai
Lei/lei/lui	cercherà	dimenticherà	pagherà	toccherà
noi	cercheremo	dimenticheremo	pagheremo	toccheremo
voi	cercherete	dimenticherete	pagherete	toccherete
loro	cercheranno	dimenticheranno	pagheranno	toccheranno

16(V)99

Future Tense - Verbs with Endings of -ciare, -giare

We have encountered this list of infinitive verbs and conjugated them in the present tense in Chapter 5, when we discussed the need to omit the extra letter **i** in the stem in the **tu** and **noi** forms in order to keep the sound of the infinitive verb and conjugated verb forms the same.

To form the future tense of these verbs, we must first omit the letter **i** from the stem. Then, continue on in the usual way to form the stem by changing the letter **a** of the stem of these **–are** verbs into an **e,** dropping the final **-e,** and adding the future endings on as usual. The irregular stems are colored **brown** in the table below.

Say the words below out loud and listen to how this method will keep the words conjugated for each speaker phonetically correct. Remember to stress the **"ro," "ra,"** or the **"re"** syllable of these future verbs and that all endings added on will be regular!

	Cominciare (will begin)	Lasciare (will leave alone)	Mangiare (will eat)	Viaggiare (will travel)
io	comincerò	lascerò	mangerò	viaggerò
tu	comincerai	lascerai	mangerai	viaggerai
Lei/lei/lui	comincerà	lascerà	mangerà	viaggerà
noi	cominceremo	lasceremo	mangeremo	viaggeremo
voi	comincerete	lascerete	mangerete	viaggerete
loro	cominceranno	lasceranno	mangeranno	viaggeranno

16(V)100

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 16

Verb Endings	Past Tense Imperfetto	Future Tense	Conditional Tense
io	vo	ò	**
tu	vi	ai	****
Lei/lei/lui	va	à	****
noi	vamo	emo	****
voi	vate	ete	****
loro	vano	anno	******

Auxiliary Verb Avere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to have)	Future Tense (will have)	Conditional Tense (*********)
io	avevo	avrò	*****
tu	avevi	avrai	*******
Lei/lei/lui	aveva	avrà	*******
noi	avevamo	avremo	*******
voi	avevate	avrete	*******
loro	avevano	avranno	*********

Auxiliary Verb Essere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to be)	Future Tense (will be)	Conditional Tense (********)
io	ero	sarò	*****
tu	eri	sarai	*******
Lei/lei/lui	era	sarà	*******
noi	eravamo	saremo	*******
voi	eravate	sarete	*******
loro	erano	saranno	*********

Verb Tables for Chapter 16 (cont'd - 2)

Dovere	Past Tense Imperfetto (supposed to)	Future Tense (will do)	Conditional Tense (*********)
io	dovevo	dovrò	******
tu	dovevi	dovrai	********
Lei/lei/lui	doveva	dovrà	********
noi	dovevamo	dovremo	*********
voi	dovevate	dovrete	********
loro	dovevano	dovranno	**********

Potere	Past Tense Imperfetto (could have to)	Future Tense (will be able to)	Conditional Tense (********)
io	potevo	potrò	*******
tu	potevi	potrai	********
Lei/lei/lui	poteva	potrà	********
noi	potevamo	potremo	*********
voi	potevate	potrete	********
loro	potevano	potranno	**********

Volere	Past Tense Imperfetto (wanted to)	Future Tense (will want to)	Conditional Tense (**********)
io	volevo	vorrò	******
tu	volevi	vorrai	********
Lei/lei/lui	voleva	vorrà	********
noi	volevamo	vorremo	********
voi	volevate	vorrete	********
loro	volevano	vorranno	**********

©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 16 (cont'd - 3)

Irregular Verbs	Indirect Object Pronouns	Piacere (to be pleasing to)	Piacere Conditional Tense (******** **********)	Dispiacere (***** ********** **********)
io	mi	piaccio	*********	**********
tu	ti	piaci	**********	********
Lei/lei/lui	Le/le/gli	piace	**********	********
noi	ci	piacciamo	**********	**********
voi	vi	piacete	**********	**********
loro	gli	piacciono	**********	**********



Restaurant, on Isola Pescatore, Lago Maggiore

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - The Centuries

One who studies Italian culture will quickly discover the importance of art, architecture, literature, and music throughout the centuries. Here is how the Italians refer to their history. Notice that the definite article is used to describe each century and that the ordinal numbers are capitalized when written out. The cardinal numbers are commonly referred to without actually saying the prefix **mille**, and the conversational forms have been underlined.

100 anni	=	un secolo
100 years	=	one century

		Cardinal numbers	Ordinal numbers
il secolo	1401 - 1500	il mille<u>quattrocento</u>	il Quindicesimo secolo
the century	1401 - 1500	the 1400s	the 15th Century
il secolo	1501 - 1600	il mille<u>cinquecento</u>	il Sedicesimo secolo
the century	1501 - 1600	the 1500s	the 16th Century
il secolo	1601 - 1700	il mille<u>seicento</u>	il Diciasetesimo secolo
the century	1601 - 1700	the 1600s	the 17th Century
il secolo	1701 - 1800	il mille<u>settecento</u>	il Diciottesimo secolo
the century	1701 - 1800	the 1700s	the 18th Century
il secolo	1801 - 1900	il mille<u>ottocento</u>	il Diciannovesimo secolo
the century	1801 - 1900	the 1800s	the 19th Century
il secolo	1901 - 2000	il mille<u>novecento</u>	il Ventesimo secolo
the century	1901 - 2000	the 1900s	the 20th Century
il secolo	2000 - 2100	il duemila	il Ventunesimo secolo
the century	2000 - 2100	the 2000s	the 21st Century

16(N)20



Stresa on Lago Maggiore

Pappagallo Restaurant and Riva Est Gelato Shop

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3- At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 17 – Dinner at the Restaurant

Dialogue

In the last chapter, we left Caterina and her Italian relatives at a fine restaurant in Stresa as they were beginning a celebratory dinner. After the **appetizer course (l' antipasto)** has been finished, their waiter brings **the first course (il primo)** and asks if the family has decided on **the main course (il secondo)** yet. With so many wonderful choices on the menu, though, it is difficult for everyone to make up their mind!

Notice how the word **di** *stands alone* in the phrase **"un po' di"** in this dialogue. Also, watch for the many times the word **di** *is combined* with the definite article to make the equivalent of the word **some**. You will notice that the word **ne (some of it)** comes into play often when enjoying a meal with family and friends!

Piacere is also a commonly used word at a pleasant dinner, and we must remember to use **essere** with **piaciuto** and make the usual ending changes **(o,a,i,e)** when talking about something in the past that we liked (was pleasing to us). Since we are nearing the end of our lessons, future and conditional tenses are also included in this dialogue, as well as the double object pronouns we learned about in the last chapter, for more realistic conversation. Now, we are really speaking in Italian!

Il cameriere:	Ecco il risotto alla milanese, per la signorina, e gli spaghetti per il signore e la signora. Vi sono piaciuti gli antipasti?
	Here is the rice Milanese style, for the young lady, and the spaghetti for the gentleman and the lady. (Did) you all like the appetizers? (lit. To you all, was the antipasto pleasing?)
Pietro:	Mi sono piaciuti moltissimo i calamari fritti.
	I liked the fried squid very much. (lit. To me the fried squid was very pleasing.)
Francesca:	L'antipasto misto era meraviglioso, no Michele?
	And the assorted antipasto was marvelous, wasn't it, Michael?
Michele:	Si. Ma sono pieno! Non ne voglio più!
	Yes. But (I) am full! (I) don't want (any) more (of it)!

17(Vo)83

Unit 3- At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 17 – Dinner At the Restaurant

Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Francesca: Ma, devi mangiare un po' di spaghetti per cena, Michele.
But, (you fam.) must eat a little bit of spaghetti for dinner, Michael.

Michele: No, non ne posso mangiare più!
No, (I) can't eat any more (of it)!

Pietro Michele, basta!
Michael, enough!

Pietro *(al cameriere):* Che cosa ci consiglia per il secondo? Gli adulti hanno ancora fame.
(to the waiter): What (do) (you pol.) recommend to us for the main course?
The adults are still hungry.

Il cameriere: Per le signorine, io consiglierei la cotoletta alla milanese.
È un piatto delizioso e leggero. Per Lei, l'osso buco.

For the ladies, I would recommend the veal cutlet Milan style.
(It) is a dish delicious and light. For you (pol.), the veal shank.

Pietro: Tutto sembra delizioso. È molto difficile decidere.
Sceglieremo dopo il primo.

Everything seems delicious. (It) is very difficult to decide.
(We) will choose after the first course.

Il cameriere: Ma, signore... è troppo tardi. Il cuoco dovrebbe preparare il secondo per Lei ora. Tutti i piatti sono preparati al momento.

But, sir, it is very late. The cook should prepare the main course for you (pol.) now. All the dishes are prepared when ordered. (lit. at present)

Pietro: Ho capito. Ma posso avere il menù ancora una volta?
(I) have understood. But, could (I) have the menu one (more) time?

Il cameriere: D'accordo. Glielo porto subito.
O.K. (I) (will) bring it to you (pol.) right away.

17(Vo)84

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3- At the Hotel and Restaurant

Chapter 17 – Dinner At the Restaurant

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Francesca: No, il menù non è necessario. Io prendo la cotoletta.
No, the menu is not necessary. I (will) have (lit. will take) the (veal) cutlet.

Caterina: Anch'io la prendo. Quando sei a Milano, devi fare il milanese!
Also, I will take it (the veal cutlet). When in Milan, (you) must do as the Milanese (do)!

Il cameriere: Si, buona scelta! La cotoletta alla milanese è una specialità della casa.
E per contorno? Abbiamo dei piselli freschi oggi.

Yes, good choice! The veal cutlet (Milan style) is a specialty of the house.
And for (the) side dish? We have some fresh peas today.

Caterina: Mi sembra una buona idea. Si, ne voglio una porzione.
To me (this) seems like a good idea. Yes, (I) want a portion of them.

Pietro: Anche per me, la cotoletta.
Also for me, the veal cutlet.

Il cameriere: Come vuole, signore. Le piaceranno molto, sono sicuro!
As you wish, sir. You (pol.) will like them very much,(I) am sure!
(lit. To you (pol.) they (the veal cutlets) will be very pleasing…)

Vorrebbe provare asparagi per contorno?
Would (you pol.) like to try (some) asparagus for (the) side dish?

Pietro: No, grazie. Non voglio il contorno.
No, thank you. (I) don't want (a) side dish.

Il cameriere: E per la signora?
And for the lady?

Francesca: Si, ne vorrei provare un po', grazie!
Yes, (I) would like to try a little bit of them, thank you!

Il cameriere: Prego! Tornerò subito con i piatti!
Very well!. (I) will return soon with the dishes!

17(Vo)85

Vocabulary - Cooking Methods, Meats and Fish/Shellfish

fritto	fried
bollito	boiled
arrostito	roasted
brasato/stufato	braised/stewed
affumicato	smoked
farcito(a)/ripieno(a)	stuffed
al forno	baked (lit. from the oven)
alla brace	broiled
alla griglia/ai ferri	grilled
alla cacciatora	stewed in a pot
la cotoletta	cutlet (meat without bone)
la scaloppina	very thin cutlet
la costoletta	chop/rib(bone in meat)
l'arrosto	the roast (to be sliced)
la bistecca*	steak*
bistecca alla fiorentina	steak florentine style
al sangue	rare meat
ben cotto	well-done meat
cotto a puntino	cooked just right
il sugo di carne	gravy
le polpette	meat balls
il vitello	veal
il pollo	chicken
il petto di pollo	chicken breast filet
il tacchino	turkey
l'anatra	duck
la quaglia	quail
il fagiano	pheasant
il coniglio	rabbit
il maiale	pork
la pancetta	bacon
il guanciale	bacon from pig cheeks
l'agnello	lamb
l'abbacchio	young lamb
la capra/il capretto	goat/kid
il fegato	liver

il salmone	salmon
la sogliola	filet of sole
la trota	trout
il merluzzo	cod
il baccalà	cod (dried)
il pesce spada	swordfish
il branzino	sea bass
il tonno	tuna
i calamari	squid
la seppia	cuttlefish (like squid)
i gamberi	shrimp
gli scampi	large, shrimp-like crustacean from the Mediterranean Sea
le capesante	scallops
l'aragosta	lobster
le cozze	mussels
le vongole	clams
le ostriche	oysters
le acciughe	anchovies
le sardine	sardines
l'anguilla	eel
i granchi	clams
le lumache	snails
il polpo	octopus
l'aringa affumicata	smoked herring

*When ordering a steak in Italy (wonderful **grilled steaks** can be found in Tuscany, for instance, called **bistecca alla fiorentina**), it is not really possible to order how the steak should be cooked. Instead, it is usually left for the chef to decide, based on the cut of meat and the style of the dish.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Vegetables

gli asparagi	asparagus
i broccoli	broccoli
i carciofi	artichokes
la carota	carrot
il cavolo	cabbage
il cavolo nero	large, dark, leafy green
il cavolfiore	cauliflower
i ceci	chickpeas
il cetriolo	cucumber
la cipolla	onion
i fagioli	beans (dried)
i fagiolini verdi	green beans (fresh)
la fava	broad bean
il finocchio	fennel
i funghi	mushrooms
la lattuga	lettuce
le lenticchie	lentils
la melanzana	eggplant
i peperoni	bell peppers
le patate	potatoes
le patatine fritte	French fried potates
il peperoncino	hot pepper/red chile pepper
i piselli	peas
la polenta	corn mush (grits)
il pomodoro	tomato
il riso	rice (refers to short grain, such as **Arborio** or **Carnaroli**)
la rucola/rughetta	arugula
il sedano	celery
gli spinaci	spinach
la zucca	pumpkin
le zucchine	zucchini (green summer squash)

17(Vo)87

Vocabulary - Italian Wines and After Dinner Drinks

il vino	wine	
la carta dei vini	wine list	
vino ...della casa	house wine	
...di marca	brand name wine	
...pregiato	vintage wine	
...rosso	red	(see below under light or full-bodied)
...bianco	white	Pino Grigio, Pino Bianco, Soave, Orvieto
...rosato	rose	Castel del Monte, Chiaretto
...secco	dry	
...dolce	sweet	(see below under dessert wine)
...leggero	light-red	Valpolicella, Bardolino, Chianti
...corposo	full-bodied red	Montepulciano d'Abruzzo, Dolcetto, Nebbolo, Sangiovese, Chianti Reserva, Barbaresco, Barbera d'Asti
spumante	sparkling wine	Prosecco, Spumante, Asti, Nebbiolo
vino da dessert	dessert wine	Vin Santo, Moscato, Marsala

Relax and enjoy these drinks in small portions, with coffee, fruit and nuts after a holiday dinner with the family.

un digestivo	liqueur/after dinner drink (lit. digestive)
Anistette	clear liqueur, with a licorice taste, made from anise seeds
Amaretto	golden colored liqueur, made from almonds, with a bit of a bitter taste; (amaro means **bitter**)
Fra Angelico	brown colored liqueur, made from hazelnuts, flower extracts, and berries
Galliano	yellow colored liqueur, made from flower extracts, spices and herbs
Grappa	clear liqueur, made from distilled grape skins left over from wine-making
Limoncello	yellow colored liqueur, made from lemon-infused vodka
Strega	yellow colored liqueur, made from herbs and spices (strega means **witch**)
Vecchia Romagna	golden brown colored brandy

17(Vo)88

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner

Here are some common expressions that may come up in general conversation when talking about meals. Much of Italian life revolves around meeting others to enjoy food together, as this is considered part of "the good life," so these phrases should come in handy!

Andiamo a cena fuori domani sera?	Are we going out to dinner tomorrow night?
Andiamo sempre a cena fuori?	Are we still going out to dinner?
Andiamo ancora a cena fuori?	Are we going out to dinner again?
Mi piacerebbe offrirti una cena.	I would like to treat you to dinner.
Una cena offerta da...	A dinner offered by the...
cena per due	dinner for two
È l'ora di cena.	(It) is dinnertime.
La cena è pronta.	Dinner is ready.
il dopocena	after dinner
Ho portato il mio pranzo.	I brought my lunch.
pranzo al sacco	bag lunch
colazione di lavoro	business breakfast
pranzo di lavoro	business lunch
cena di lavoro	business dinner
Cosa c'è per pranzo?	What's (lit. what is there) for lunch?

If you would like to write – or more likely today email – an invitation to friends or business associates for dinner, the following may be helpful:

Vorrei invitarti...	I would like to invite you (fam.)...
Vorrei invitarvi...	I would like to invite you all...
Sono lieto(a) di invitarLa a cena...	I am delighted (m/f) to invite you (pol.) to dinner.
Sono lieto(a) di invitarVi* a cena...	I am delighted (m/f) to invite you all (pol.) to dinner.
...al risorante.	...at the restaurant.
...a casa mia.	...at my house.
...che si terrà (il giorno) alle (ore).	...which will be held on (the day) at the (hour).

***Voi** with a capital letter **V** can be used in modern Italian when addressing a group of acquaintances as **"you all"** when one wants to be a bit formal or classy. This form has come into use more frequently now that the ultra-formal **Loro** is no longer in use very much as the polite "you all" form.

Cultural Note - Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner in Italy

There are several words in Italian to describe the meals eaten at various times of the day, which are often interchangeable. For instance, breakfast may be referred to as **la prima colazione,** or, **the first meal** of the day. To eat breakfast is to **"fare colazione,"** however, and the word **prima** is often left out of the original phrase altogether.

The midday meal, called, **lunch** in America, is translated as **pranzo,** and the verb **pranzare** is used to describe **the act of eating lunch**. When one is **making lunch** the phrase **"preparare il pranzo"** is used. To **feed someone a meal** is to **"dare da mangiare."** A **buffet lunch** translates as **pranzo a buffet**. If the lunch is an informal gathering where people eat and drink while standing up around small tables, the phrase **pranzo in piedi** can be used. A **quick lunch** also has an imaginative and similarly expressive translation in Italian, as **pasto veloce.** In some regions, the word **colazione** is used to refer to lunch as well as to breakfast, which is probably why the word **prima** is sometimes included as a part of the phrase.

To **go out for lunch,** one must **"uscire a pranzo,"** or **"andare fuori a pranzo;"** to **eat out,** one must **"pranzare fuori."**

If one wants **a snack in the afternoon,** one must **"fare la merenda,"** but at any time one can also **"fare uno snack,"** or **"fare uno spuntino."**

The Italian evening meal, which in English we call **dinner**, is referred to as **la cena,** and **to eat dinner** is **cenare.** **Supper** in Italy is regarded to be **"la cena leggera,"** or literally, **"a light dinner."** The most famous supper in the Christian religion, which was given by Jesus for his disciples, is known as **l'Ultima Cena,** or, **The Last Supper** (notice the use of capitalization in Italian). If the dinner one is having occurs during the midday meal, it is referred to as **il pranzo. Pasto** can also be used in place of **cena,** and has the general meaning of **meal.** A **large, important dinner** is referred to as a **cenone,** as in **Cenone di Capodanno,** or **New Year's Eve dinner.**

For a summary of all of the above, see the next page!

17(IP)64

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Cultural Note - Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner in Italy (cont'd)

la prima colazione	breakfast
la colazione	breakfast
fare colazione	to eat/have breakfast
il pranzo	lunch
pranzare	to eat/have lunch
preparare il pranzo	to prepare/make lunch
dare da mangiare	to feed someone
il pranzo a buffet	buffet lunch
il pranzo in piedi	buffet lunch (standing)
il pasto	meal
pasto veloce	quick lunch/quick meal
Usciamo a pranzo!	Let's go out for lunch!
Andiamo fuori a pranzo!	Let's go out for lunch!
Pranziamo fuori!	Let's eat lunch out!
lo snack	snack
Faccio uno snack.	I'm having a snack.
lo spuntino	snack
Faccio uno spuntino.	I'm having a snack.
la merenda	afternoon snack
Faccio la merenda.	I'm having a snack.
la cena	dinner
il pasto	meal
il pranzo	mid-day dinner, as on Sunday
cenare	to eat/have dinner
la cena leggera	a light dinner
l'Ultima Cena	the Last Supper
il cenone	large, important dinner
Cenone di Capodanno	New Year's Eve dinner

17(IP)65



Pizza by the Slice and Imbarcadero Restaurant, Isola Pescatore on Lago Maggiore

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - The Partitive - **Qualche** and **Alcune/Alcuni**

When speaking of a part of a whole, or an undetermined number of things, we have learned in Chapter 16 that the idea is rendered in English with the words **some** or **any,** as in **"some of the"** or **"any of the."** We have also learned that in Italian this idea is rendered by the preposition **di** combined with the different forms of the definite article **(il,lo, la, l', i, gli, le, li). "Un po' di"** is a phrase that can be used to more specifically indicate **"a little bit of"** something.

In English, the translation with the partitive is always in the plural, which makes sense if you think of the partitive as the plural of the indefinite article **a (un, uno, una,** or **un').** Things are a little bit different in Italian, however, and there are additional rules to learn when we use **qualche** or **alcune/alcuni** as the partitive, to express the meaning of **some** or **a few**…

The word qualche, which is invariable, is *always* followed by a singular noun.
The words alcune or alcuni are *always* followed by a plural noun.

Neither **qualche** nor **alcune/alcuni** can be used in every situation, however. If the noun being modified is made up of a quantity that is not easily divisible, such as a liquid like milk, water, or soup, or an indivisible mass, like a loaf of bread or a cake, these words cannot replace **di+** definite article or **un po' di.**

When would we use **qualche, alcune,** or **alcuni?** If we are referring to several drinks that have already been bottled up, or several slices of bread or cake. Notice in our first examples below how many ways there are to ask the same question, "Would you like some slices of bread?" and how the noun **fetta,** which means **slice,** must change into the plural **fette (slices)** when **alcune** is used:

Vorresti del pane?	Would you (fam.) like some bread?
Vorresti una fetta di pane?	Would you (fam.) like a slice of bread?
Vorresti delle fette di pane?	Would you (fam.) like some slices of bread?
Vorresti qualche fetta di pane?	Would you (fam.) like some/a few slices of bread?
Vorresti alcune fette di pane?	Would you (fam.) like some/a few slices of bread?

We can also use **qualche** or **alcune/alcuni** to refer to groups of people. Again, watch how the noun **ragazzo (boy)** changes into the masculine plural **ragazzi** when **alcuni** is used!

In classe c'è sono qualche studente oggi.	In class, there are only a few students today.
In classe ci sono solo alcuni studenti oggi.	In class, there are only a few students today.

Grammar Note - The Partitive - Negative and Interrogative

All forms of the partitive are always omitted in Italian in sentences that make a negative statement. In addition, the partitive is often omitted when asking a question in Italian The definite article **(il, lo, la, l')** is omitted in these cases as well.

One of the most common phrases in the movies is, **"Non ho soldi!"** which we would render in English as, **"I don't have (any) money!"** and include the partitive **any,** since the partitive is never omitted in English.

Or, perhaps, as in our dialogue for this chapter, the waiter wants to ask a customer to try **some** of the vegetable of the day. He would generally say, **"Vorrebbe provare asparagi per contorno?"** meaning, **"Would you like to try (some) asparagus for the side dish?"**

Listen a bit to those speaking Italian, and these types of phrases will probably come up frequently. Italians are not being lazy when they leave out the partitive; instead, they are using correct grammar!

Grammar Note - Using **Ne** in Place of the Partitive + Noun

Now that we have learned what the partitive is, it is important to mention that both the partitive and the noun that follows can be replaced by the simple Italian word **ne,** which stands for the phrases **some of it, some of them, any of it,** or **any of them. Ne** is often used in answer to a question, instead of repeating the exact phrase referred to in the question over again, for more fluent and simplified conversation. **Ne** is placed *before* a conjugated verb, but attached to the end of an infinitive verb, just like a direct object pronoun! The word *"some" in the English translation is replaced with a quantity* in Italian when using **ne.** Back to our typical dinner conversation for some examples:

Avete (dei) piselli freschi oggi?	(Do) (you all) have (some) fresh peas today?
Si, ne abbiamo molti oggi.	Yes, (we) have many of them today.
Vorresti un po' di burro?	Would (you fam.) like a little bit of butter?
Si, ne vorrei un po'.	Yes, (I) would like a little bit of it.
Vorreste (del) vino rosso stasera?	Would (you all) like (some) red wine tonight?
No, non ne vorremmo affatto.	No, (we) wouldn't like any of it at all.
Vorreste comprare (alcune) bottiglie?	(Do) (you all) want to buy some bottles?
No, non vorremo comprarne alcuna.	No, (we) don't want to buy any of them.

17(G)64

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Direct Object Pronouns and the **Passato Prossimo**

There are several rules that must be followed when using the Italian direct object pronouns with the **passato prossimo** form of the Italian past tense.

(1) The direct object pronoun is placed *before* the passato prossimo compound verb.
(2) The third person singular direct object pronouns (lo, la, and La) usually drop their vowel before the letter h, especially in conversation.
(3) The last vowel of *the past participle must agree* in gender and number *with the object* that it refers to when using the third person singular and plural.

Let's see how this works if we want to shorten the answer to a commonly asked question, **"Hai visto Pietro?" ("Have you seen Peter?")**. We could answer, **"L'ho visto,"** for, **"I saw him,"** following rules (1) and (2).

Hai visto Pietro?		Have (you) seen Peter?
(Lo ho visto.)	Rule (1)	I saw him.
L'ho visto.	Rule (2)	I saw him.

So far, so good. The words **"L'ho"** flow easily together, and are spoken as one word, short and sweet. However, if we were looking for Caterina, we would need to also *change the ending of the past participle* of the verb to agree with the feminine direct object pronoun ending, which we have just dropped! So, our phrase would instead be, **"L'ho vista,"** for, **"I saw her."** We have to follow rules (1), (2), and (3) to make one short sentence!

Hai visto Caterina?		Have (you) seen Kathy?
(La ho vista.)	Rules (1) (3)	I saw her.
L'ho vista.	Rule (2)	I saw her.

And, finally, for the plural forms, when referring to two males or a male and female, we need to use the direct object **li** and the letter **i** for the past participle. If we should see two women, we would use the direct object **le** and the letter **e** for the past participle. These examples below follow rules Rules (1) (3) (1) and (3).

Hai visto Pietro e Michele?		Have (you) seen Peter and Michael?
Li ho visti.	Rules (1) (3)	I saw them.

Hai visto Caterina e Francesca?		Have you seen Kathy and Frances?
Le ho viste.	Rules (1) (3)	I saw them.

17(G)65

Grammar Note - Ne and the Passato Prossimo

When combining the word **ne** with the **passato prossimo** form of the past tense in Italian, rules number (1) and (3) for the direct object pronouns must be followed. Here they are again:

(1) The direct object pronoun and ne are placed before the passato prossimo compound verb.
(3) The last vowel of *the past participle must agree* in gender and number *with the object* that it refers to when using the third person singular and plural. .

Let's see how this works if we want to shorten the answer to the following question, **"Ti è piaciuta la pizza?"** We could answer, **"Si, ne ho mangiata tantissima,"** which means, "I ate a lot if it," following rules number (1) and (3).

Ti è piaciuta la pizza?	Did you enjoy the pizza?
Si, ne ho mangiata tantissima.	Yes, I ate a lot of it.
Hai mangiato delle acciughe?	Did you eat some anchovies?
Ne ho mangiate solo due.	I only ate two of them.

Rule number (3) is not necessary when using the imperfetto, however.

Volevi un po' di minestra?	Did you want a little bit of soup?
Si, ne volevo un po'.	Yes, (I) wanted some of it.

Grammar Note - Direct Object Pronouns with Reflexive Verbs

When it is necessary to use a direct object pronoun with a reflexive verb in Italian, the word order is as follows:

Direct Object Pronouns with Reflexive Verbs
reflexive pronoun – direct object pronoun – verb

All of the reflexive pronouns will change their endings from an **-i** to an **-e,** as follows: **mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si** change to **me, te, se, ce, ve, se.** Remember that reflexive pronouns are used often in Italian when we would not use them in English. An example is given below, with the reflexive pronoun in **green** and the direct object pronoun in **brown.**

Kathryn washes her hands.	Caterina si lava le mani.
Kathryn washes them.	Caterina se le lava.

17(G)66

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Conditional Tense

The conditional tense is used to make a polite request, as we learned way back in Chapter 4, when we discussed how to use the word **vorrei,** which means, **"I would like."** In the "Important Phrases" section for Chapter 16, we also learned how to use the word **vorremmo,** which means, **"we would like,"** to place an order for the group at a table in a restaurant. Notice that the meaning of the conditional verb is rendered in English with the combination of "would + infinitive verb." The conditional tense, in summary, expresses a want or wish, an intention, a duty, or a preference.

The method used to form the stems for the conditional tense is exactly the same as the method to form the future tense. *And, the irregular stems for the conditional tense are identical to those for the future tense*. So, we have already learned much about this tense without even realizing it! The conditional endings are always regular and will be the same for all three conjugations!

To change any infinitive verb into the conditional tense, first drop the final **-e** to create stems that end in the letter **r.** For all **–are** verbs, the **a** that remains in the **–ar** ending of the stem must then be changed to an **e.** This leaves stems with endings as follows for the three conjugations of **-are, -ere,** and **–ire** verbs: **-er, -er,** and **-ir.** Then, add the following endings below to the stems for all three conjugations:

Conditional Tense Endings	
io	ei
tu	esti
Lei/lei/lui	ebbe
noi	emmo
voi	este
loro	ebbero

When pronouncing the conditional verbs, the stress will always be on the syllable that begins with the letter **r,** and will always start with **"re."**

Conditional Tense Conjugations			
	Abitare (would live)	Scegliere (would choose)	Finire (would finish)
io	abiterei	sceglierei	finirei
tu	abiteresti	sceglieresti	finiresti
Lei/lei/lui	abiterebbe	sceglierebbe	finirebbe
noi	abiteremmo	sceglieremmo	finiremmo
voi	abitereste	scegliereste	finireste
loro	abiterebbero	sceglierebbero	finirebbero

Conditional Tense - Auxiliary Verbs - **Avere** and **Essere**

The verbs **avere** and **essere** have irregular stems in the conditional tense, which, as we have already mentioned, are identical to their stems for the future tense! The stem for **avere** is **avr** and the stem for **essere** is **sar.** The conditional endings for each are regular, as are all conditional endings! Remember that the conditional tense translates into the English "would + infinitive verb," so **avere conditionl tense** is used to express the idea **"would have,"** and **essere conditional tense** expresses the idea **"would be."**

Here are the complete conjugations for both **avere** and **essere** for (easy) memorization, along with examples from the both the present and conditional tenses for comparison:

Avere – would have		
io	avrei	I would have
tu	avresti	you (familiar) would have
Lei/lei/lui	avrebbe	you (polite) she/he would have
noi	avremmo	we would have
voi	avreste	you all would have
loro	avrebbero	they would have

Caterina ha fame. Kathy has hunger. (English: is hungry)

Di solito, Caterina avrebbe fame alle due, ma ha appena mangiato.
Usually, Kathy would have hunger at 2 PM but she has just eaten.
(English: would be hungry)

Essere – would be		
io	sarei	I would be
tu	saresti	you (familiar) would be
Lei/lei/lui	sarebbe	you (polite) she/he would be
noi	saremmo	we would be
voi	sareste	you all would be
loro	sarebbero	they would be

La casa di Pietro è bella. Peter's house is beautiful.

La casa di Pietro sarebbe bella, ma non è ancora finita.
Peter's house would be beautiful, but it is not yet completed. 17(V)106

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Conditional Tense - Verbs with Irregular Stems
Verbs that Drop the Stem Vowel

The stem vowel for many verbs is often dropped in the conditional tense to create an irregular conditional stem. This will happen for exactly the same verbs in the conditional tense as in the future tense! We have just seen this happen with the verb **avere,** which has the irregular stem **avr.** Two of our helping verbs, **dovere** and **potere,** also fall into this category for the conditional tense. As always, though, the endings for the conditional tense are regular, as you will see from the following table:

	Andare (would go)	Dovere (would have to)	Potere (would have to)	Sapere (would know)	Vedere (would see)	Vivere (would live)
io	andrei	dovrei	potrei	saprei	vedrei	vivrei
tu	andresti	dovresti	potresti	sapresti	vedresti	vivresti
Lei/lei/lui	andrebbe	dovrebbe	potrebbe	saprebbe	vedrebbe	vivrebbe
noi	andremmo	dovremmo	potremmo	sapremmo	vedremmo	vivremmo
voi	andreste	dovreste	potreste	sapreste	vedreste	vivreste
loro	andrebbero	dovrebbero	potrebbero	saprebbero	vedrebbero	vivrebbero

Conditional Tense - Verbs with Irregular Stems
Verbs that Do Not Change the letter **a** in the Stem

There are a few very important two syllable**-are** verbs that drop the final **-e** from the infinitive, and then simply add the regular conditional endings onto their short stem. This will happen for exactly the same verbs in the conditional tense as for the future tense! Again, the endings for the conditional tense will always be regular, as you will see from the following table:

	Dare (would give)	Fare (would do/make)	Stare (would be/stay)
io	darei	farei	starei
tu	daresti	faresti	staresti
Lei/lei/lui	darebbe	farebbe	starebbe
noi	daremmo	faremmo	staremmo
voi	dareste	fareste	stareste
loro	darebbero	farebbero	starebbero

17(V)107

Conditional Tense - More Verbs with Irregular Stems

The following verbs have irregular stems that create a "double r" when combined with the regular endings. These verbs are exactly the same in the conditional tense as for the future tense! You will notice that our important helping verb **volere** falls into this group.

	Bere (would drink)	Tenere (would keep/hold)	Venire (would come)	Volere (would want)
io	berrei	terrei	verrei	vorrei
tu	berresti	terresti	verresti	vorresti
Lei/lei/lui	berrebbe	terrebbe	verrebbe	vorrebbe
noi	berremmo	terremmo	verremmo	vorremmo
voi	berreste	terreste	verreste	vorreste
loro	berrebbero	terrebbero	verrebbero	vorrebbero

Conditional Tense and Introduction to the Subjunctive Mood

Use of the conditional tense lends itself to compound sentences with a "if clause" that expresses a hypothetical situation. This "if clause" takes a verb in the **imperfetto** subjunctive mood. A full discussion of the subjunctive mood is beyond the scope of this book. However, you should know that *many tenses in Italian have a subjunctive mood* that is used to express *doubt, uncertainty*, or *desire*. The subjunctive forms of **avere** and **essere** in the singular present and singular **imperfetto,** are given below:

Avere – to have – subjunctive mood				
io	abbia	I have	avessi	I had
tu	abbia	you (familiar) have	avessi	you (familiar) had
Lei lei/lui	abbia	you (polite) have she/he has	avesse	you (polite) had she/he had

Penso che lui abbia una casa in Toscana. I think that he has a house in Tuscany.
Io abiterei a Roma se io avessi soldi I would live in Rome if I had money.

Essere – to be – subjunctive mood				
io	sia	I am	fossi	I were
tu	sia	you (familiar) are	fossi	you (familiar) were
Lei lei/lui	sia	you (polite) are he/he is	fosse	you (polite) were she/he were

Penso che l'Italia sia un bel paese. I think that Italy is a beautiful country.
Io sceglierei il salmone se fosse alla griglia. I would choose the salmon if (it) were grilled.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Conditional Tense – Modal Verbs **Dovere, Potere** and **Volere**

The conditional forms of the modal, or helping verbs, are used frequently in conversation. All have irregular stems and their conjugations have already been given with the irregular stem groups they belong to. Here is a summary of the conjugations for all three modal verbs together, for easy reference.

Dovere – should be		
io	dovrei	I should
tu	dovresti	you (familiar) should
Lei/lei/lui	dovrebbe	you (polite) she/he should
noi	dovremmo	we should
voi	dovreste	you all should
loro	dovrebbero	they should

Potere – could be		
io	potrei	I could
tu	potresti	you (familiar) could
Lei/lei/lui	potrebbe	you (polite) she/he could
noi	potremmo	we could
voi	potreste	you all could
loro	potrebbero	they could

Volere – would like to be		
io	vorrei	I would like
tu	vorresti	you (familiar) would like
Lei/lei/lui	vorrebbe	you (polite) she/he would like
noi	vorremmo	we would like
voi	vorreste	you all would like
loro	vorrebbero	they would like

17(V)109

Present Tense vs. Conditional Tense
The Meaning of **Dovere, Potere,** and **Volere**

Throughout this book, we have emphasized the polite forms of **volere (vorrei, vorremmo)** in the conditional tense, and recommended using this form to make requests for onself or for a group. The English translation for the conditional verbs in general is that of "would + infinitive verb," which describes **a request** or **a wish,** rather than a demand or an order.

Here are two examples below of the same request that might be made in a restaurant to a waiter, first in the present tense, and then in the conditional tense. The first, in the present tense, sounds more demanding and insistent. The second, in the conditional tense, sounds less forceful, as it describes a preference or wish.

Voglio un tavolo vicino alla finestra. I want a table by the window.
Vorrei un tavolo vicino alla finestra. I would like a table by the window.

Let's take a look at the other modal, or helping verbs, and see what connotation the conditional tense lends to these verbs. For **dovere,** the idea relayed in the present tense is a forceful **must**. With **devo (I must),** we are led to understand that the action that follows has to be completed, no matter what else may come to pass. The conditional **dovrei** translates into, **"I should,"** or, **"I ought to,"** which gives **a feeling of necessity,** but also implies a bit of indecisiveness and an uncertainty as to whether the action described will be completed or not. Here are two examples using each tense:

Devo visitare mia nonna domenica. I must visit my grandmother Sunday.
Dovrei visitare mia nonna domenica. I should visit my grandmother Sunday.

For the verb **potere,** the present tense **"posso"** translates as **"I can,"** and can also be used to ask **"May I?"** as we have seen from the very first chapter in our book. **"Può,"** the present tense "polite you" form, has also been used extensively in the "Important Phrases" sections to make a polite request, and in these situations means, **"Could you?"** The conditional form we have just learned also translates as "could," and may be heard while traveling in Italy. Here are some commonly used phrases:

Mi può auitare?	Could you (pol.) help me?
Potrebbe aiutarmi?	Could you (pol.) help me?
Ti posso aiutare?	May I help you (fam.)?
Potrei aiutarti?	May I help you (fam.)?

17(V)110

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 17

Verb Endings	Past Tense Imperfetto	Future Tense	Conditional Tense
io	vo	ò	ei
tu	vi	ai	esti
Lei/lei/lui	va	à	ebbe
noi	vamo	emo	emmo
voi	vate	ete	este
loro	vano	anno	ebbero

Auxiliary Verb Avere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to have)	Future Tense (will have)	Conditional Tense (would have)
io	avevo	avrò	avrei
tu	avevi	avrai	avresti
Lei/lei/lui	aveva	avrà	avrebbe
noi	avevamo	avremo	avremmo
voi	avevate	avrete	avreste
loro	avevano	avranno	avrebbero

Auxiliary Verb Essere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to be)	Future Tense (will be)	Conditional Tense (would be)
io	ero	sarò	sarei
tu	eri	sarai	saresti
Lei/lei/lui	era	sarà	sarebbe
noi	eravamo	saremo	saremmo
voi	eravate	sarete	sareste
loro	erano	saranno	sarebbero

Verb Tables for Chapter 17 (cont'd - 2)

Dovere	Past Tense Imperfetto (supposed to)	Future Tense (will do)	Conditional Tense (should be)
io	dovevo	dovrò	dovrei
tu	dovevi	dovrai	dovresti
Lei/lei/lui	doveva	dovrà	dovrebbe
noi	dovevamo	dovremo	dovremmo
voi	dovevate	dovrete	dovreste
loro	dovevano	dovranno	dovrebbero

Potere	Past Tense Imperfetto (could have to)	Future Tense (will be able to)	Conditional Tense (could be)
io	potevo	potrò	potrei
tu	potevi	potrai	potresti
Lei/lei/lui	poteva	potrà	potrebbe
noi	potevamo	potremo	potremmo
voi	potevate	potrete	potreste
loro	potevano	potranno	potrebbero

Volere	Past Tense Imperfetto (wanted to)	Future Tense (will want to)	Conditional Tense (would like to be)
io	volevo	vorrò	vorrei
tu	volevi	vorrai	vorresti
Lei/lei/lui	voleva	vorrà	vorrebbe
noi	volevamo	vorremo	vorremmo
voi	volevate	vorrete	vorreste
loro	volevano	vorranno	vorrebbero

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 17 (cont'd - 3)

Irregular Verbs	Indirect Object Pronouns	Piacere (to be pleasing to)	Piacere Conditional Tense (******** **********)	Dispiacere (***** ********** **********)
io	mi	piaccio	*********	**********
tu	ti	piaci	**********	********
Lei/lei/lui	Le/le/gli	piace	**********	********
noi	ci	piacciamo	**********	**********
voi	vi	piacete	**********	**********
loro	gli	piacciono	**********	**********



Menu posted outside Domiziano Restaurant and Pizzeria
Piazza Navona, Rome

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - Roman Numerals

Roman numerals are still used today in Italy to refer to the centuries, and are found around the world inscribed on important buildings and monuments, on watches, and on title pages of books and journals.

The Roman numeral system is based on the five capital letters given below, which each represent a number. These "numerals," as they are called in English, are read from left to right and are added together or subtracted from one another to obtain the final value in the Arabic system of numbers we use today. When a numeral of lesser value is placed *after* a numeral of greater value, the two are added together to obtain the final value. However, if a numeral of lesser value is placed *before* a numeral of larger value, the numeral with the lesser value must be subtracted from the one immediately to its right. All Arabic numbers possible can be created by this simple system. Below are the values for each Roman numeral:

I	=	1	X	=	10	M	=	1,000
V	=	5	C	=	100			

A short note about the correct form to use when writing the Roman numeral that represents the Arabic number 4: the Romans used a combination of I and V to represent the number 4, or IV. However, IIII is the preferred symbol of many watch makers, as the IIII on one side of the watch creates a nice symmetry with the VIII on the opposite side. Window shop at a jewelry store and check out some watches if you get the chance!

The first twenty Roman Numerals are given below. Can you figure out how to make the year we are currently living in with Roman numerals?

I	=	1	XI	=	11
II	=	2	XII	=	12
III	=	3	XIII	=	13
IV,IIII	=	4	XIV	=	14
V	=	5	XV	=	15
VI	=	6	XVI	=	16
VII	=	7	XVII	=	17
VIII	=	8	XVIII	=	18
IX	=	9	XVIX	=	19
X	=	10	XX	=	20



Tagliacozzo

Ice Cream Menu at a Cafe in Piazza Obelisco, Abruzzo Region

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3- At the Restaurant

Chapter 18- A Happy Birthday Surprise

Dialogue

We rejoin Caterina and her family at the restaurant in Stresa where they have been enjoying dinner. The **secondo,** or **main course,** has been completed. Pietro calls the waiter over for the last time, and the waiter uses the **imperfetto** past tense to begin their conversation. This past tense is sometimes used in Italy at restaurants in order to emphasize a wish or desire.

The remainder of the conversation continues in the present and conditional tenses as needed while the rest of the meal is planned. Watch for those object pronouns once again and use of the word **ne** in this dialogue! There is also a reference to the **cover charge** for the restaurant, called the **coperto,** which is often automatically listed on a restaurant check (despite a ban in some regions). See the "Cultural Note" section later in this chapter for more on this charge.

For the last course, or **il dolce, dessert,** Pietro has arranged a surprise for his son, Michele, who had a birthday last week. After the family chats a bit with the waiter, the waiter returns with a birthday cake lit with candles. The family brings a wonderful meal, and our trip with Caterina, to a close with the song, "Happy Birthday," and the phrase, "One should always live this way, like in Italy!"

Pietro:	Scusi, cameriere, per favore. Excuse (me), waiter, please. (pol. command)
Il cameriere:	Eccomi. Desiderava? Here I am. What were (you pol.) wanting?
Pietro:	Due espressi, per favore; uno per me e uno per mia moglie. Two espressos, please, one for me and one for my wife.
Caterina:	E io ho una richiesta. Posso assaggiare del gelato? L'ho visto là, dove siamo entrati stasera. And I have a request. May I taste some gelato? (I) saw it over there, where (we) entered this evening.

18(Vo)89

Unit 3- At the Restaurant

Chapter 18- A Happy Birthday Surprise

Dialogue (cont'd - 2)

Il cameriere: Certo. Che gusto vorrebbe assaggiare? Abbiamo vaniglia, nocciola, cioccolato, fragola di bosco...

Certainly. What flavor would (you polite) like to taste?
We have vanilla, hazelnut, chocolate, wild strawberry (lit. strawberry of the woods)...

Caterina: Che cosa mi raccomanda?
What (do) (you pol.) recommend (to me)?

Il cameriere: Raccomando la fragola di bosco. È fresca fresca.*
(I) recommend the wild strawberry. (It) is very fresh.

Caterina: Buona idea. Mi piacerebbe mangiare delle fragole. Me ne porta una porzione, per favore.

Good idea. I would like to eat some strawberries. Bring me a portion of it, please.

Il cameriere: Va bene. Le piaceranno molto.
Very good. You (pol.) will enjoy (like) (them) very much. (lit. To you the strawberries will be very pleasing.)

Michele: Mamma, mamma, anch'io voglio un gelato! Vaniglia!
Mommy, mommy, I also want (an) ice cream! Vanilla!

Francesca: O.K. O.K. Un altro gelato, per favore.
O.K. O.K. One more ice cream, please.

Pietro: E dopo il dolce, mi può portare il conto?
And after the dessert, could (you pol.) bring me the check?.

Il cameriere: Si, come vuole. (*sottovoce, a Pietro): Lei ricorda la sorpresa?*

Yes, as (you pol.) wish. *(speaking softly, to Peter): (Do) (you pol.) remember the surprise?*

18(Vo)90

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Unit 3- At the Restaurant

Chapter 18- A Happy Birthday Surprise

Dialogue (cont'd - 3)

Pietro: *(a voce alta):* Il conto… è compreso il coperto?
(a bassa voce, piano, al cameriere): E si, ricordo la sorpresa.
Può portarla con i gelati per piacere?

(*in a loud voice):* The check… is the cover charge included?
(in a low voice, softly, to the waiter) And, yes, (I) remember the surprise.
Could (you pol.) bring it with the ice cream, please?

Il cameriere: Si, è tutto compreso. Non si preoccupi. Torno subito.
Yes, everything is included. Don't worry (yourself) (pol. command).
(I) (will) return soon.

(Il cameriere torna con la torta di compleanno e le candele accese.)
(The waiter returns with the birthday cake and the candles lit.)

Pietro, Francesca e Caterina cantano:
Tanti auguri a te.
Tanti auguri a te.
Tanti auguri a Michele.
Tanti auguri a te.

Peter, Frances and Kathy sing:
Happy Birthday to you. (lit. Many best wishes to you.)
Happy Birthday to you.
Happy birthday to Michael.
Happy birthday to you.

Caterina: Penso che sarete tutti d'accordo - La cena di questa sera è stata bellissima! Si dovrebbe sempre vivere così, come in Italia!

(I) think that all of you will agree – The dinner this evening was the best ever! One should always live this way, like in Italy!

*****Instead of using **molto,** the adjective to be emphasized, **fresca,** is simply repeated.

Vocabulary - Desserts and Nuts

il dolce	dessert
il dolce/i dolci	sweet/sweets
il miele	honey
i biscotti	cookies (lit. twice cooked)
la torta	cake
il tiramisù	ladyfinger cookies soaked in coffee and liqueur and layered with cream and cocoa powder to make a "cake"
il panettone	cake-like, sweet bread, with preserved fruit served at Christmas
il gelato	ice cream (lit. frozen)
il gusto del gelato	ice cream flavor
...alla vaniglia	...vanilla flavored
...al cioccolato	...chocolate flavored
il gelato affogato	scoop of ice cream served "drowned" in coffee
il sapore	flavor/taste (of food)
sapore di frutta	fruit-flavored
la granita	Italian fruit-flavored ice
la crema/zuppa inglese	thin custard, as made in England
la crema di caramello	caramel custard
la panna cotta	individual molded custard desert (lit. cooked cream)
il budino	light pudding
la mousse al cioccolato	chocolate mousse (chocolate whipped cream dessert)
la pasticceria	pastry making/pastry shop
i cannoli	fried dough tubes filled with flavored with ricotta cheese and topped with chocolate and pistachios (Sicilian)
la crostata	tart
...alla marmellata	...jam tart
...alla frutta	...fruit tart
le noci	nuts
le castagne	chestnuts
le nocciole	hazelnuts
le mandorle	almonds
i pistacchi	pistachios
i pinoli	pine nuts

18(Vo)92

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Vocabulary - Fruits

la frutta	fruit
l'albicocca	apricot
(le albicocche)	(apricots)
l'ananas	pineapple
l'arancia	orange
(le arance)	(oranges)
la banana	banana
il cedro	lime
la ciliegia	cherry
(le ciliegie)	(cherries)
il cocomero	watermellon
il dattero	date
il fico	fig
(i fichi)	(figs)
la fragola	strawberry
(le fragole)	(strawberries)
il lampone	raspberry
(i lamponi)	(raspberries)
il limone	lemon
il mandarino	mandarine orange
la mela	apple
(le mele)	(apples)
il melone	cantaloupe
il mirtillo	blueberry
la mora	blackberry/mulberry
la pera	pear
(le pere)	(the pears)
la pesca	peach
(le pesche)	(peaches)
il pompelmo	grapefruit
la prugna	plum
(le prungne)	(plums)
l'uva	grape
l'uva	grapes
un grappolo d'uva	a bunch of grapes
la vendemmia	grape harvest

18(Vo)93

Vocabulary – Italian Cheeses – I Formaggi

	City/Region of Origin	Type of Milk
Duro/grattugiato (hard/grated)		
Pecorino Romano	Rome	sheep
Parmgiano-Reggiano	Parma, Bologna, Modena	whole and partially skimmed cow
Grana Padano	Northern Italy (Lombardy)	partially skimmed, aged cow
Asiago	Vicenza (Veneto)	cow
Duro e piccante (firm and sharp)		
Provolone	Northern Italy (Lombardy)/Sicily	cow
Caciocavallo	Naples/Sicily/Southern Italy	cow
Gorgonzola (blue cheese)	Northern Italy (Lombardy/Piedmont)	cow
Duro e delicato (firm and mild)		
Fontina (melts easily)	Northern Italy (Valle d'Aosta)	alpine cow
Mozzarella (melts easily)	Caserta/Southern Italy	cow
Ricotta salata (salted/pressed/aged ricotta)	Sicily	sheep or cow
Molle (soft)		
Robiola (di Roccaverano)	Northern Italy (Piedmont)	cow + goat + sheep
Caprino/Capra (goat cheese)	Northern Italy (Piedmont)/ Sardinia	goat
Taleggio (pungent smell/taste)	Northern Italy (Lombardy)	cow
Marscapone	Northern Italy (Lombardy)	cow'
Mozzarella di bufala	Naples/Southern Italy	black water buffalo
Ricotta (lit. recooked) creamy curd made from whey left over from making Provolone cheese	Sicily	sheep or cow
Ricotta impastata (whipped ricotta used as cannoli filling)	Sicily	sheep or cow

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Important Phrases - Common Conditional Phrases

Here are some common expressions for everyday conversation that use the conditional tense we have been focusing on in this chapter. Try these, and you will really sound like a native!

Potrebbe essere?	Could it be?
Cosi sembra…	So it seems…
Non saprei…	I wouldn't know…
Sarebbe meraviglioso!	It would be wonderful!
Non sarebbe meglio…?	Wouldn't it be better…?
Non sarebbe peggio…?	Wouldn't it be worse…?
Tutti sarebbero d'accordo.	Everyone would agree.
Penso che sarete tutti d'accordo…	I think everyone will agree…
Si dovrebbe sempre vivere così!	One should always live this way!
Chi lo avrebbe pensato!	Who would have thought!
Come le/gli sarebbe piaciuto.	As she/he would have liked.
Come le/gli sarebbe piaciuto fare.	As she/he would have liked to do.
Come le/gli sarebbe piacuto pensare.	As she/he would have liked to think.
Sapevo che ti sarebbe piaciuto!	I knew that you would have liked it!
Chi potrebbe mai essere?	Whomever could it be?
Chi mai l'avrebbe creduto?	Who would have ever believed it?
Non lo si sarebbe creduto possible!	One would not have thought it possible!

8(IP)67

Cultural Note - Settling the Bill and Tipping

To tip or not to tip? And if tipping is required, how much to leave? This is not always readily apparent at Italian restaurants and coffee bars, and has been made even more confusing by the passage of a law in Rome and the region of Lazio banning the traditional **cover charge (coperto)** in 2006. Other regions in Italy were supposed to follow suit and pass their own bans on this charge, but did not, and even in Rome the law is not usually enforced. So, the bottom line is: if a **coperto** (cover charge) is printed on the menu and is also listed on the check, it should be paid. This charge is also sometimes called the **"pane e coperto,"** as there is always a charge for bread in Italy. The usual charge is 1.5-2.0 € per person, but can be higher in more upscale restaurants. Waiters don't expect much more than the **coperto** as a tip, but rounding up the bill to leave a few extra euros is customary.

Of course, beware in tourist areas, and especially on the famous piazzas, where a high **coperto,** and even an additional **service charge (servizio)** of 10-20% may be added onto the bill automatically. Italians will generally not eat in a restaurant with this additional service charge, although the proprietors of these restaurants know that Americans are used to tipping a similar amount at home, and tourists often don't seem to notice or mind the charge. As with the **coperto,** though, the **servizio** needs to be listed on the menu to be legal, and the amount charged on the check must correspond to that listed on the menu; if not, a simple request to take the additional charge off of the bill will usually suffice. After you have paid the bill according to what is listed on the original check, the waiter should (but may not) return with the "official" receipt, which serves as a record for tax purposes in Italy. There is advice on what to do about tipping on the website www.walksofitaly.com.

It is advisable to buy a travel guide before setting off on your dining adventure in Italy; there are innumerable wonderful restaurants throughout the country, and it will otherwise be difficult to decide where to eat. Take the time to look at the menu before entering a restaurant, which will often be conveniently posted outside the door. Try to avoid menus for tourists, with pictures, if you can. Walk a few extra steps down a block or two off a main street or touristy piazza to get the most authentic, and best, Italian food. The most famous gelato shop in Rome, San Crispino, is down a side-street from the **Piazza di Trevi** (Trevi Fountain Piazza), with a small, unassuming sign next to the entrance, and wonderful, fresh ice-cream sealed in steel containers inside!

A quick word about those ubiquitous coffee bars in Italy. The coffee is wonderful, but if you are concerned about avoiding an extra fee, it is advisable to drink your coffee and eat your pastry standing up, as the Italians do. The price list at coffee bars is usually posted inside, behind the counter, and the items may be double or more when seated. That said, there are wonderful cafés in Italy with outdoor seating, where one can take advantage of the waiter's services, relax, and enjoy life as it unfolds on a typical Italian day!

18(IP)68

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - More Uses for Ne

In the last chapter, we learned that the pronoun **ne** can replace a partitive with its noun and stand for phrases such as: **"some of it, some of them, any of it,"** or **"any of them."**

Ne must be used in combination with adverbs of quantity, such as **molto (a lot)** o **un po' di (a little bit)**, which replace the word "some" in the English translation. **Una porzione (a portion)** is commonly used when referring to food, as in our dialogues.

Ne can also be used to answer a question in which a number or a quantity is expected in the reply. In this case, **ne** takes on the meanings of: **"about it, about them, of it, of them."**

The use of **ne** in a response instead of repeating a phrase over again lends itself to more fluent and simplified conversation. Remember that **ne** is placed *before* a conjugated verb, but attached to the end of the infinitive verb, like a direct object pronoun. Here are some examples one might encounter while traveling:

Quante stanze avete in quest'albergo?	How many rooms do (you all) have in this hotel?
Ne abbiamo cento.	(We) have 100 of them.
Avete molti vestiti rossi?	(Do) (you all) have many red dresses?
Si, ne abbiamo venti.	Yes, (we) have 20 of them.

Finally, **ne** can be used to reply when the following expressions are used to ask a specific question or an opinion: **avere bisogno di, avere paura di, parlare di,** and **pensare di.** In these cases, **ne** replaces the noun that is the object of the phrase along with the preposition **di.** Notice that the preposition **di** is therefore not included in the reply:

Hai bisogno di una vacanza?.	(Do) (you fam.) need a vacation?
Si, ne ho proprio bisogno.	Yes, (I) really need it. (English: Yes, I really need one.)
Parla dell'opera in Italia?	(Do) (you pol.) talk about opera in Italy?
Si, ne parlo spesso.	Yes, (I) talk about it often.
Parlavi del ristorante?	Were (you fam.) speaking about the restaurant?
Si, ne parlavo.	Yes, (I) was speaking about it.

Grammar Note - Summary of the Adverb *Ci*

The phrases **c'è** and **ci sono** mean **there is** and **there are** respectively. ***Ci*** can also be used to mean **here** or **there** when referring to a specific location. The location is either understood by the speakers or will have already have been mentioned in the conversation, and **ci** will be used in a reply to make the conversation flow more smoothly. In these instances, the location will be introduced by a preposition **(a, in, su, da)** and **ci** will replace both the preposition and the place when given in the reply. ***Ci*** is placed before the conjugated verb. With helping verbs **dovere, potere,** or **volere, ci** can be placed before the helping verb or attached to the infinitive.

Non ci voglio più stare.	(I) don't want to stay here anymore.
Vai in pizzeria stasera?	(Are) (you fam.) going to a pizzeria tonight?
No, non ci vado.	No, (I'm) not going there.
Ci sarò.	I'll be there.
Vuoi venire a casa mia?	(Do) (you fam.) want to come to my house?
No, non ci voglio venire.	No, (I) don't want to come there.
No, non voglio venirci.	No, (I) don't want to come there.

Ci is frequently used as an indirect object to reply to questions which ask, **"Credi a…?"** and, **"Pensi a…?"** which mean, **"Do you believe in…?"** and **"What do you think about…?"** In these cases, **ci** replaces the phrases that are believed in or thought about. The meaning of **ci** would be, **"in it"** or **"about it"** in these situations.

Credi alla religione cristiana?	(Do)(you fam.) believe in the Christian religion?
Si, ci credo.	Yes, (I) believe in it.

Finally, if we want to combine **ci** with a direct object pronoun in a sentence to say "I've got it," or "I've got them," referring to something in our possession, the last letter-**i** of **ci** is changed to an **e**. This is an expression that follows the word order below:

Direct Object Pronoun + Ci
ce – direct object – verb

Do you have the ticket in your purse?	Hai il biglietto nella tua borsa?
Yes, I have it in my purse.	Si, l'ho nella borsa.
Yes, I've got it.	Si, ce l'ho.
Do you have the keys to your car?	Hai le chiavi alla tua macchina?
Yes, I have them.	Si, ce le ho.

18(G)68

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Grammar Note - Irregular Plurals - Parts of the Body

The followlwing list includes some of the most difficult irregular plural nouns to remember in Italian – the nouns that correspond to the parts of the body. In some cases, there are actually two different plurals for these nouns, both regular and irregular! If you think of the second, or irregular plural, as referring to *the entire set* or *the pair*, it may be a little easier to remember why the irregular plural form is often so different from what we are used to.

Let's see how this works with an example. If we want to talk about one finger, we will mention **"il dito"** and for two fingers, we will use the regular plural **"i diti."** However, often when we refer to our fingers, we mean *the entire set* of ten fingers. When referring to the entire set, we will need to use the second, irregular plural, which is **"le dita."** The lips, arms, hands and feet will only use the special "entire set plural ending," since they always come in pairs. The word that means pair, **il paio,** itself has an irregular plural of this type – **le paia!**

Other Italian plural nouns that describe parts of the body will be irregular in order to maintain the sound in the plural or to avoid adding an extra vowel at the end of the word (such as with **gli occhi**). Finally, for **l'osso,** the feminine plural **le ossa** refers specifically to human bones, while the masculine plural **gli ossi** refers to animal bones!

la testa	le teste	head	il petto	i petti	chest/breast
il viso	i visi	face	il busto	i busti	torso
la faccia	le faccie	face	la pancia	le pancie	abdomen
il capello	i capelli	hair	il seno	i seni	breast
l'occhio	gli occhi	eye	il paio	le paia	pair
il ciglio	le ciglia	eyelash	l'osso	gli ossi	animal bones
il sopracciliglio	le sopracciliglia	eyebrow	l'osso	le ossa	human bones
l'orecchio	le orecchie	ear	il cranio	i crani	skull (if alive)
il naso	i nasi	nose	il teschio	i teschi	skull (if dead)
il labbro	le labbra	lip			
il braccio	le braccia	arm			
il gomito	i gomiti	elbow			
la mano	le mani	hand			
il dito	i diti	finger			
	le dita	all the fingers			
la gamba	le gambe	leg			
il ginocchio	le ginocchia	knee			
il piede	i piedi	foot			
il dito del piede	i diti dei piedi	toe			
	le dita dei piedi	all the toes			

Grammar Note - Indefinite Adjectives

These adjectives give some information about the nouns they modify, but not very specific or definite information, and therefore are called: indefinite adjectives! You may hear them at times if you listen closely. The first two, **qualunque** and **qualsiasi** are invariable and are used only with singular nouns. The remaining indefinite adjectives in the list are used with singular and plural nouns and will change their ending to reflect the gender and number of the noun modified in the usual manner.

qualunque	any, either, whichever
qualsiasi	any, either, whichever
altro(a)(i,e)	other, different past – with reference to days of the week
un certo(a)(i,e)	a certain
un tale(i)	a certain
ciascuno(a)(i,e)	each
diverso(a)(i,e)	several, various
vario(a)(i,e)	various, several, quite, a few

18(G)70

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Conditional Tense - Verbs with Endings of **-care, -gare**

Remember these verbs from the very first unit of the book? If you recall, in Chapter 4, when we conjugated infinitive verbs with **–care** and **–gare** endings in the present tense, in order to keep the "hard c" or "hard g" sound of the infinitive form, we needed to add the letter **h** to the stem. This rule applies for the future and conditional stems as well, and the method for creating the stems will be identical!

To conjugate the following verbs in the conditional tense, first change the letter **a** in the **–care** or **–gare** ending of the infinitive verb to an **e,** as usual for **–are** verbs. Then insert the letter **h** *before* the **e** you have just put into the stem. Drop the final **-e** and add the endings for the conditional tense as usual. The irregular stems are colored **brown** in the table below.

Say the words below out loud and listen to how this method will keep the conjugated verb forms for each speaker phonetically correct. Remember to stress the **"re"** syllable of these conditional verbs.

	Cercare (would look for)	Dimenticare (would forget)	Pagare (would pay)	Toccare (would touch)
io	cercherei	dimenticherei	pagherei	toccherei
tu	cercheresti	dimenticheresti	pagheresti	toccheresti
Lei/lei/lui	cercherebbe	dimenticherebbe	pagherebbe	toccherebbe
noi	cercheremmo	dimenticheremmo	pagheremmo	toccheremmo
voi	chercheste	dimenticheste	pagheste	toccheste
loro	cercherebbero	dimenticherebbero	pagherebbero	toccherebbero

8(V)115

Conditional Tense - Verbs with Endings of -ciare, -giare

We have encountered this list of infinitive verbs and conjugated them in the present tense in Chapter 5, when we discussed the need to omit the extra letter **i** in the stem in the **tu** and **noi** forms in order to keep the sound of the infinitive verb and conjugated verb forms the same. We learned to do this for all conjugations of the future tense, and must do the same for the conditional tense as well.

To form the conditional tense of these verbs, we must first omit the letter **i** from the stem. Then, continue on in the usual way to form the stem for the **–are** verbs by changing the letter **a** of the stem into an **-e,** dropping the final **e,** and adding the conditional endings on as usual. The irregular stems are colored **brown** in the table below.

Say the words below out loud and listen to how this method will keep the conjugated verb forms for each speaker phonetically correct. Remember to stress the **"re"** syllable of these conditional verbs.

	Cominciare (would begin)	Lasciare (would leave alone)	Mangiare (would eat)	Viaggiare (would travel)
io	comincerei	lascerei	mangerei	viaggerei
tu	cominceresti	lasceresti	mangeresti	viaggeresti
Lei/lei/lui	comincerebbe	lascerebbe	mangerebbe	viaggerebbe
noi	cominceremmo	lasceremmo	mangeremmo	viaggeremmo
voi	comincereste	lascereste	mangereste	viaggereste
loro	comincerebbero	lascerebbero	mangerebbero	viaggerebbero

18(V)116

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Conditional Past Tense - Dovere, Potere, and Volere
Should've, Could've, Would've

To finish up our discussion of the modal verbs in the conditional tense, we will learn how to render the meaning of the commonly used phrases **"should've, could've, would've."** These are the phrases we use when thinking about how the past could have been different, or how we would like to change what has happened in the past. The formal phrases in English are translated as, **"should have," "could have,"** and **"would have."**

Here is the general format to follow to express these ideas:

Modal Verbs – Conditional Past Tense					
Conditional avere	+	modal verb past participle		+	infinitive verb
avrei	+	dovuto	(=should have)	+	verb of choice
avresti	+	potuto	(=could have)		
avrebbe	+	voluto	(=would have wanted)		
avremmo					
avreste					
avrebbero					

Here are some examples of how this works, using the most common conversational forms, **io, tu,** and **noi**. The subject pronoun is omitted in the Italian sentences, as usual.

Avrei dovuto parlare a Pietro.	I should have talked to Peter.
Avresti dovuto parlare a Pietro.	You should have talked to Peter.
Avremmo dovuto parlare a Pietro.	We should have talked to Peter.
Avrei potuto viaggiare con te.	I could have traveled with you.
Avresti potuto viaggiare con noi.	You could have traveled with us.
Avremmo potuto viaggiare con voi.	We could have traveled with you all.
Avrei voluto prendere il treno.	I would have wanted to take the train.
Avresti voluto prendere il treno.	You would have wanted to take the train.
Avremmo voluto prendere il treno.	We would have wanted to take the train.

18(V)117

Present and Past Conditional Tense – Piacere
Would Like and Would Have Liked

When we want to say that *we would like something* ("it" *would be pleasing* to us), we can simply conjugate the verb **piacere** as a regular verb in the present conditional tense. Remember that the conjugation of **piacere** must always agree with *the number of things* that are being liked. So, if one thing would be liked, or an infinitive verb follows, the third person singular conditional form, **piacerebbe,** is used. If many things would be liked, use the third person plural conditional form, which is **piacerebbero.** Here some examples for how to use **piacere** in the conditional form:

Piacerebbe – would be pleasing to: if only one thing would be liked

Mi piacerebbe questa macchina, ma è troppo cara.
(This car would be pleasing to me, but it is too expensive.)
I would like this car, but it is too expensive.

Ti piacerebbe uscire stasera, ma devi studiare.
(It would be pleasing to you to go out tonight, but you must study.)
You would like to go out tonight, but you must study.

Piaccerebbero – would be pleasing to: if more than one thing would be liked

Mi piacerebbero queste scarpe, ma sono troppo care.
(These shoes would be pleasing to me, but they are too expensive.)
I would like these shoes, but they are too expensive.

In order to form the past conditional tense with **piacere,** to talk about *something we would have liked*, we must use the conditional **essere** and the past participle of **piacere,** which is **piaciuto (a, i, e).** Since we are using **essere** to form this compound verb, the last letter of **piaciuto** must agree with the subject, which is *the thing being liked*. Use **piaciuto** when agreement is with a verb, and remember to put an indirect object pronoun *before this compound verb*, as is usual for all conjugations of **piacere!**

Piacere – Conditional Past Tense

Conditional essere	+	piacere past participle		+	infinitive verb
sarebbe	+	piaciuto(a)	(=would have liked)	+	verb of choice
sarebbero	+	piaciuti(e)			

Mi sarebbe piaciuto andare a casa ieri. I would have liked to go home yesterday.
Ti sarebbe piaciuto vedere quel film. You would have liked to see that film.

Ci sarebbero piaciuti gli spaghetti, ma erano troppo piccanti.
We would have liked the spaghetti, but it was too spicy. 18(V)118

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Present Tense - **Dispiacere**

We have been using the verb **piacere** since Chapter 10, when we learned how to describe things that are pleasing to us. What does this have to do with **dispiacere,** you may ask? Well, once you know how to use **piacere** in a sentence, similar rules apply for **dispiacere!** Of course, the meaning will be different, since **dispiacere** is used to convey **sadness, sorrow, grief** or **regret**. There is a fully conjugated form of **dispiacere**, like **piacere,** but *only the singular third person form is commonly used in conversation for **dispiacere***, as in the examples below. Remember to use the indirect object pronouns before the verb form **dispiace,** and to always use the conjugation **dispiace** if a verb follows.

Our first example, **"Mi dispiace,"** is, of course, the phrase we have been using since Chapter 1 to say, **"I am sorry."** You can see now, where it comes from. The literal meaning is, **"It is sorrowful/regrettable to me."**

Mi dispiace che tu devi partire.	I am sorry that you have to leave.
Ci dispiace che tu non ti senti bene.	We are sorry that you do not feel well.

When asking a question, **dispiace** takes on the meaning of **"to mind,"** in the sense of **"to be bothersome to."** **"Le dispiace se fumo?"** is a common expression that literally means, **"Is it bothersome to you (polite) if I smoke?"** but translates properly into English as, **"Do you mind if I smoke?"** Other questions you might hear on public transportation, such as a train, are given below. To answer these questions, you may reply in the positive orthe negative, of course!

Le dispiace se fumo?	Do you mind if I smoke?
No, non mi dispiace	No, I don't mind.
No, faccia pure.	No, go ahead.
Si, mi dispiace se fumi in casa.	Yes, I mind if you (fam.) smoke in the house.
Le dispiace se apro il finestrino?	Do you mind if I open the window (in a vehicle)?
No, faccia pure.	No, go ahead.
Si, mi dispiace. Tira vento!	Yes, I mind. It is windy!
Le dispiace se mi siedo qui?	Do you mind if I sit here?
Prego!	Go ahead! (say and gestrure to the seat)
No, non mi dispiace.	No, I don't mind.
Mi dispiace, questo posto è occupato!	I am sorry, this seat is taken!
Non mi dispiace...	I don't mind...
...viaggiare.	...traveling.
...questo posto.	...this place.

8(V)119

Present and Past Conditional Tenses – **Dispiacere**
Would Not Mind and Would Not Have Minded

When we want to say that we *would not mind something*, we simply use the verb **dispiacere** in the third person conditional singular or plural, with our indirect object pronouns. **Non** must also be added to the beginning of the sentence. The singular conditional of **dispiacere** is **dispiacerebbe** and the plural conditional is **dispiacerebbero**. In this way, our verb will agree with the *number of things we would not mind.* Remember to use **dispiacerebbe** if a verb is to follow, and to put an indirect object before the compound verb, as usual.

Non mi dispiacerebbe...	I wouldn't mind...
...un po' di vino.	...a little bit of wine.
...un altro lavoro.	...another job.
...un po' di riposo.	...a little bit of rest.
...viaggiare.	...traveling.
Non mi dispiacerebbero...	I wouldn't mind...
...un po'più soldi.	...a little more money.
...quelle scarpe di Prada.	...those Prada shoes.

And, finally, to say that you *would not have minded something* in the past tense, use the past participle **dispiacituo (a, i, e)**. Make a compound verb with **essere** of course, in the third person singular **(sarebbe)** or plural **(sarebbero)** just as we would for **piaciuto**. Remember to put **non** and the indefinite pronoun before this long compound verb!

Non mi sarebbe dispiaciuto un po' di vino.
I would not have minded a little bit of wine.

Non mi sarebbe dispiaciuto vedere quel film.
I would not have minded seeing that film.

Non mi sarebbero dispiaciuti un po' più soldi.
I would not have minded a little more money.

18(V)120

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 18

Verb Endings	Past Tense Imperfetto	Future Tense	Conditional Tense
io	vo	ò	ei
tu	vi	ai	esti
Lei/lei/lui	va	à	ebbe
noi	vamo	emo	emmo
voi	vate	ete	este
loro	vano	anno	ebbero

Auxiliary Verb Avere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to have)	Future Tense (will have)	Conditional Tense (would have)
io	avevo	avrò	avrei
tu	avevi	avrai	avresti
Lei/lei/lui	aveva	avrà	avrebbe
noi	avevamo	avremo	avremmo
voi	avevate	avrete	avreste
loro	avevano	avranno	avrebbero

Auxiliary Verb Essere	Past Tense Imperfetto (used to be)	Future Tense (will be)	Conditional Tense (would be)
io	ero	sarò	sarei
tu	eri	sarai	saresti
Lei/lei/lui	era	sarà	sarebbe
noi	eravamo	saremo	saremmo
voi	eravate	sarete	sareste
loro	erano	saranno	sarebbero

Verb Tables for Chapter 18 (cont'd - 2)

Dovere	Past Tense Imperfetto (supposed to)	Future Tense (will do)	Conditional Tense (should be)
io	dovevo	dovrò	dovrei
tu	dovevi	dovrai	dovresti
Lei/lei/lui	doveva	dovrà	dovrebbe
noi	dovevamo	dovremo	dovremmo
voi	dovevate	dovrete	dovreste
loro	dovevano	dovranno	dovrebbero

Potere	Past Tense Imperfetto (could have to)	Future Tense (will be able to)	Conditional Tense (could be)
io	potevo	potrò	potrei
tu	potevi	potrai	potresti
Lei/lei/lui	poteva	potrà	potrebbe
noi	potevamo	potremo	potremmo
voi	potevate	potrete	potreste
loro	potevano	potranno	potrebbero

Volere	Past Tense Imperfetto (wanted to)	Future Tense (will want to)	Conditional Tense (would like to be)
io	volevo	vorrò	vorrei
tu	volevi	vorrai	vorresti
Lei/lei/lui	voleva	vorrà	vorrebbe
noi	volevamo	vorremo	vorremmo
voi	volevate	vorrete	vorreste
loro	volevano	vorranno	vorrebbero

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Verb Tables for Chapter 18 (cont'd - 3)

Past Tense Conditional	Avere (to have)	Dovere past participle (would have)	Potere past participle (could have)	Volere past participle (should have)
io	avrei	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
tu	avresti	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
Lei/lei/lui	avrebbe	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
noi	avremmo	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
voi	avreste	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto
loro	avrebbero	+dovuto	+potuto	+voluto

Irregular Verbs	Indirect Object Pronouns	Piacere Conditional (would be liked)	Dispiacere (to be sorry to mind)	Dispiacere Conditional (would mind)
io	mi			
tu	ti			
Lei/lei/lui	Le/le/gli	piacerebbe	dispiace	dispiacerebbe
noi	ci			
voi	vi			
loro	gli	piacerebbero		dispiacerebbero

Past Tense Conditional	Indirect Object	Essere (would be)	Piacere past (have liked)	Dispiacere past (have minded)
io	mi			
tu	ti			
Lei/lei/lui	Le/le/gli	sarebbe	+piaciuto(a)	+dispiaciuto(a)
noi	ci			
voi	vi			
loro	gli	sarebbero	+piaciuti(e)	+dispiaciuti(e)



The Florian Restaurant Gelato
Piazza San Marco, Venice



Gelato Flavors



Menu Outside of Fisson Restaurant, Lido Island, Venice

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Numbers - The Centuries in Roman Numerals

Roman numerals are still used today in Italy to refer to the centuries, as we have noted previously. Here are the important centuries in Roman Numerals and ordinal numbers to finish out our "Numbers" sections.

		Roman Numerals	Ordinal numbers
il secolo the century	1401 - 1500 1401 – 1500	il XV secolo the 15th Century	il Quindicesimo secolo
il secolo the century	1501 - 1600 1501 – 1600	il XVI secolo the 16th Century	il Sedicesimo secolo
il secolo the century	1601 - 1700 1601 - 1700	il XVII secolo the 17th Century	il Diciasetesimo secolo
il secolo the century	1701 - 1800 1701 – 1800	il XVIII secolo the 18th Century	il Diciottesimo secolo
il secolo the century	1801 - 1900 1801 – 1900	il XIX secolo the 19th Century	il Diciannovesimo secolo
il secolo the century	1901 - 2000 1901 – 2000	il XX secolo the 20th Century	il Ventesimo secolo
il secolo	2000 - 2100	il XXI secolo the 21st Century	il Ventunesimo secolo

18(N)24



Stresa on Lago Maggiore
Isola Bella at Sunrise
Grand Hotel des Iles Borromees Promenade

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Appendix 1
Exceptions to Masculine and Feminine Endings

Certain nouns have endings that one might expect to be masculine, but are actually categorized as feminine, and vice versa. Sometimes, a noun will be invariable, and the same ending will be used for both masculine and feminine categories. The definite article will change to reflect the gender and number for each noun, however, in every situation – even with the nouns that are exceptions to the usual gender rules. This is why it is so important to learn each noun with its definite article!

The following nouns end in the letter **o,** but are feminine. The plural is inconsistent.

la radio	the radio	le radio	the radios
la mano	the hand	le mani	the hands
l'auto*	the automobile	le auto*	the automobiles
la foto*	the photo	le foto*	the photos
la moto*	the motorcycle	le moto*	the motorcycles

The following nouns end in the letter **a,** but are masculine. They will all change to the masculine plural forms.

il problema	the problem	i problemi	the problems
il programma	the plan/program	i programmi	the plans
il tema	the subject/theme	i temi	the themes
il sistema	the system	i sistemi	the systems
il poeta	the poet	i poeti	the poets
il pilota	the pilot	i piloti	the pilots
il panorama	the view	i panorami	the views
il clima	the climate	i climi	the climates
il papa	the pope	i papi	the popes

The plural form for the noun **uomo (man)** is irregular in Italian as follows:

l'uomo	the man	gli uomini	the men

In the world of opera, regular masculine nouns refer to female operatic singers.

il soprano	the female singer(s) (highest range)	i soprani
il mezzo-soprano	the female singer(s) (middle range)	i mezzi-soprani
il contralto	the female singer(s) (lowest range)	i contralti

*abbreviated from **l'automobile, la fotografia** and **la motocicletta.**

Appendix-1
Exceptions to Masculine and Feminine Endings
(cont'd - 2)

Nouns that end in the letters **tù** and **tà** are feminine in the singular and invariable in the plural, although the definite article will change to the regular feminine plural.

la virtù	the virtue	le virtù	the virtues
la città	the city	le città	the cities
la comunità	the community	le communità	the communities
la società	the society	le società	the societies
la nazionalità	the nationality	le nationalità	the nationalities
l'identità	the identity	le identità	the identities
l'ospitalità	the hospitality		(plural not used)
l'università	the university	le università	the universities
l'elettricità	the electricity		(plural not used)
la facoltà	the faculty/deparment	le facoltà	the departments
la festività	the religious festival	le festività	the religious festivals

Nouns that end in the letters **si** and nouns that end in the letters **ie** are invariable, although the definite article will be feminine in both singular and plural forms. There is a common exception to this rule, however, **moglie**, and this is listed below as well.

la crisi	the crisis/recession	le crisi	the criseses
l'analisi	the analysis/therapy	le analisi	the analyses
la tesi	the thesis/point	le tesi	the theses
la specie	the specie	le specie	the species
la moglie	the wife	le mogli	the wives

The word **mille (one thousand)** is masculine and invariable when written out in a sentence. The word **mila** is attached to any number 2000 and above **(duemila, tremila)** and is the plural for **mille** for numbers only. **Un migliàio** or **una migliàia** mean **"about a thousand."** **Migliaio** and **migliàia** when used alone, without an indefinite article or number, mean **thousands** (see Chapter 8).

(il) mille	one thousand	(i) mille	thousands
mille	one thousand (number)	mila	= or > two thousand (number)
un migliàio/una migliàia	about a thousand	migliàio/migliàia	thousands

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Appendix-1
Exceptions to Masculine and Feminine Endings
(cont'd - 3)

Nouns that end in the letters **ista,** which typically designate a trade, are both masculine and feminine, corresponding to the gender of the person. The definite article will change to reflect gender in the singular, but the noun itself is invariable in the singular. In the plural, however, both the definite article and the ending of the noun will change.

	il/la professionista	male/female professional		
	i professionisti	male professional		
	le professioniste	female professionalists		
il/la dentista	dentist	i dentisti	le dentiste	dentists
il/la regista	director	i registi	le registe	directors
il/la giornalista	journalist	i giornalisti	le giornaliste	journalists
l'artista	artist	gli artisti	le artiste	artists
il/la turista	tourist	i turisti	le turiste	tourists

Nouns pertaining to body parts, when there are two or more of each, will be masculine in the singular, but in some cases have two plurals. Sometimes, the plural will take the feminine singular ending, **ia,** in order to denote the pair, complete set, or the whole. If speaking of only a few of the total, the regular masculine plural applies.

il paio	the pair	le paia	the pairs
il dito	the finger	le dita	set of ten fingers
		i diti	several fingers
l'osso	the bone	le ossa	human bones
		gli ossi	animal bones
il ginocchio	the knee	le ginocchia	the knees
il labbro	the lip	le labbra	the lips

When referring to sheets, which generally come as a pair of flat and fitted sheets:

il lenzuolo	the sheet	le lenzuola	the pair of sheets
		i lenzuoli	a pile of sheets

Uovo follows the same pattern as above; **uva** and **cinema** are invariable:

l'uovo	the egg	le uova	the eggs
l'uva	the grape/the grapes	il grappolo d'uva	the bunch of grapes
il cinema*	the movie theater/the movie theaters/the movie/ the movies		

*abbreviated from **il cinematografo.**

Appendix-1
Exceptions to Masculine and Feminine Endings
(cont'd - 4)

Foreign nouns used while speaking in Italian do not change their endings. Most foreign nouns are designated masculine, however, and use of the definite article is standard.

il terminal	the (airport) terminal	i terminal	the (airport) terminals
l'hostess	the stewardess	le hostess	the stewardesses
lo steward	the steward	gli steward	the stewards
l'autobus	the bus	gli autobus	the bus
il taxi	the taxi	i taxi	the taxis
l' intercity	the intercity train	gli intercity	the intercity trains
il film	the film	i film	the films
il bar	the bar	i bar	the bars
lo chef*	the chef	gli chef	the chefs
lo snack	the snack	gli snack	the snacks
lo yogurt**	the yogurt	gli yogurt	the yogurts
il jeans***	the jeans (one pair)	i jeans	the jeans (one pair)
la T-shirt	the T-shirt	le T-shirt	the T-shirts
il picnic	the picnic	i picnic	the picnics
il reef	the reef	i reef	the reefs
il garage	the garage	i garage	the garages
lo sport	the sport	gli sport	the sports
il golf	the golf game	i golf	the golf games
il basket	basketball (game)	i basket	the basketball(s) (games)
il windsurf	the windsurfing		

***** The "ch" sound in the word **chef** is pronounced like the Italian "s+consonant," and this noun takes the definite article **lo**.

****** The "yo" sound in the word **yogurt** is pronounced like the Italian **"io"** sound. This foreign word begins with the letter **"y"** and takes the definite article **lo**.

******* **Il jeans** is less commonly used than the plural **i jeans**, which is considered more correct.

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Appendix-1

Exceptions to Masculine and Feminine Endings (cont'd - 5)

Foreign nouns for the electronic age:

il computer	the computer	i computer
il PC	personal computer	i PC
il computer portatile	laptop/notebook computer	i computer portatili
il laptop	laptop computer	i laptop
l'internet	the internet	
il link	the internet link	i link
il browser	the internet browser	i browser
la password	the password	le password
il post	the internet post	i post
il WiFi	the WiFi internet connection	
la posta elettronica	the email	
l'email/un'email*	the email/an email	le email*
la segreteria telefonica	voicemail	
la casella vocale	voice mailbox	
il messaggio (di testo)	message/text message	
l'SMS/ un SMS	text message/instant message	
il CD	the CD	i CD
l'ipod	the ipod	gli ipod
la TV *	the television	le TV
la TV via cavo	cable TV	
il satellite	the satellite	i satellite
la TV satellitare	satellite TV	
il (lettore) DVD	the DVD	i DVD
il fax	the fax machine	i fax
la videoconferenza	videoconference	le videoconferenze
il video	the video	i video
la videocamera	videocameras	le videocamere
il videogioco	videogame	i videogiochi
lo stereo	the stereo (machine)	gli stereo
la videocassetta	videocassette	le videocassette

*abbreviated from the feminine **la posta elettronica, la televisione.**

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Appendix -2

A Note About the Changing Italian Subject Pronouns

There are several Italian subject pronouns that have been used for many centuries, but have in the recent past (say, the last 40 – 50 years) fallen out of routine use in daily conversation: **egli, esso, essa, essi** and **esse.** An old textbook of Italian from 1979, for instance, lists both the older, proper Italian subject pronouns along with the newer subject pronouns in one table. The explanation that follows mentions that in the "modern" Italian of the 1970's, **lui** and **lei** (the newer subject pronouns for **he** and **she**) were in use much more commonly than **egli** and **essa** (the older subject pronouns). **Esso** and **essa** were used for the subject pronoun "it" in the past, but "it" is now usually omitted from an Italian sentence entirely as the subject (as we have seen throughout this textbook).

The older subject pronouns may still be heard occasionally in conversation today in Italy, however, depending on the age and dialect of the speaker, and of course, will be encountered in Italian literature. These subject pronouns are still considered correct in formal Italian, and are still taught in Italian schools today. For purposes of this book, though, where the focus is on the most up-to-date Italian spoken today, and in order to simplify the presentation of the Italian verbs, only the frequently used subject pronouns have been used in our verb tables.

Here is our complete table of subject pronouns, which includes the traditional subject pronouns less frequently heard in Italy today in parenthesis, but which the dedicated student of Italian will certainly encounter.

********* Subject Pronouns *********

io	I	1st person singular
tu	you (familiar)	2nd person singular
Lei	you (polite)	3rd person singular
lei (=essa)	she/it	3rd person singular
lui (=egli/esso)	he/it	3rd person singular
noi	we	1st person plural
voi	you all (familiar)	2nd person plural
Loro	you all (polite)	3rd person plural
loro (=essi)	they (all male group *or* male+female group)	3rd person plural
loro (=esse)	all female group	3rd person plural

Appendix -2

A Note About the Changing Italian Subject Pronouns (cont'd)

The Different Forms of "They" in Italian

In the past, when speaking to a group, Italians freqently distinguished a mixed group of men and women, or a group of all men, from a group of all women. This is still done at times by using the older subject pronouns **essi** and **esse**. All forms of **they" – loro, essi,** and **esse** – will use the third person plural of the verb, as given in the examples below. We will not focus on these subject pronouns in the textbook, but they are included here for reference.

Loro parlano italiano.	**They speak Italian.**
Essi parlano italiano.	**They speak Italian.** (referring to a group of men and women)
Essi parlano italiano.	**They speak Italian.** (referring to a group of men)
Esse parlano italiano.	**They speak Italian.** (referring to a group of women)

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Index -1

a-10,243
- after infinitives-219
- with names of cities-10
- with time expressions-106,349-350

accents (stress and pronunciation)-xix
- double consonants -xix
- **e** vs. **è**-37
- on the last syllable-xix,37
- verbs-14,124,145-146,301,343,393

address (to people)
- many forms of "they"-436
- many forms of "you"-16-17
- meeting and greeting-7-9,181,237-239
- proper forms of address-*see titles*

addresses (location)-30
- asking for directions-89,335

adjectives
- agreement with subject and **essere**-38
- demonstrative-217-218
- indefinite-416
- interrogative-53
- irregular comparative-273
- irregular plural
  - ending in **-ca, -co**-74,120
  - ending in **-ga, -go**-75
- of personality-235
- of nationality-28
- precede nouns-117-118
- regular plural-31
- possessive-93-94,115-116

adverbs
- as adjectives-120
- as prepositions-341
- **fa** with time-307
- **fa** with weather-320
- forming with **-mente**-164
- frequency-216,302
- manner-164
- quantity-120,141
- well-*see **bene***

age-53,59-60,327
agree (how to)-*see also yes,*7,53
alcune, alcuni-389
alphabet (Italian names for letters)-xv
appena-216,322
articles
- definite-xx-xi
  - exceptions-429,432
  - with days of the week-30
  - with geographical names-10,51
  - with names of languages-19
  - with foreign nouns-433
  - with possessives-115-116
  - with titles-191
- indefinite-73
- preposition+definite article-243
- with partitive-367

avere-
55,56,195,247,248,250,277,279,304,344,394
- as auxiliary-55
- phrases with-55-56,151

bella/bello-11-12,33,35
body(parts)-123,129,220,415
buona/buono-11-12,32,35
bene-123,129,415
car-related terms-109-111
c'è, ci sono-126
che/che cosa?-81,121,142,192,272
- with time expressions-83-84,349-350

chi-142
ci-414
city-related terms-109,208
clothing-209,212-213,220
cognates-143,163,164187,241,242,270
colors-67
command form-*see imperative*
comparatives
- absolute superlative **(-issimo)**-120,244
- equality-271-273
- irregular-273-274
- relative-244

Index -2

conditional tense-393
- **avere** and **essere**-394
- irregular stems-395-396,417-419
- meaning of modal verbs-78,373
- past (should,could,would have)-419
- use with subjunctive mood-396
- vs. present tense with modal-78,398
- with **piacere**-420
- with **dispiacere**-422

conoscere-99
- **conoscere** vs. **sapere**-100-101
- idiomatic expressions-103

country-related terms-88
counting-*see numbers*
cui-192
Cultural Notes-10,28,51-52,70-71,90-91,112-113,140,161-162,182-185,212-213,240,267-268,295-297,317,336-337,386-387,412
da-29,243
- to express place inhabited-19,29
- vs. **per**-329
- with expressions of time-329-330

dare-194-195
- idiomatic expressions-199
- **dare del tu, dare del Lei**-177-178,199

date-26,30,201-202
days of the week-26
di-94,243
- comparisons with different nouns-272
- expressions that take **di**-94,149,151
- to express place of origin-19,29
- to express possession-94

directions-89,335,341
dispiacere-421-422
dove, dov'è, dove sono-19,29,142
- **Da dove vieni?/viene?**-19,29
- **Di dov'è?,Di dove sono?**-19,29

dovere-245-246,250,321,345,395,397,419
- idiomatic expressions-283
- present vs. conditional tense-398

driving-related terms-*see transportation*
ecco-19,26
entrambe-298
essere-38,126,195,275,279,304,344,394,420,422
- phrases with-56,119,151

family and friends-149,237-239,242
- growing-up terms-60
- possessive adjectives for family-93,116

fare-219
- expressions of heath-221
- idiomatic expressions-225-227,284
- imperative (command form)-195
- with mathematics-229

food terms-*see also restaurant terms*
- fruits-409
- fish/shellfish-382
- meats-382
- pasta-357-358
- vegetables-383

fra-340
future tense-343-346
- **avere** and **essere**-344
- intentional future-340,343
- irregular stems-345-346
- with expressions of time-340,349-350,371-372

già-216,322
gerund-124
- use with stare-124-125

health-221
holidays-180,295-297,317
hosts and guests-180
hotel, house, renting terms-137,157,161-162,266,269,293-294
Idiomatic Expressions-19,41,59,81,103,129,151 173,199,225-227,253,284,307,327
imperative (command form)-193-196
- familiar imperative-193
- familiar reflexive imperative-194
- irregular familiar imperative-195
- negative with imperative-196

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Index -3

imperfetto-301,303
- **avere** and **essere**-304
- compare to **passato prossimo**-305,323
- meaning with modal verbs-321
- with age/**Quanti anni aveva?**-327
- with weather-332

Important Phrases-7-9,27,49-50,69,89,111,139, 159-160,181,211,237-239,263-266,335,359,385, 411

in-10,243
- before countries-10
- before street names **(in via)**-89

infinitive-14-15,35-36,97-98
- after modal verbs-79
- after preposition **a**-219
- after preposition **di**-149,151
- for negative imperative-196
- position of pronouns with-188,196,246

interrogative expressions-53,142
interrogative sentences-142
internet-77
- renting-161-162

Italian sound combinations-xvi-xvii
(to) live-**abitare** vs. **vivere**-126
meals-*see also restaurant and food terms*
- breakfast, lunch and dinner-386-387
- typical Italian menu-360-361

molto-117,120,141
money-48-50,255-256,285-286
months of the year-26
nationality-28
ne-390,392,413
nè…nè, neanche-363
need (expressing)-**avere bisogno di**-49,55379
- **desiderare** vs. **volere**-78-79
- **Posso?/Può**+infinitive-89,110,335,398

negative **(no, non…mai)**-53,319,339,363
- negative sentences-53,390
- with imperative-196
- with imperative reflexive verbs-194
- with **passato prossimo**-279

nessuno-319
niente-141,339
nouns
- end in **-e**-xxii,28,31
- gender-xx-xi,429
- invariable **(-à,-ista,-tù,-tà,-i,-ie)**-215, 430-433
- irregular plural
  - body (parts of/pairs)-415,431
  - ending in **-ca, -co**-74
  - ending in **-ga, -go, -ologo**-75
  - ending in **-io**-215
- regular plural-31

nulla-339
numbers
- cardinal (counting)-21,43,61,153,175
- **mille**-175,201,430
- ordinal-30,67
- Roman numerals-403-427

ogni-298
partitive (some, any)-367,389-390
passato prossimo-247-248,
- compared with **imperfetto**-305,323
- direct object pronouns, **ne**-391-392
- negative statements-279
- with **avere**-247-248,279
- with **avuto** and **stato**-279
- with **essere**-275-277,349
- with modal verbs-250,278
- with **piacere**-277,420
- with reflexive verbs-277-278

past participle-247
- agreement with subject-275
- for **passato prossimo** with **essere**-277
- irregular past participles-249-250,420

per-243,329
- **stare per**-123

personal characteristics-*see adjectives*
piacere-9,222,369-370,420
poco-120,141
po' di, un po' di-27,141
possessive adjectives-93-94,115-116

Index -4

potere-245-246,250,321,345,395,397,419
idiomatic expressions-253
può to ask politely-49-50,89,110,335,
present vs. conditional tense-398
prepositions
adverbial prepositions-341
combined with definite articles-29,243
for infinitives **(a,di)**-149,151,219
visiting people **(andare a trovare, venire a trovare)**-140,173
with names of cities **(a)**-10
with names of countries **(in)**-10
present tense
auxiliary verbs-see **avere, essere, stare**
expressions with **stare**-123
irregular **-are** verbs-34,37,77,95-96,126
andare-37
-care, -gare-77
-ciare, -giare-95
-iare-96
irregular **-ere** verbs-78,99,121-122
-cere,-gere-121
sapere-99-101
irregular gerund **(bevendo)**-122
irregular **-ire** verbs first type-148
modal verbs-see **dovere,potere,volere**
present progressive-124-125
forming the gerund-107
reflexive verbs – see reflexive verbs
regular **-are** verbs-14,35-36
regular **-ere** verbs-97-98,121-122,126
conoscere-99-101
regular **-ire** verbs first type-145,147
regular **-ire (-isco)** verbs second type 146-148
professions – *see trades and professions*
pronouns-189,365
direct object-188-190
with present tense nouns begin with a vowel-189
with **passato prossimo**-391,392
disjunctive-364-365
with **piacere**-369-370
double object-366,391
indefinite
tutto(i),entrambi(e)-298
nessuno-319
indirect object-188-190
interrogative-53,59-60,142
dove-*see* ***dove***
quanto-*see* ***quanto***
position of object pronouns with imperatives-194
position of object pronouns with infinitives-170,188-189,196
position of object pronouns with negative-190
reciprocal reflexive-169
reflexive-15,165,170,189-190
relative **(che,cui)**-192
subject-13
different forms of "you"-16-17
different forms of "they"-436
changing subject pronouns-435
omission of the subject-13-14, 168-169,188
subject pronoun "it"-13
quanto-53,142
interrogative pronoun with **costare**-53
interrogative adjective-53
Quanti anni hai?/Quanti anni avevi?-59-60,327
quello,quella-217-218
questo,questa-217-218
questions-53,142

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com

Index -5

reflexive verbs (direct)-15,165-168,170
describing how clothing looks-220
getting ready phrases-159
imperative reflexive verbs-194
infinitive verb+reflexive pronoun-170
irreg reflexive **sedersi**-166
meaning change-167-168
modal verbs+reflexive verbs-246
negative imperative reflexive verbs-196
reciprocal reflexive verbs-169
si impersonal construction-170
reservation (making a) phrases-266,269
restaurant terms-*see also food terms* 359-361,412
at the table-355
foods for **antipasto**-356-358
foods for **il primo**-357-358
foods for **il secondo**-382-383
foods for **i dolci**-408-409
Italian cheeses-410
Italian beverages and wine-355,384
Italian coffee-240
sapere-99
idiomatic expressions-103
conoscere vs. **sapare**-100-101
seasons-26
shopping-209,212-213,336
expressions for shopping-211,220,226
stare-123-126
clothing expressions-220
expressions with **bene/male**-123
expressions(all)-123
stare per+gerund-123
imperative-195
present progressive tense-124-125
with **passato prossimo**-279
subject pronouns-*see pronouns*
subjunctive mood-396
suffixes-*see also cognates*
-ista,ore,-ario-187
-ino,-etto,-one,-accia-241
-ologo-75
tanto-120,141
telephone-related terms-261,263-265,267-268
time expressions-83-84,105-106,131
with future tense-340,349-350
with past tense-299,307,309-310
time of day-84
titles/proper forms of address-191
definite article with-191
use of indefinite article-191
trades and professions-182-185
transitive vs. intransitive verbs-277
transportation-47,139
air travel-3-5,23-25
car travel-107-109
parking-110
renting a car-110
taxi travel-45-46
train travel-63-66,85-87
troppo-120,141
trovare
andare a trovare,venire a trovare-140,173
idiomatic expressions-173
tutto, tutti-298
vacation and beach terms-314,317,334,336-337
verb conjugations-*see infinitive and present tense verbs and verb tables*
verb tables-18,39,57,80,102,127-128,150,171-172,197-198,251-252,280-281,306,324-325,347-348,373-375,399-401,423-425
volere-78-79,245-246,250,346,396-398,419
idiomatic expressions-129,283
present vs. conditional tense-78,398
weather expressions-315
present tense-320
past tense-332
who, whom-*see relative pronouns **(che,cui)***
years-201,377
yes **(si),**how to agree-7,53

Photographs

Unit 1

(top left) Train track 4 at the Avezzano railway station in Abruzzo
(top right) Riding the train through a railway station in the mountains of Abruzzo
(bottom) Traffic in front of the Victor Emmanuel II Monument building in Piazza Venezia, Rome. (Victor Emannuel Ii was the first king of unified Italy in 1861.)

A side street in Rome

Unit 2

Panoramic view of Piazza Obelisco in the town of Tagiacozzo
A summer afternoon along the via dei Fiori Imperiali (formerly via dell'Imperio) in the center of the city of Rome, which runs in a straight line from the Piazza Venezia to the Colosseum.

A view of modern downtown Milan from a rooftop garden.

Unit 3

(top left) Hotel Grand Des Iles Borromees, Stresa on Lago Maggiore
(top right) Antipasto platter
(bottom) Al fresco dining at Tre Scaline restaurant in Piazza Navona, Rome

Ristorante Paoli, serving freshly made pasta in the heart of historic Florence

 ©2012 Stella Lucente, LLC. www.learntravelitalian.com